



Owner's Manual

NX 300 / NX 200

Pictorial index	Search by illustration	
For safety and security	Make sure to read through them (Main topics: Child seat, theft deterrent system)	1
Vehicle status information and indicators	Reading driving-related information (Main topics: Meters, multi-information display)	2
Before driving	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving (Main topics: Keys, doors, seats, power windows)	3
Driving	Operations and advice which are necessary for driving (Main topics: Starting engine, refueling)	4
Interior features	Usage of the interior features (Main topics: Air conditioner, storage features)	5
Maintenance and care	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures (Main topics: Interior and exterior, light bulbs)	6
When trouble arises	What to do in case of malfunction and emergency (Main topics: Battery discharge, flat tire)	7
Vehicle specifications	Vehicle specifications, customizable features (Main topics: Fuel, oil, tire inflation pressure)	8
Index	Search by symptom	
	Search alphabetically	

2 TABLE OF CONTENTS

For your information	6
Reading this manual.....	9
How to search	10
Pictorial index	12

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use	
Before driving.....	34
For safe driving.....	35
Seat belts	36
SRS airbags	42
Exhaust gas precautions	49
1-2. Child safety	
Airbag manual on-off system.....	51
Riding with children.....	52
Child restraint systems	53
1-3. Theft deterrent system	
Engine immobilizer system.....	73
Double locking system	75
Alarm	76

2 Vehicle status information and indicators

2-1. Instrument cluster	
Warning lights and indicators....	82
Gauges and meters	87
Multi-information display.....	90
Head-up display	97
Fuel consumption information..	101

3 Before driving

3-1. Key information	
Keys	106

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors	
Side doors.....	110
Back door.....	114
Smart entry & start system.....	127
3-3. Adjusting the seats	
Front seats.....	135
Rear seats.....	136
Driving position memory	141
Head restraints	144
3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors	
Steering wheel	146
Inside rear view mirror	147
Outside rear view mirrors.....	149
3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof	
Power windows	151
Moon roof.....	153
Electronic sunshade	156

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving	
Driving the vehicle.....	160
Cargo and luggage.....	166
Trailer towing (vehicles without towing package)	168
Trailer towing (vehicles with towing package).....	168

4 TABLE OF CONTENTS

- 5-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger
 - Automatic air conditioning system 327
 - Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators 335
- 5-3. Using the interior lights
 - Interior lights list 338
- 5-4. Using the storage features
 - List of storage features 341
 - Luggage compartment features 345
- 5-5. Using the other interior features
 - Other interior features 349

6 Maintenance and care

- 6-1. Maintenance and care
 - Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 360
 - Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 363
- 6-2. Maintenance
 - Maintenance requirements 366
 - Scheduled maintenance 368

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

- Do-it-yourself service precautions 380
- Hood 381
- Positioning a floor jack 382
- Engine compartment 383
- Tires 392
- Tire inflation pressure 402
- Wheels 403
- Air conditioning filter 405
- Electronic key battery 406
- Checking and replacing fuses 408
- Light bulbs 411

7 When trouble arises

7-1. Essential information

- Emergency flashers 414
- If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 414
- If the vehicle is trapped in rising water 415

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency
 If your vehicle needs to be towed **417**
 If you think something is wrong **421**
 Fuel pump shut off system **422**
 If a warning light turns on or a warn-
 ing buzzer sounds..... **423**
 If a warning message is displayed
 **433**
 If you have a flat tire (vehicles with-
 out spare tire) **436**
 If you have a flat tire (vehicles with
 spare tire) **446**
 If the engine will not start **455**
 If you lose your keys **457**
 If the fuel filler door cannot be
 opened **457**
 If the electronic key does not oper-
 ate properly **458**
 If the vehicle battery is discharged
 **460**
 If your vehicle overheats **465**
 If the vehicle becomes stuck ... **467**

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)
 **496**
 Alphabetical Index **499**

8 Vehicle specifications

8-1. Specifications
 Maintenance data (fuel, oil level,
 etc.) **470**
 Fuel information **481**
8-2. Customization
 Customizable features **482**
8-3. Initialization
 Items to initialize **494**

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. Using these spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, even though these parts may be approved by certain authorities in your country. Toyota Motor Corporation therefore cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Lexus Safety System+
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at your Lexus dealer.

Vehicle data recording

The vehicle is equipped with sophisticated computers that will record certain data, such as:

The recorded data varies according to the vehicle grade level and options with which it is equipped.

These computers do not record conversations or sounds, and only record images outside of the vehicle in certain situations.

- Engine speed/Electric motor speed (traction motor speed)
- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Operation status of the driving assist systems, such as the ABS and pre-collision system
- Data usage

Lexus may use the data recorded in this computer to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Event data recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. However, data may not be recorded depending on the severity and type of a crash.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired

during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

- **Disclosure of the EDR data**

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified

service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

WARNING

■ **General precautions while driving**

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

■ **General precaution regarding children's safety**

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

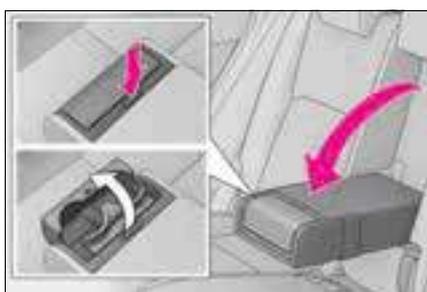
Reading this manual

Explains symbols used in this manual

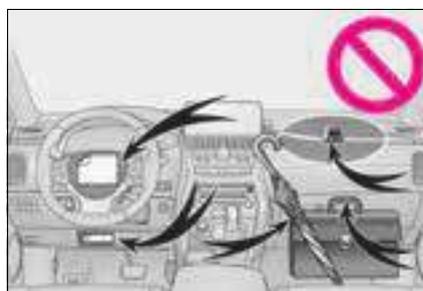
Symbols in this manual

Symbols	Meanings
	WARNING: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.
	NOTICE: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.
	Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

Symbols in illustrations



Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
	Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).

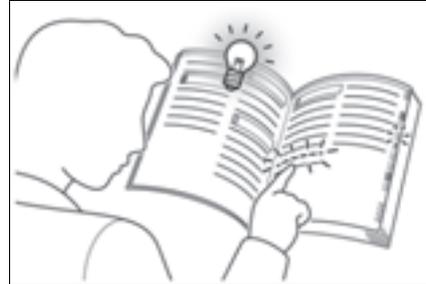
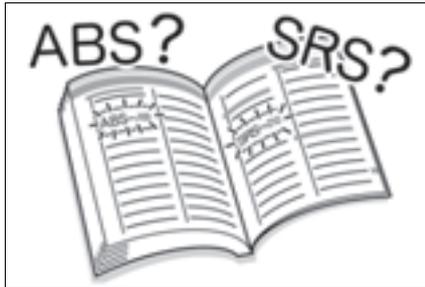


Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the component or position being explained.
	Means Do not, Do not do this, or Do not let this happen.

How to search

■ Searching by name

- Alphabetical index: →P.499



■ Searching by installation position

- Pictorial index: →P.12



■ Searching by symptom or sound

- What to do if... (Troubleshooting): →P.496

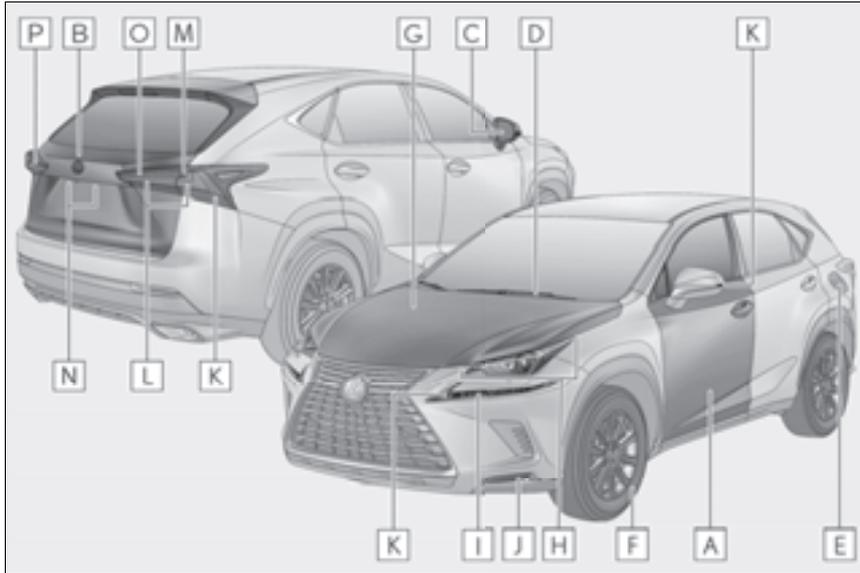


■ Searching by title

- Table of contents: →P.2

Pictorial index

■ Exterior



The shape of the headlights may differ depending on the grade, etc.

A	Side doors	P.110
	Locking/unlocking.....	P.110
	Opening/closing the side windows.....	P.151
	Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key.....	P.458
	Warning messages.....	P.433
B	Back door	P.114
	Opening from inside the cabin ^{*1}	P.117
	Opening from outside.....	P.116, 117
	Warning messages.....	P.433
C	Outside rear view mirrors	P.149
	Adjusting the mirror angle.....	P.149
	Folding the mirrors.....	P.150
	Driving position memory ^{*1}	P.141
	Defogging the mirrors ^{*1}	P.329

D	Windshield wipers	P.207, 212
	Precautions against winter season.....	P.314
	To prevent freezing (windshield wiper de-icer) ^{*1}	P.329
	Precautions against car wash (Rain-sensing windshield wipers) ^{*1}	P.361
E	Fuel filler door	P.214
	Refueling method.....	P.214
	Fuel type/fuel tank capacity.....	P.472
F	Tires	P.392
	Tire size/inflation pressure.....	P.479
	Winter tires/tire chain.....	P.314
	Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system ^{*1}	P.392
	Coping with flat tires.....	P.436, 446
G	Hood	P.381
	Opening.....	P.381
	Engine oil.....	P.473
	Coping with overheat.....	P.465
	Warning messages.....	P.433

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P.411)

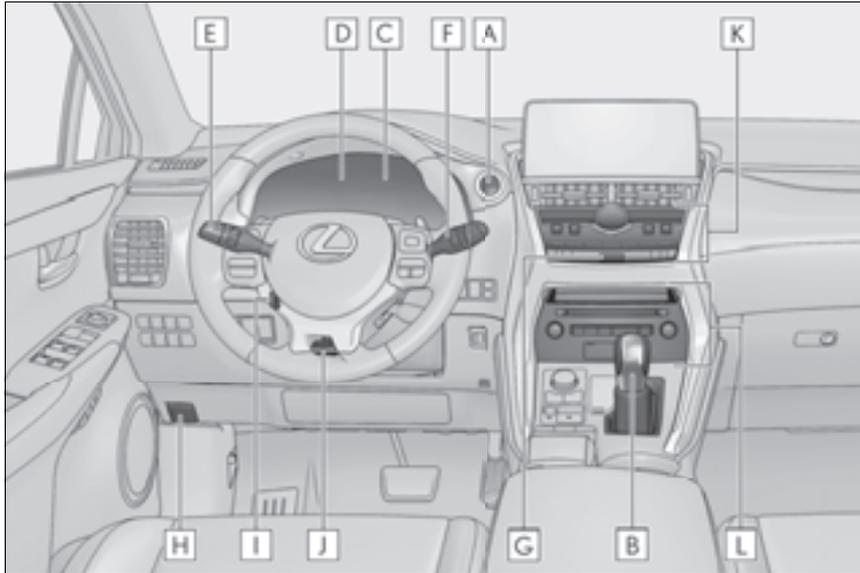
H	Headlights	P.193
I	Front position lights/daytime running lights	P.193
J	Front fog lights^{*1}	P.204
	Cornering lights^{*1}	P.198
K	Turn signal lights	P.185
L	Stop/tail lights	P.193, 308
M	Stop lights	
	Emergency brake signal.....	P.308
N	License plate lights	P.193

- O** Back-up light ^{*2}
Shifting the shift lever to R.....P.177, 181
- P** Rear fog light ^{*1,2} P.204

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: They may be located on the opposite side depending on the target region.

■ Instrument panel (Left-hand drive vehicles)



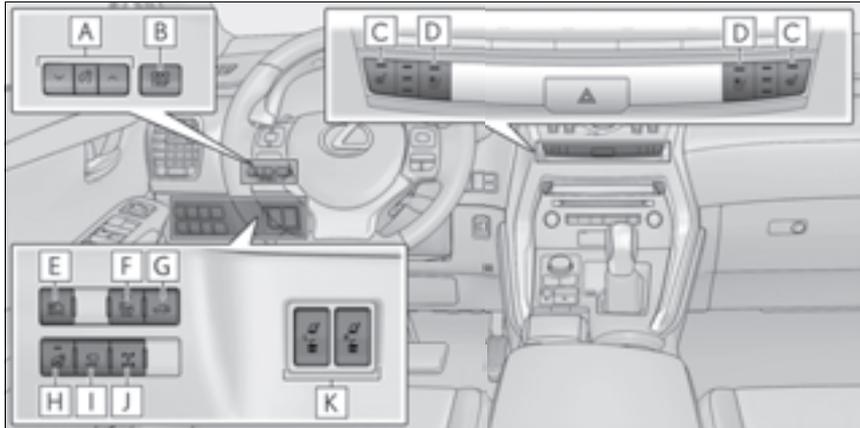
- A Engine switch**..... P.174
 Starting the engine/changing the modes..... P.174, 175
 Emergency stop of the engine..... P.414
 When the engine will not start P.455
 Warning messages..... P.433
- B Shift lever**..... P.178, 182
 Changing the shift position.....P.178, 182
 Precautions against towing P.417
 When the shift lever does not move.....P.178, 182
- C Meters**..... P.87
 Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel lightP.87, 89
 Warning lights/indicator lights P.82
 When the warning lights come on P.423
- D Multi-information display** P.90
 Display..... P.90

	When the warning messages are displayed	P.433
E	Turn signal lever	P.185
	Headlight switch	P.193
	Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/ license plate lights/daytime running lights.....	P.193
	Front fog lights ^{*1} /rear fog light ^{*1}	P.204
F	Windshield wiper and washer switch	P.207, 212
	Usage	P.207, 212
	Adding washer fluid.....	P.391
	Warning messages	P.433
G	Emergency flasher switch	P.414
H	Hood lock release lever	P.381
I	Tilt and telescopic steering control switch ^{*1}	P.146
	Adjustment.....	P.146
	Driving position memory ^{*1}	P.141
J	Tilt and telescopic steering lock release lever ^{*1}	P.146
	Adjustment.....	P.146
K	Air conditioning system	P.327
	Usage	P.327
	Rear window defogger	P.329
L	Audio system ^{*2}	

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

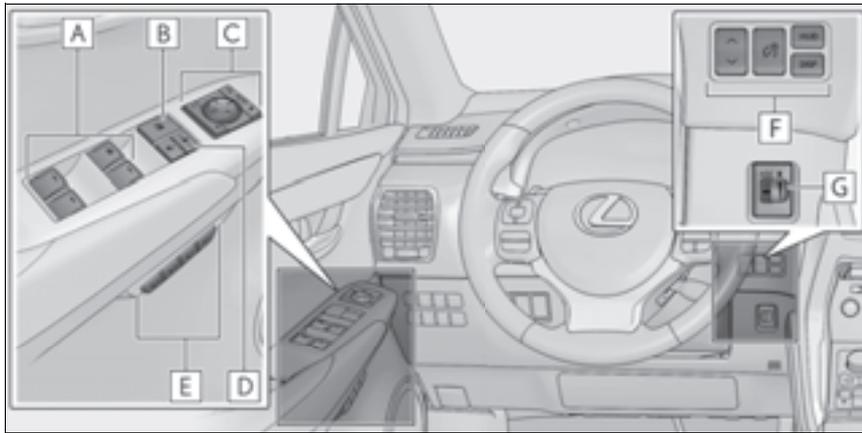
■ Switches (Left-hand drive vehicles)



- A** Instrument panel light control switches P.89
- B** Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button P.89
- C** Front seat heater switches^{*1} P.335
- D** Front seat ventilator switches^{*1} P.336
- E** Automatic High Beam switch^{*1} P.201
Adaptive High-beam System switch^{*1} P.199
- F** BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) main switch^{*1} P.293
- G** Power back door switch^{*1} P.117
- H** Heated steering wheel switch^{*1} P.335
- I** Camera switch^{*1,2}
- J** All-wheel drive lock switch^{*1} P.312
- K** Rear seat operation switches^{*1} P.137

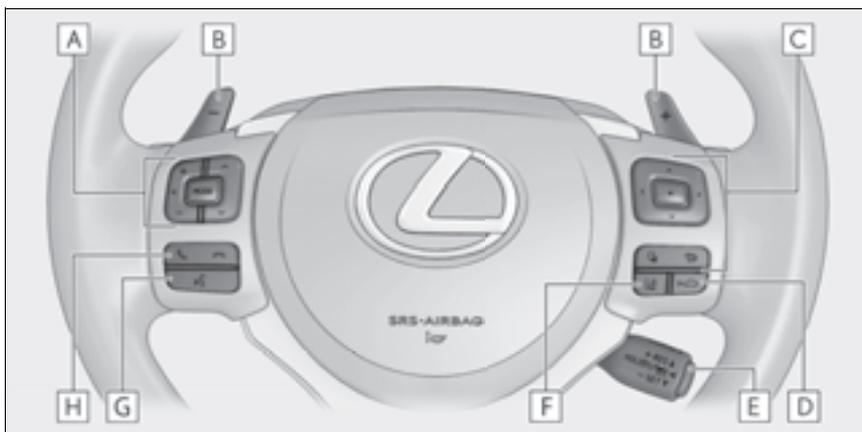
^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".



- A** Power window switchesP.151
- B** Window lock switch.....P.152
- C** Outside rear view mirror switchesP.149
- D** Door lock switchesP.113
- E** Driving position memory switches*P.141
- F** HUD (Head-up display) switches*P.97
- G** ASC (Active Sound Control) dial*P.190

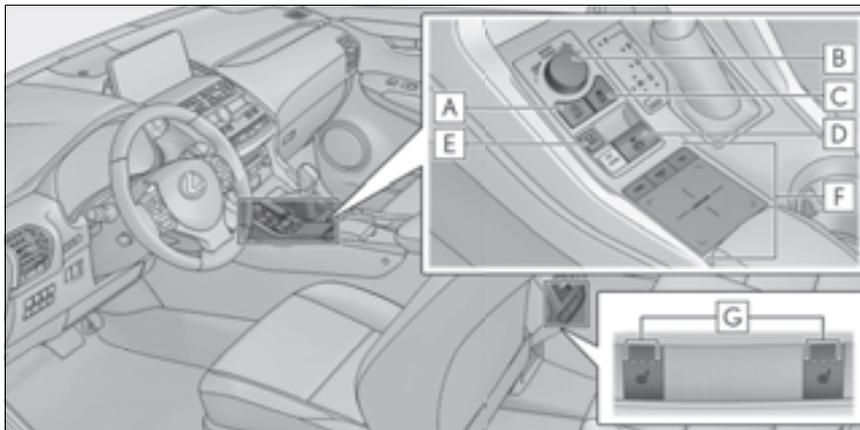
*: If equipped



- A** Audio remote control switches^{*1}
- B** Paddle shift switches^{*2} P.179,180, 183
- C** Meter control switches P.90
- D** Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch^{*2} P.254, 263
- E** Cruise control switch
 - Cruise control^{*2} P.267
 - Dynamic radar cruise control^{*2} P.259
 - Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range^{*2} P.249
- F** LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) switch^{*2} P.245
 - LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) switch^{*2} P.236
- G** Talk switch^{*1}
- H** Telephone switches^{*1}

^{*1}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

^{*2}: If equipped

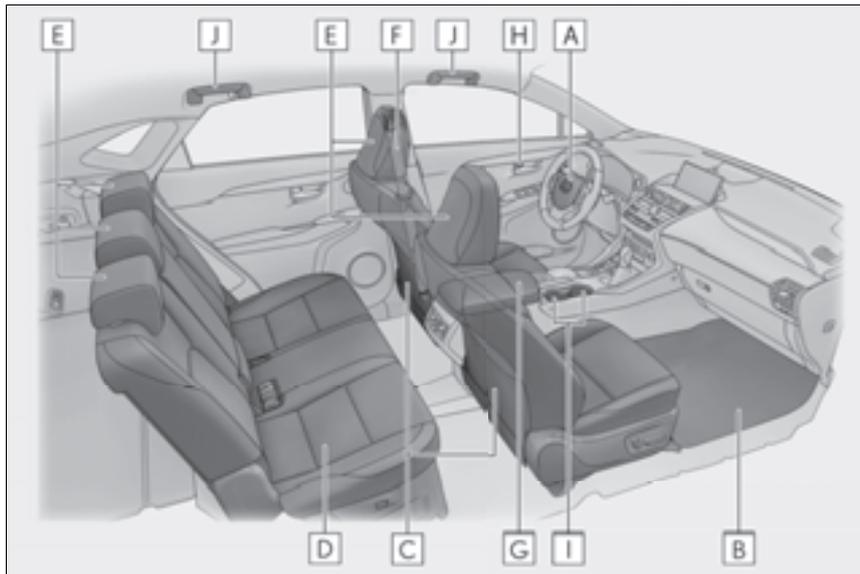


- A** Stop & Start cancel switch^{*} P.276
- B** Driving mode select switch P.304
- C** VSC off switch P.309

D	Parking brake switch	P.186
	Applying/releasing.....	P.186
	Precautions against winter season.....	P.315
	Warning buzzer/message	P.187, 433
E	Brake hold switch	P.189
F	Remote Touch	P.322
G	Rear seat heater switches *	P.336

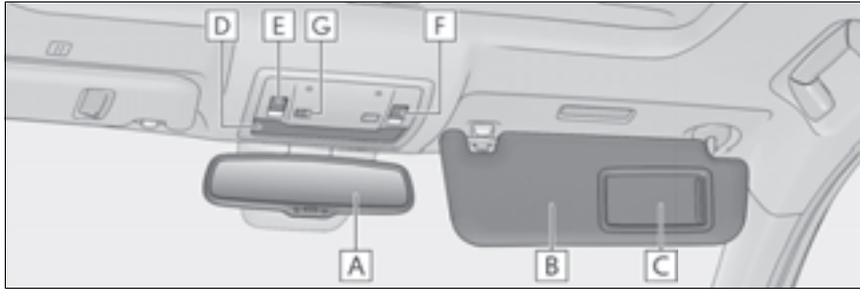
* : If equipped

■ Interior (Left-hand drive vehicles)



A	SRS airbags.....	P.42
B	Floor mats.....	P.34
C	Front seats.....	P.135
D	Rear seats.....	P.136
E	Head restraints.....	P.144
F	Seat belts.....	P.36
G	Console box.....	P.342
H	Inside lock buttons.....	P.113
I	Cup holders.....	P.343
J	Assist grips.....	P.358

■ Ceiling (Left-hand drive vehicles)



- A** Inside rear view mirror P.147
- B** Sun visors ^{*2} P.349
- C** Vanity mirrors P.349
- D** Interior light ^{*3} P.339
 Personal lights P.339
- E** Moon roof switches ^{*1} P.153
- F** Moon roof switches ^{*1} P.153
 Electronic sunshade switch ^{*1} P.157
- G** Intrusion sensor cancel switch ^{*1} P.78

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Except for Taiwan: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.55)



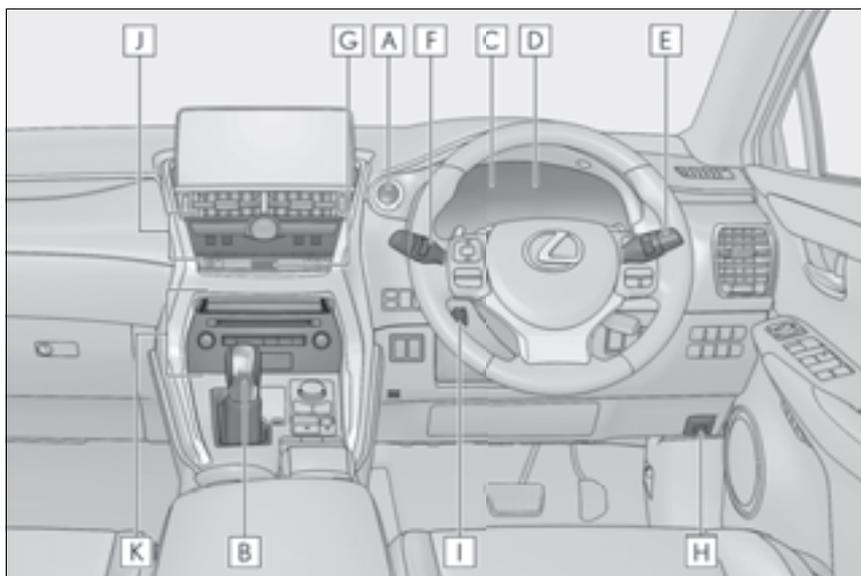
For Taiwan: DO NOT carry baby, infant and children on the front passenger seat.

Except for the front passenger seat, NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.57)



*3: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

■ Instrument panel (Right-hand drive vehicles)



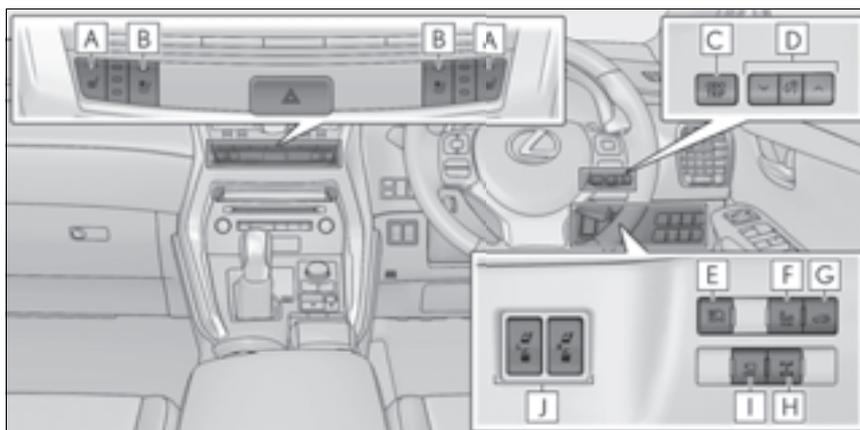
- A Engine switch**..... P.174
 - Starting the engine/changing the modes..... P.174, 175
 - Emergency stop of the engine..... P.414
 - When the engine will not start P.455
 - Warning messages..... P.433
- B Shift lever**..... P.178, 182
 - Changing the shift position.....P.178, 182
 - Precautions against towing P.417
 - When the shift lever does not moveP.178, 182
- C Meters**..... P.87
 - Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel lightP.87, 89
 - Warning lights/indicator lights P.82
 - When the warning lights come on P.423
- D Multi-information display** P.90
 - Display..... P.90

	When the warning messages are displayed	P.433
E	Turn signal lever	P.185
	Headlight switch	P.193
	Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/ license plate lights/daytime running lights.....	P.193
	Front fog lights ^{*1} /rear fog light	P.204
F	Windshield wiper and washer switch	P.207, 212
	Usage	P.208, 212
	Adding washer fluid.....	P.391
	Warning messages	P.433
G	Emergency flasher switch	P.414
H	Hood lock release lever	P.381
I	Tilt and telescopic steering control switch	P.146
	Adjustment.....	P.146
	Driving position memory ^{*1}	P.141
J	Air conditioning system	P.327
	Usage	P.327
	Rear window defogger	P.329
K	Audio system ^{*2}	

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

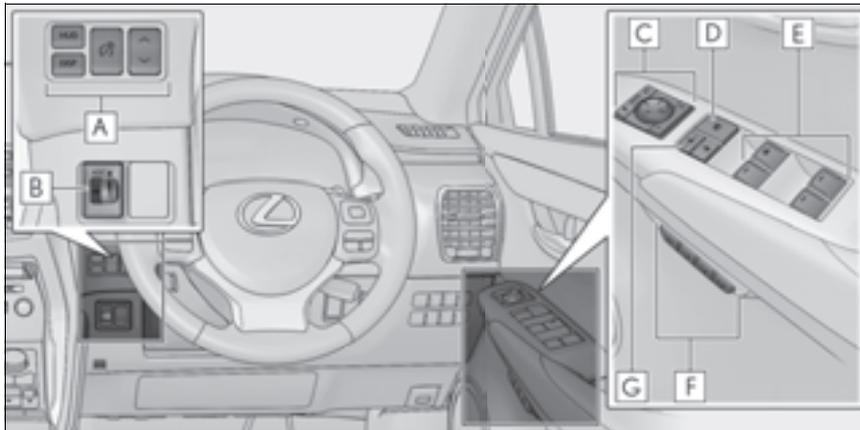
■ Switches (Right-hand drive vehicles)



- A** Front seat heater switches^{*1} P.335
- B** Front seat ventilator switches^{*1} P.336
- C** Odometer/trip meter and trip meter reset button P.89
- D** Instrument panel light control switches P.89
- E** Automatic High Beam switch^{*1} P.201
Adaptive High-beam System switch^{*1} P.199
- F** BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) main switch^{*1} P.293
- G** Power back door switch^{*1} P.117
- H** All-wheel drive lock switch^{*1} P.312
- I** Camera switch^{*1,2}
- J** Rear seat operation switches^{*1} P.137

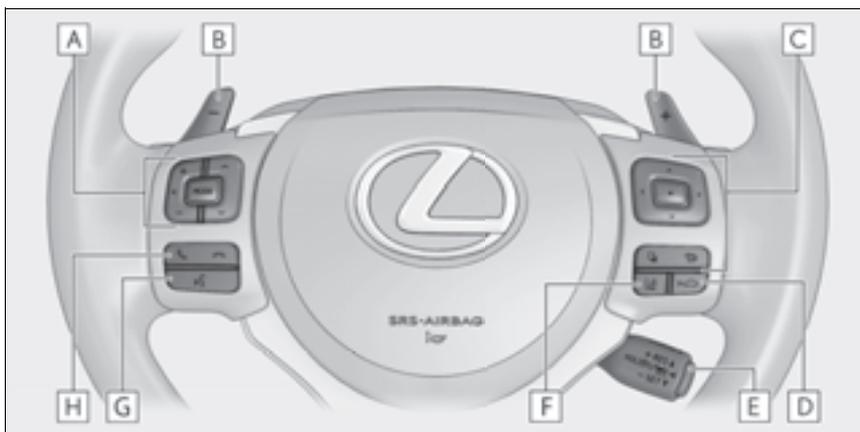
^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".



- A** HUD (Head-up display) switches *P.97
- B** ASC (Active Sound Control) dial *P.190
- C** Outside rear view mirror switchesP.149
- D** Window lock switch.....P.152
- E** Power window switchesP.151
- F** Driving position memory switches *P.141
- G** Door lock switchesP.113

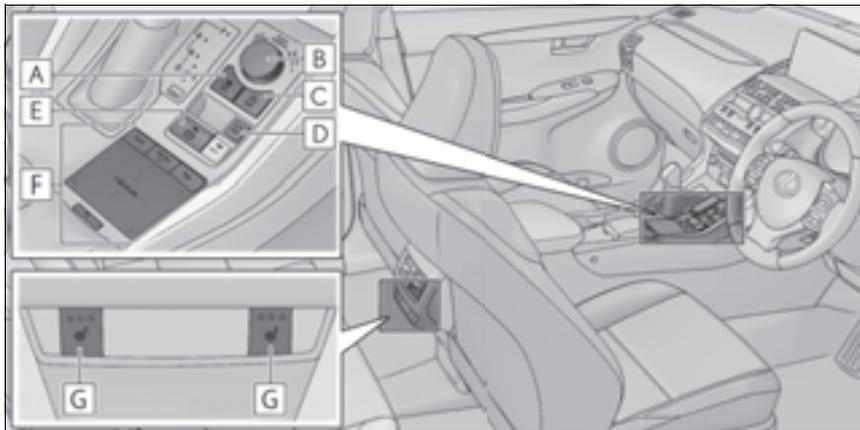
* : If equipped



- A** Audio remote control switches^{*1}
- B** Paddle shift switches P.179, 180, 183
- C** Meter control switches P.90
- D** Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch^{*2} P.254, 263
- E** Cruise control switch
 - Cruise control^{*2} P.267
 - Dynamic radar cruise control^{*2} P.259
 - Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range^{*2} P.249
- F** LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) switch^{*2} P.245
 - LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) switch^{*2} P.236
- G** Talk switch^{*1}
- H** Telephone switches^{*1}

^{*1}: Refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

^{*2}: If equipped

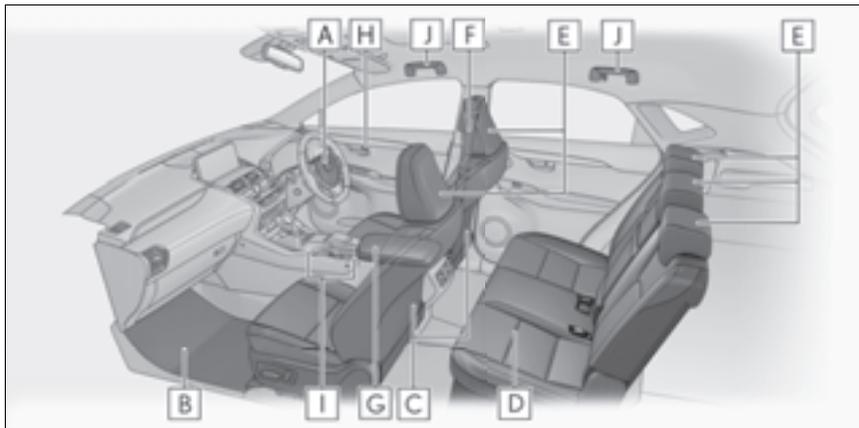


- A** VSC off switch P.309
- B** Driving mode select switch P.304
- C** Stop & Start cancel switch^{*} P.276

D	Brake hold switch	P.189
E	Parking brake switch.....	P.186
	Applying/releasing.....	P.186
	Precautions against winter season.....	P.315
	Warning buzzer/message	P.187, 433
F	Remote Touch.....	P.322
G	Rear seat heater switches *	P.336

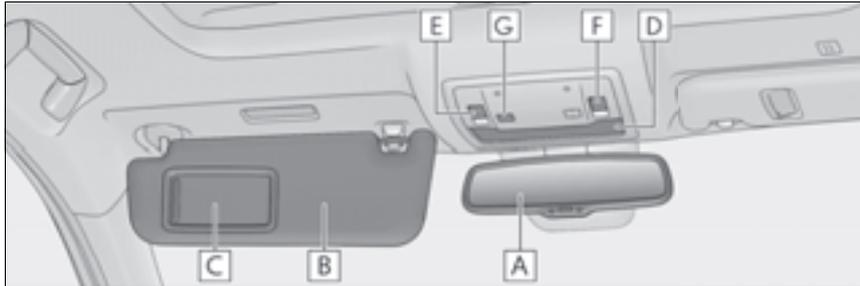
* : If equipped

■ Interior (Right-hand drive vehicles)



A	SRS airbags.....	P.42
B	Floor mats.....	P.34
C	Front seats.....	P.135
D	Rear seats.....	P.136
E	Head restraints.....	P.144
F	Seat belts.....	P.36
G	Console box.....	P.342
H	Inside lock buttons.....	P.113
I	Cup holders.....	P.343
J	Assist grips.....	P.358

■ Ceiling (Right-hand drive vehicles)



- A** Inside rear view mirror P.147
- B** Sun visors ^{*2} P.349
- C** Vanity mirrors P.349
- D** Interior light ^{*3} P.339
Personal lights P.339
- E** Moon roof switches ^{*1} P.153
- F** Moon roof switches ^{*1} P.153
Electronic sunshade switch ^{*1} P.157
- G** Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch ^{*1} P.78

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR-BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.55)



^{*3}: The illustration shows the front, but they are also equipped in the rear.

For safety and security

1

33

- 1-1. **For safe use**
 - Before driving34
 - For safe driving..... 35
 - Seat belts 36
 - SRS airbags42
 - Exhaust gas precautions49
- 1-2. **Child safety**
 - Airbag manual on-off system....51
 - Riding with children52
 - Child restraint systems 53
- 1-3. **Theft deterrent system**
 - Engine immobilizer system73
 - Double locking system75
 - Alarm76

1
For safety and security

Before driving

Observe the following before starting off in the vehicle to ensure safety of driving.

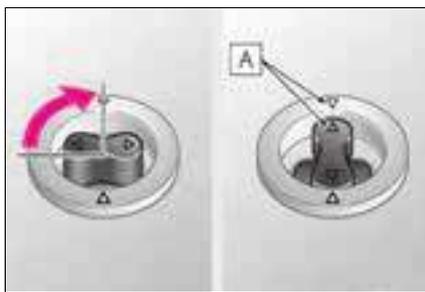
Installing floor mats

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

- 1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



- 2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.



A Always align the \triangle marks.

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

tion.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.

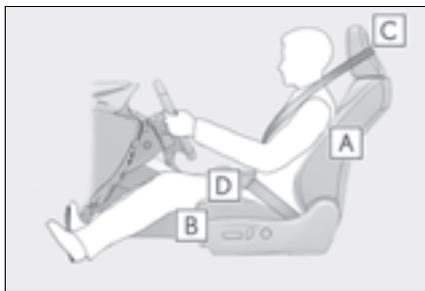


- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

For safe driving

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



- A** Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P.135)
- B** Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P.135, 146)
- C** Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P.144)
- D** Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P.37)

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving. Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback. A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats. Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired. Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P.37)

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.53)

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see the rear of the vehicle clearly, by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly. (→P.147, 149)

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

⚠ WARNING**■ Pregnant women**

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.37)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.

**■ People suffering illness**

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.37)

■ When children are in the vehicle

→P.70

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.

- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there's no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

Correct use of the seat belts

- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.

- Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Child seat belt usage

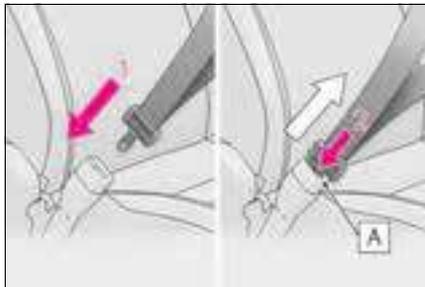
The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

- Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.53)
- When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. (→P.36)

■ Seat belt regulations

If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.

Fastening and releasing the seat belt (except for the rear center seat)



- 1 To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.
- 2 To release the seat belt, press the release button **A**.

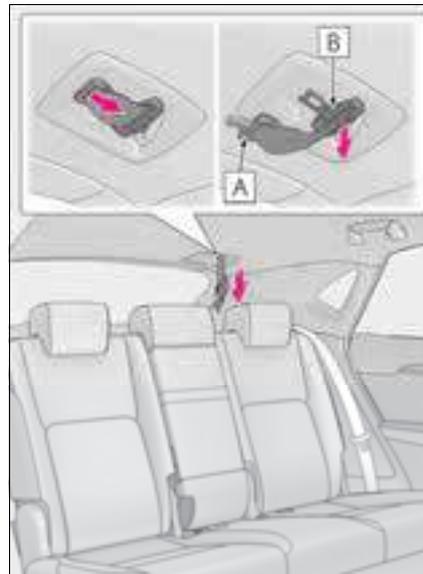
■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. When the seat belt

locks, pull the belt strongly and then release the belt, then a slow and easy pulling will allow the belt to extend.

Fastening the seat belt (for the rear center seat)

- 1 Take out the plate.

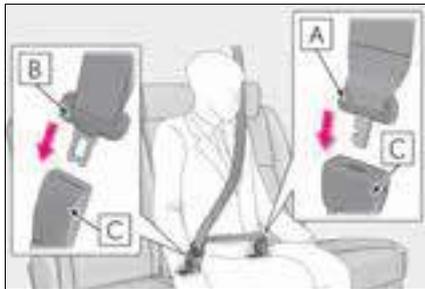


A Plate A

B Plate B

- 2 When fixing the belt, in the order of plate A and then plate B, insert the

plate into the buckle until a clicking sound is heard.



A Plate A

B Plate B

C Buckle

WARNING

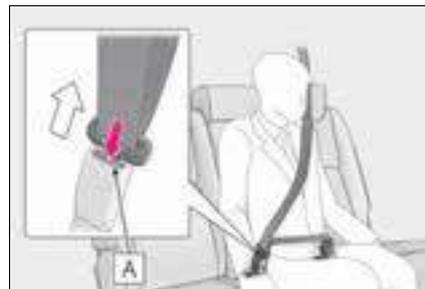
■ When using the rear center seat belt

Do not use the rear center seat belt with either buckle released. Fastening only one of the buckles may result in death or serious injury in case of sudden braking or a collision.



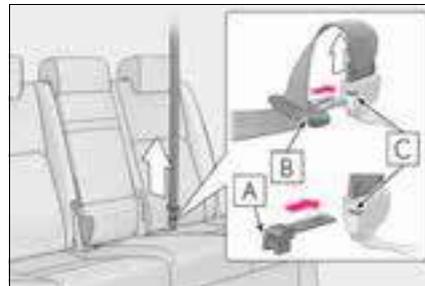
Releasing and stowing the seat belt (for the rear center seat)

- 1 To release the hooked buckle, push the buckle release button **A**.



- 2 Insert the mechanical key (→P.106) or plate B into the notch of buckle and remove the belt.

Retract the belt slowly when releasing and stowing the seat belt.



A Mechanical key

B Plate B

C Buckle

- 3 Stow in the cover in the order of plate B and then plate A.

In order to securely fix it, firmly insert it to

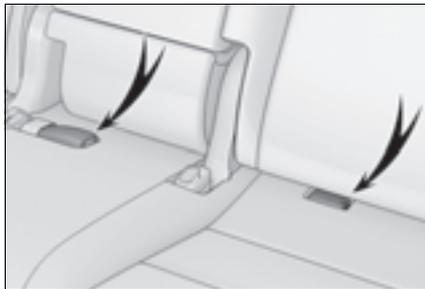
the back.



A Plate A

B Plate B

- 4 Stow the seat belt buckle in the pockets.



■ **Emergency locking retractor (ELR)**

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. When the seat belt locks, pull the belt strongly and then release the belt, then a slow and easy pulling will allow the belt to extend.

Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)



- 1 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button **A**.
- 2 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up.

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Adjustable shoulder anchor**

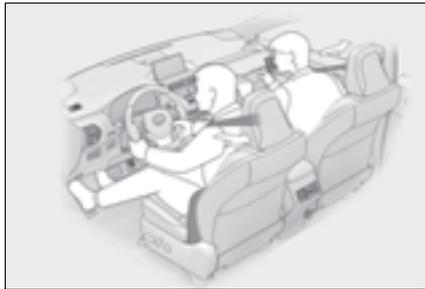
Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

Seat belt pretensioners (front seats)

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision.

The pretensioners do not activate in the

event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact, a rear impact or a vehicle roll-over.



■ **Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated**

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ **Seat belt pretensioners**

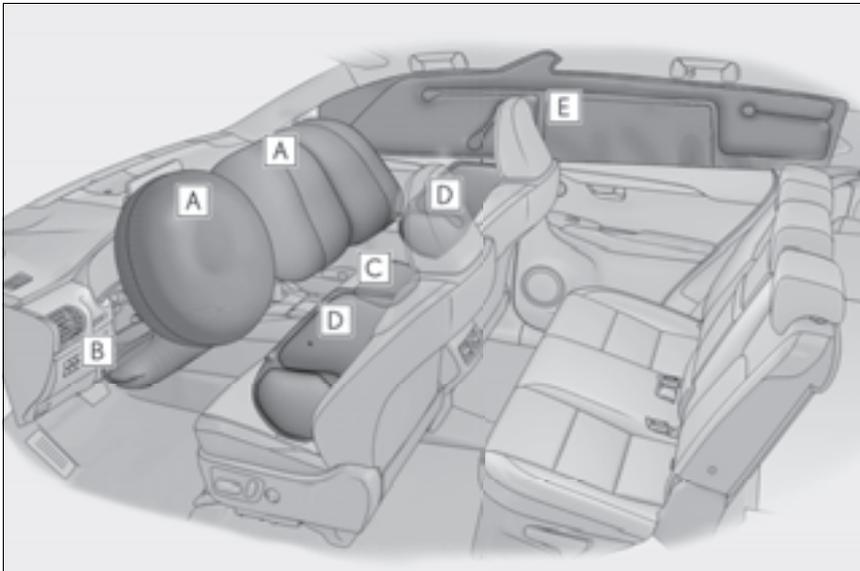
If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer.

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

SRS airbag system

■ Location of the SRS airbags



► SRS front airbags

A SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag

Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

B SRS knee airbag

Can help provide driver protection

C SRS seat cushion airbag

Can help restrain the front passenger

► SRS side and curtain shield airbags

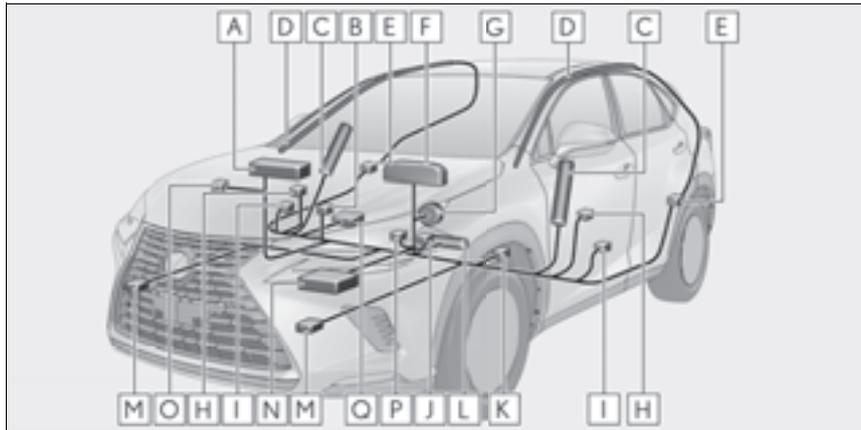
D SRS side airbags

Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

E SRS curtain shield airbags

Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats

■ SRS airbag system components



- A** Front passenger airbag
- B** "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator (if equipped)
- C** Side airbags
- D** Curtain shield airbags
- E** Side impact sensors (rear)
- F** SRS warning light
- G** Driver airbag
- H** Side impact sensors (front door)
- I** Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters
- J** Driver's seat belt buckle switch
- K** Driver's seat position sensor
- L** Knee airbag
- M** Front impact sensors
- N** Airbag sensor assembly
- O** Airbag manual on-off switch (if equipped)
- P** Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch

Q Seat cushion airbag

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

■ If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- All of the doors will be unlocked. (→P.111)
- Fuel supply to the engine will be stopped. (→P.422)

■ SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform). However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:
 - If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
 - If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle underrides, or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.
- The SRS seat cushion airbag on the front passenger seat will not operate if the

occupant is not wearing a seat belt.

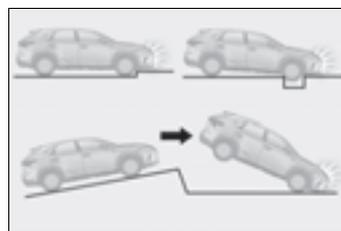
■ SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction perpendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).
- Both SRS side airbags will deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Both SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.

■ Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags, SRS side and curtain shield airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

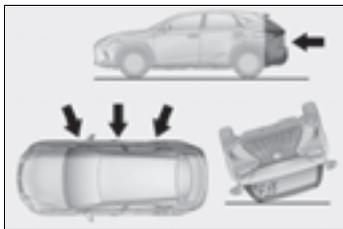
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling



■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

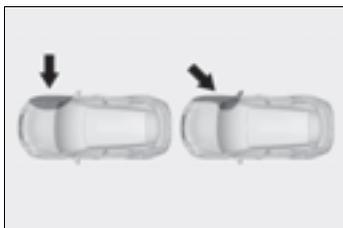
- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



■ Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

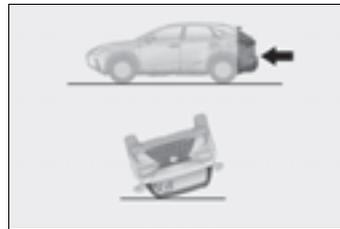
- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle



The SRS side and curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

- Collision from the rear

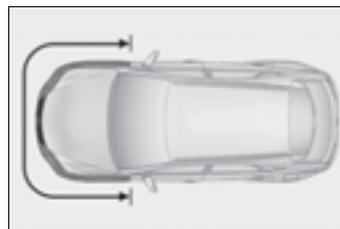
- Vehicle rollover



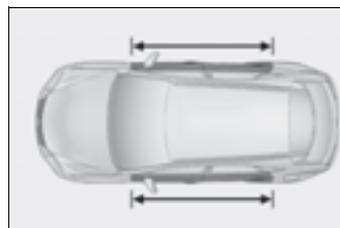
■ When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

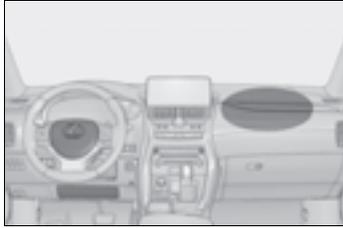
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.



- A portion of a door or its surrounding area is damaged or deformed, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



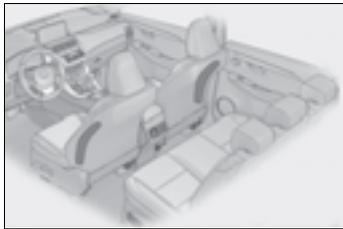
- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The front passenger's seat cushion surface is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the SRS side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the SRS curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



⚠ WARNING

■ SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

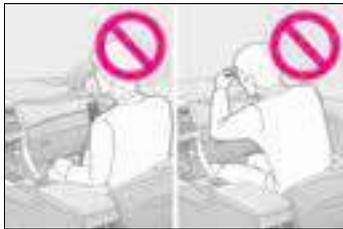
- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly. The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag. Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:
 - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
 - Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.

⚠ WARNING

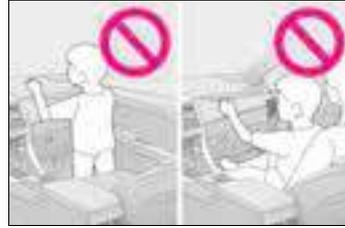
- If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.

The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.

- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P.53)
- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.



- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.
- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



⚠ WARNING

- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield, side door glass, front or rear pillar, roof side rail and assist grip. (Except for the speed limit label →P.440)



- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.

- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags and SRS seat cushion airbag inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags and seat cushion airbag from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags and seat cushion airbag to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.

- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.

- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.

- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars or roof side rails

⚠ WARNING

- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows or winches
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as mobile two-way radios (RF-transmitter) and CD players

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body is contained in exhaust gases if inhaled.

⚠ WARNING

Exhaust gases contain harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless.

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases to enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Important points while driving

- Keep the back door closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the back door is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ When parking

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the engine.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time. If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

1

For safety and security

**WARNING****■ Exhaust pipe**

The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

Airbag manual on-off system*

*: If equipped

This system deactivates the front passenger airbag and seat cushion airbag.

Only deactivate the airbags when using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

System components



A "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator

The "ON" indicator light turns on when the airbag system is on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

B Airbag manual on-off switch

"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator information

If any of the following problems occur, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- Neither "ON" nor "OFF" comes on.
- The indicator light does not change when the airbag manual on-off switch is switched to "ON" or "OFF".

Deactivating the airbags for the front passenger

Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and turn to the "OFF" position.

The "OFF" indicator light turns on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).



⚠ WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

For safety reasons, always install a child restraint system in a rear seat. In the event that the rear seat cannot be used, the front seat can be used as long as the airbag manual on-off system is set to "OFF".

If the airbag manual on-off system is left on, the strong impact of the airbag deployment (inflation) may cause serious injury or even death.

**WARNING****■ When a child restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat**

Ensure that the airbag manual on-off system is set to "ON".

If it is left off, the airbag may not deploy in the event of an accident, which may result in serious injury or even death.

Riding with children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle.

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- Use the rear door child-protector lock or the window lock switch to avoid children opening the door while driving or operating the power window accidentally. (→P.113, 152)
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, back door, seats, etc.

**WARNING****■ When children are in the vehicle**

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof (if equipped) or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

Child restraint systems

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.

Table of contents

Points to remember: →P.53

When using a child restraint system: →P.54

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position: →P.59, 64

Child restraint system installation method: →P.67

- Fixed with a seat belt: →P.68
- Fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage: →P.70
- Using a top tether anchorage: →P.71

Points to remember

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus

dealer for the child restraint system installation.

- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- Note that not all child restraint systems can fit in all vehicles.

Before using or purchasing a child restraint system, check the compatibility of the child restraint system with seat positions. (→P.59, 64)

WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.
- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.

WARNING

- For Taiwan: Never install a child restraint system on the front passenger seat. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.

■ Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle. (→P.59, 64) Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the luggage compartment.

When using a child restraint system

■ When installing a child restraint system to the front passenger seat (except for Taiwan)

For the safety of a child, install a child restraint system to a rear seat. When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the passenger seat as follows and install the child restraint system.

- Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.
- Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position.

Vehicles with airbag manual on-off switch: When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

Vehicles without airbag manual on-off switch: If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

- If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.



⚠ WARNING

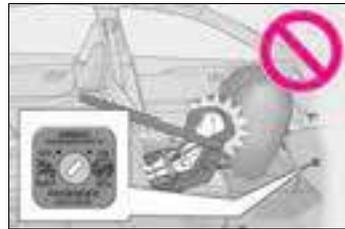
■ **When using a child restraint system (except for Taiwan)**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Vehicles without airbag manual on-off switch: Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



- Vehicles with airbag manual on-off switch: Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P.51)
The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



⚠ WARNING

- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.

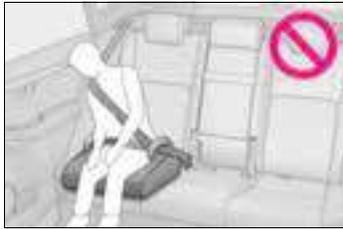
**⚠ WARNING**

- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).



⚠ WARNING

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillars, or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat (left-hand drive vehicles) or the left-hand rear seat (right-hand drive vehicles).

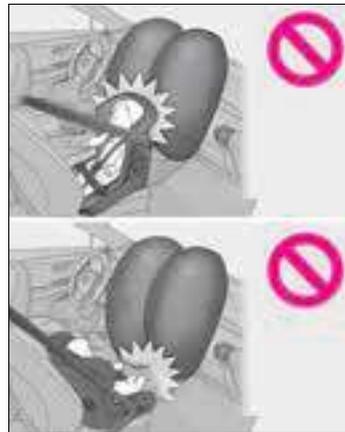


- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

■ When using a child restraint system (for Taiwan)

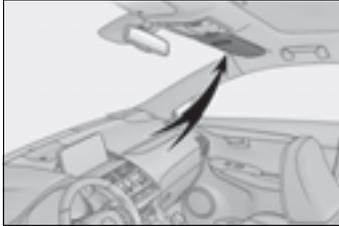
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Never use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat. The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



⚠ WARNING

- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.



"9L" in the illustration is not related to the contents of the warning label.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, rear pillars or roof side rails from which the SRS curtain shield airbag deploys even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS curtain shield airbag inflates, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.



- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (except for Taiwan)**■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position**

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.60) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.

Check the selected child restraint system together with the following "Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems".

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

- 1 Checking the child restraint system standards.

Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN (ECE) R44*¹ or UN (ECE) R129*^{1, 2}.

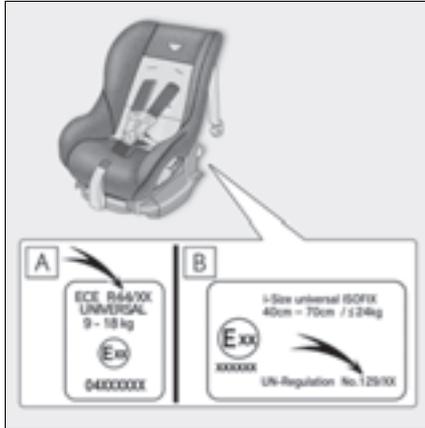
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.

Check for an approval mark attached to

1

For safety and security

the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation Number

A UN (ECE) R44 approval mark^{*3}

The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN (ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN (ECE) R129 approval mark^{*3}

The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN (ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

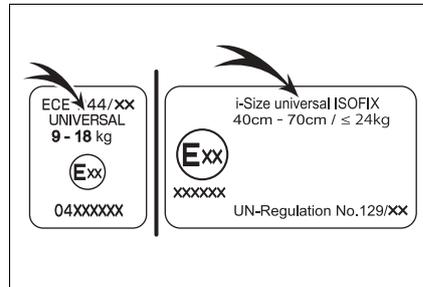
2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.

Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.

Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"

- "vehicle specific"



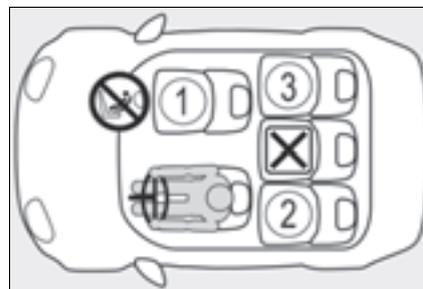
^{*1}: UN (ECE) R44 and UN (ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

^{*2}: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

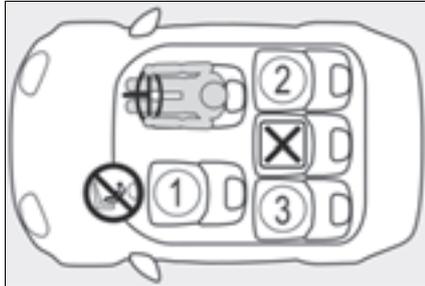
^{*3}: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ **Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems**

- ▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



► Right-hand drive vehicles



① *1,2,3	U *4
② *2,3	  
③ *2,3	  

U Suitable for “universal” category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

 Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.

 Includes a top tether anchorage point.

 Not suitable for child restraint system.

Vehicles without airbag manual on-off switch: Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat. Vehicles with airbag manual on-off switch: Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on.



*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Vehicles without airbag manual on-off switch: Use only a front-facing child restraint system. Vehicles with airbag manual on-off switch: Use only a front-facing child restraint system when the airbag manual on-off switch is on.

■ Detail information for child restraint systems installation

Seating position					
Seat position number	①			②	③
	Vehicles without airbag manual on-off switch	Vehicles with airbag manual on-off switch			
		ON	OFF		
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	No	Yes	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	No	No	R1, R2X, R2, R3	R1, R2X, R2, R3
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	No	No	F2X, F2, F3	F2X, F2, F3
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	No	B2, B3	B2, B3

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture” relation, confirm the following table.

If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

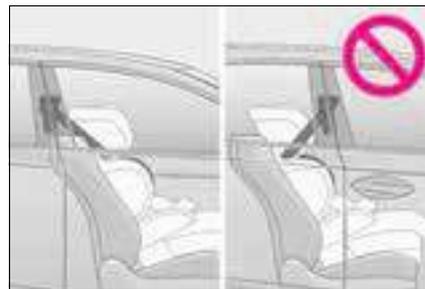
Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems

Fixture	Description
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide,

move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for Taiwan)

■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.65) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.

Check the selected child restraint system together with the following “Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems”.

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

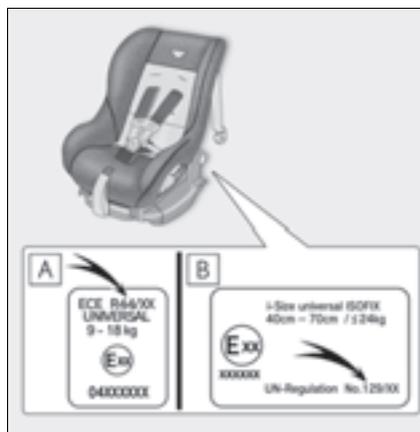
1 Checking the child restraint system standards.

Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN (ECE) R44^{*1} or UN (ECE) R129^{*1, 2}.

The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.

Check for an approval mark attached to

the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation Number

A UN (ECE) R44 approval mark^{*3}

The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN (ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN (ECE) R129 approval mark^{*3}

The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN (ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

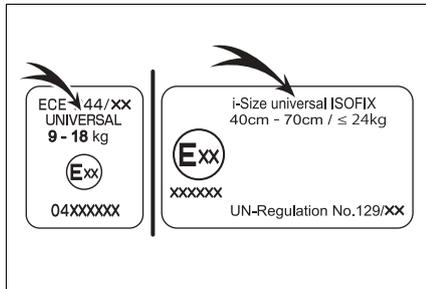
2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.

Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.

Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

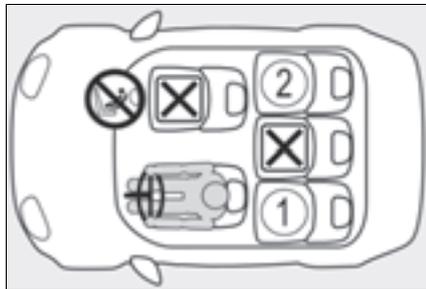
- “universal”
- “semi-universal”
- “restricted”

- “vehicle specific”



- *1: UN (ECE) R44 and UN (ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.
- *2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.
- *3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ **Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems**



① *1,2	
② *1,2	

- Suitable for “universal” category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.
- Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.
- Includes a top tether anchorage point.
- Not suitable for child restraint system.

- *1: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*2: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head

■ Detail information for child restraint systems installation

Seating position		
Seat position number	①	②
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	Yes	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	R1, R2X, R2, R3	R1, R2X, R2, R3
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	F2X, F2, F3	F2X, F2, F3
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	B2, B3	B2, B3

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture” relation, confirm the following table.

If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems

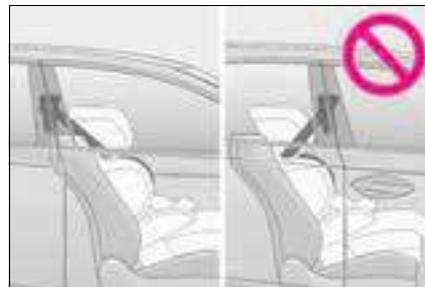
Fixture	Description
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is

no interference.

- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

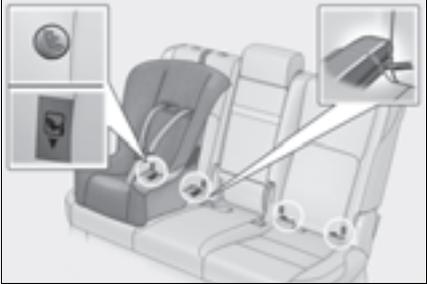
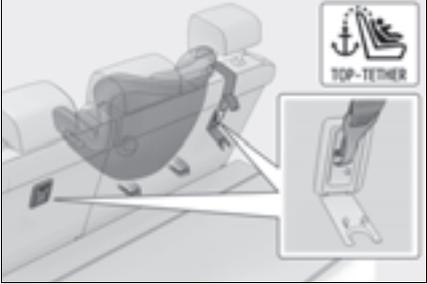


- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system installation method

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about

the installation of the child restraint system.

	Installation method	Page
Seat belt attachment		P.68
ISOFIX lower anchorage attachment		P.70
Top tether anchorage attachment		P.71

Child restraint system fixed with a seat belt

■ **Installing child restraint system using a seat belt**

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system on hand is not within the “universal” category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the “Vehicle List” provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.59, 64)

- 1 If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is

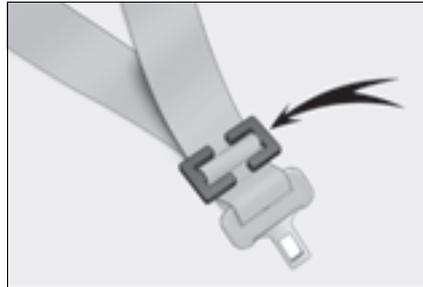
unavoidable, refer to P.54 for front passenger seat adjustment.

- 2 Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.
- 3 If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.145)
- 4 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted.
Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint system.



- 5 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt

locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



- 6 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.70)

■ Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion.

Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ When installing a child restraint system

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer: Locking clip for child restraint system (Part No. 73119-22010)

⚠ WARNING**■ When installing a child restraint system**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage**■ ISOFIX lower anchorages (ISOFIX child restraint system)**

Lower anchorages are provided for the outboard rear seats. (Tags or Buttons displaying the location of the anchorages are attached to the seats.)

**■ Installation with ISOFIX lower anchorage (ISOFIX child restraint system)**

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.59, 64)

- 1 Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.
- 2 If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.145)

- 3** Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

The bars are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback.



- 4** After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.70)

⚠ WARNING

■ **When installing a child restraint system**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When using the lower anchorages, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorages and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.

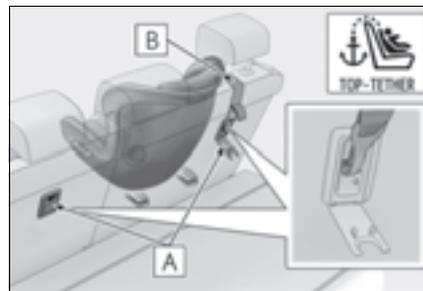
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Using a top tether anchorage

■ **Top tether anchorages**

Top tether anchorages are provided for the outboard rear seat.

Use top tether anchorages when fixing the top strap.



A Top tether anchorages

B Top strap

■ **Fixing the top strap to the top tether anchorage**

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

- 1** If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Other-

wise, put the head restraint in the upper most position. (→P.145)



- 2 Open the top tether anchorage cover, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched. (→P.70) When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, be sure to have the top strap pass underneath the head restraint.



- A Hook
- B Top strap

- Do not attach the top strap to anything other than the top tether anchorage.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- When installing the child restraint system with the head restraint being raised, after the head restraint has been raised and then the top tether anchorage has been fixed, do not lower the head restraint.

 NOTICE

■ Top tether anchorages

When not in use, make certain to close the lid. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.

 WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the top strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.

Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

Operating the system

The security indicator flashes after the engine switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator stops flashing after the engine switch has been turned to

■ Certification for the engine immobilizer system

► For vehicles sold in Taiwan

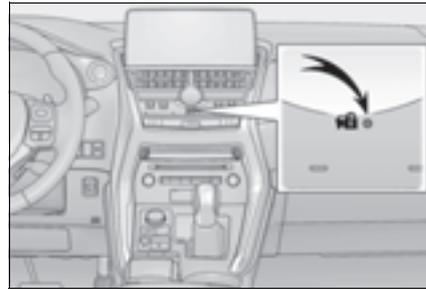
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.



■ System maintenance

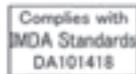
The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key registered to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

74 1-3. Theft deterrent system

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore



- ▶ For vehicles sold in the Dominican Republic

FCC ID: NI4TMIMB-3

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam



**NOTICE**

- **To ensure the system operates correctly**

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Double locking system*

*: If equipped

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

Vehicles employing this system have labels on the window glass of both front doors.

**Setting/canceling the double locking system****■ Setting**

Turn the engine switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that all the doors are closed.

Using the entry function:

Touch the sensor area on the outside door handle twice within 5 seconds.

Using the wireless remote control:

Press  twice within 5 seconds.

■ Canceling

Using the entry function: Hold the outside door handle.

Using the wireless remote control:

Press  .

 **WARNING**

■ **Double locking system precaution**

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle, because all the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

Alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- ▶ Except for Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt
- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function (if equipped), wireless remote control or mechanical key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (An intruder gets in the vehicle.) (if equipped)
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination. (if equipped)
- Any of the windows are broken. (if equipped)

- ▶ For Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt
- A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor detects something moving inside the vehicle. (An intruder gets in the vehicle.) (if equipped)
- The tilt sensor detects a change of vehicle inclination. (if equipped)
- Any of the windows are broken. (if equipped)

Setting/canceling/stopping the alarm system

■ Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following.

- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof (if equipped) are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

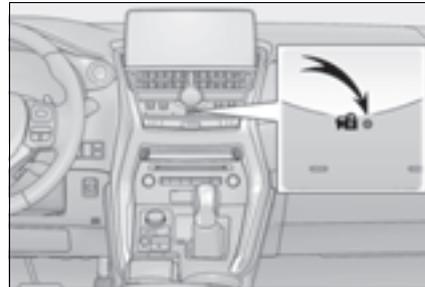
■ Setting

Close the doors and hood, and lock all the doors using the entry function (if equipped) or wireless remote control.

The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

Except for Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt, the alarm can also be set using the mechanical key.

The security indicator changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.



■ Canceling or stopping

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm.

- Unlock the doors using the entry function (if equipped) or wireless remote control. (Except for Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt, the mechanical key can also be used.)
- Except for Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt: Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)
- For Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt: Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

■ **Triggering of the alarm**

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

- For Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt:
The doors are unlocked using the mechanical key.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door or hood, or unlocks the vehicle using an inside lock button.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P.463)



■ **Alarm-operated door lock**

In the following cases, depending on the situation, the door may automatically lock to prevent improper entry into the vehicle:

- When a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door and the alarm is activated.
- While the alarm is activated, a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door.

- When recharging or replacing the battery.

■ **Customization (For Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt)**

The alarm can be set to deactivate when the mechanical key is used to unlock.
(Customizable features: →P.482)

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To ensure the system operates correctly**

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor (if equipped)

- The intrusion sensor detects intruders or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

■ **Setting the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor**

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set automatically when the alarm is set. (→P.77)

■ **Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor**

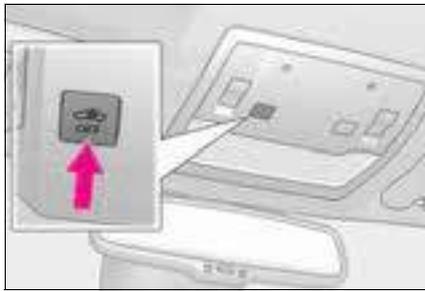
If you are leaving pets or other moving things inside the vehicle, make sure to disable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor before setting the alarm, as they will respond to movement inside the

vehicle.

- 1 Turn the engine switch off.
- 2 Press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

A message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will revert to on each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.



■ Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor are canceled, pressing the engine switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function (if equipped) or wireless remote control will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.
- The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is reactivated.

■ Intrusion sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- People or pets are in the vehicle.



- A window or the moon roof (if equipped) is open.

In this case, the sensor may detect the following:

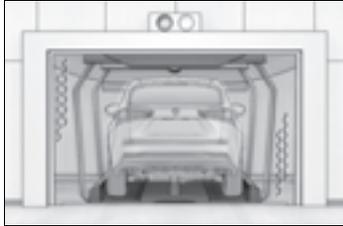
- Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
- Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
- The movement of people outside the vehicle



- Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.



- The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such as in a parking garage.



- Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.



- The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.
- The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, and other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

■ Tilt sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

- The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.
- The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.
- The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.
- Any of the tires loses air pressure.
- The vehicle is jacked up.
- An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.
- Cargo is loaded onto or unloaded from the roof luggage carrier.

⚠ NOTICE

- To ensure the intrusion sensor functions correctly
- Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.



- To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



- Installing accessories other than genuine Lexus parts or leaving objects between the driver's seat and front passenger's seat may reduce the detection performance.

Vehicle status information and indicators

2

81

2-1. Instrument cluster

Warning lights and indicators. **82**

Gauges and meters **87**

Multi-information display..... **90**

Head-up display **97**

Fuel consumption information **101**

2

Vehicle status information and indicators

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

Instrument cluster

For the purpose of explanation, the following illustration displays all warning lights and indicators illuminated.



The units used on the meters may differ depending on the target region.

Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in any of the vehicle's systems.

	Brake system warning light* ¹ (→P.423) (Red)		Brake system warning light* ¹ (→P.424) (Yellow)
	Charging system warning light* ² (→P.423)		Malfunction indicator lamp* ¹ (→P.424)
	Low engine oil pressure warning light* ² (→P.423)		SRS warning light* ¹ (→P.424)
	High coolant temperature warning light* ² (→P.424)		ABS warning light* ¹ (→P.425)
			Electric power steering system warning light* ¹ (→P.425) (Yellow)

 Electric power steering system warning light^{*1} (→P.425)
(Red)

 PCS warning light^{*1} (if equipped) (→P.425)

 LTA indicator^{*2} (if equipped) (→P.426)

 LDA indicator^{*2} (if equipped) (→P.426)
(Orange)

 PKSB OFF indicator^{*1,3} (if equipped) (→P.426)

 Slip indicator light^{*1} (→P.427)

 Brake hold operated indicator^{*1,3} (→P.427)

 Parking brake indicator^{*3} (→P.427)

 Low fuel level warning light (→P.427)

 Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (→P.428)

 Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light^{*4} (if equipped) (→P.428)

 Master warning light^{*1} (→P.429)

 Tire pressure warning light^{*1} (if equipped) (→P.429)

 Brake Override System/Drive-Start Control warning light^{*2} (→P.430)

^{*1}: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a

system if the lights do not turn on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

^{*2}: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

^{*3}: This light flashes to indicate a malfunction.

^{*4}: This light illuminates on the center panel.

WARNING

If a safety system warning light does not come on

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS airbag warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.

 Turn signal indicator (→P.185)

 Tail light indicator (→P.193)

 Headlight high beam indicator (→P.197)

 Automatic High Beam indicator (if equipped) (→P.201)

 Adaptive High-beam System indicator (if equipped) (→P.199)

 Front fog light indicator (if equipped) (→P.204)

	Rear fog light indicator (if equipped) (→P.204)		PKSB OFF indicator ^{*1,4} (if equipped) (→P.284)
	Eco Driving Indicator Light ^{*1} (→P.85)		Slip indicator light ^{*1,3} (→P.308)
	"Eco" indicator ^{*2} (→P.304)		VSC off indicator ^{*1,4} (→P.309)
	"Sport" indicator ^{*2} (if equipped) (→P.304)		PCS warning light ^{*1,4} (if equipped) (→P.225)
	"Sport S" indicator ^{*2} (if equipped) (→P.304)		Stop & Start indicator ^{*1,2} (if equipped) (→P.275)
	"Sport S+" indicator ^{*2} (if equipped) (→P.304)		Stop & Start cancel indicator ^{*1,2,4} (if equipped) (→P.276)
	"Custom" indicator ^{*2} (if equipped) (→P.304)		Parking brake indicator (→P.186)
	Dynamic radar cruise control indicator ^{*2} (if equipped) (→P.249, 259)		Brake hold standby indicator ^{*1} (→P.189)
	Cruise control "SET" indicator ^{*2} (→P.249, 259, 267)		Brake hold operated indicator ^{*1} (→P.189)
	Cruise control indicator ^{*2} (→P.249, 259, 267)		All-wheel drive lock indicator ^{*1} (→P.312)
	LTA indicator ^{*2} (if equipped) (→P.237)	(AWD models only)	
	LDA indicator ^{*2} (if equipped) (→P.245)		Low outside temperature indicator ^{*2,5} (→P.87)
	LTA indicator ^{*2} (if equipped) (→P.237)		BSM outside rear view mirror indicators ^{*6,7} (if equipped) (→P.293)
	LDA indicator ^{*2} (if equipped) (→P.245)		Security indicator ^{*8} (→P.73, 77)
	LTA indicator ^{*2,3} (if equipped) (→P.237)		"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator ^{*1,8} (if equipped) (→P.51)
	LDA indicator ^{*2,3} (if equipped) (→P.245)		
	Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator (if equipped) (→P.279)		

^{*1}: These lights turn on when the engine switch is turned to the IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a

system if the lights do not turn on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

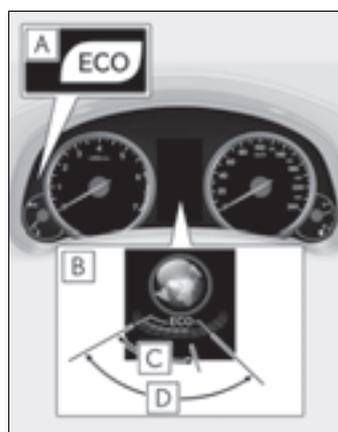
- *2: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.
- *3: The light flashes to indicate that the system is operating.
- *4: The light comes on when the system is turned off.
- *5: When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, the indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.
- *6: In order to confirm operation, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators illuminate in the following situations:
 - When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode while the BSM main switch is set to ON.
 - When the BSM main switch is set to ON while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

If the system is functioning correctly, the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators will turn off after a few seconds.

If the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators do not illuminate or do not turn off, there may be a malfunction in the system.

If this occurs, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- *7: This light illuminates on the outside rear view mirrors.
- *8: This light illuminates on the center panel.

■ Eco Driving Indicator



A Eco Driving Indicator Light

During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, or when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

B Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

C Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

If the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, the right side of the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will illuminate.

When this happens, the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn off.

D Zone of Eco driving

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch is operated.
- Neither Normal mode nor Eco mode is selected. (→P.304)

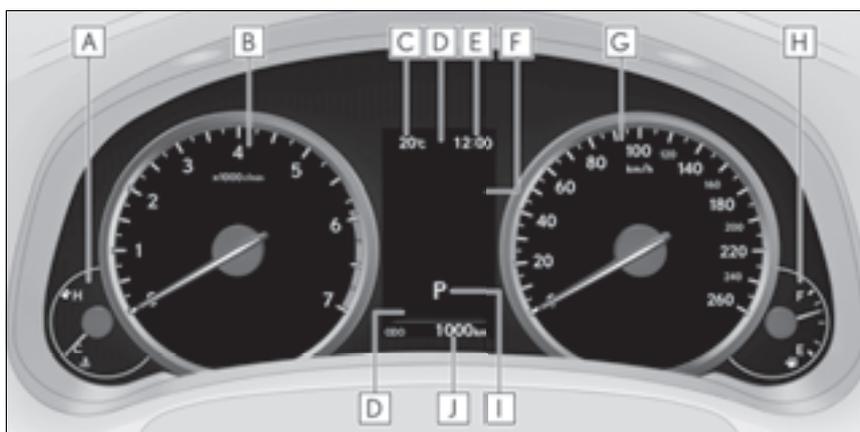
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

Settings of the display and non-display of the Eco Driving Indicator Light can be changed. (→P.482)

Gauges and meters

The meters display various drive information.

Meter display



The units used on the meters may differ depending on the target region.

A Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

B Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

C Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F). Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower.

D Background color of driving mode

Background color changes according to the driving mode. (→P.304)

- Sport mode: Red
- Eco mode: Blue

When in Normal mode/Custom mode, the background color is black.

E Clock

Time displayed is linked to the analog clock on the instrument panel. (→P.349)

F Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.90)

Displays warning messages in case of a malfunction (→P.433)

G Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed

H Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

I Shift position and shift range

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (→P.177, 181)

J Odometer, trip meter and maintenance required information (if equipped) display

Odometer:

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven

Trip meter:

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters "A" and "B" can be used to record and display different distances independently.

Maintenance required information:

Displays the remaining distance until the engine oil should be changed.

- Displays the maintenance required information when the engine switch is IGNITION ON mode.

- It can be reset on  of the multi-information display. (→P.93)

■ **Operating condition**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Outside temperature display**

- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change.
 - When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
 - When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)
- When "--" or "E" is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ **Pop-up display**

In some situations, a pop-up display will be temporarily displayed on the multi-information display or the odometer/trip

meter/maintenance required information screen. The pop-up display function can be set on/off. (→P.95)

■ **Liquid crystal display**

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

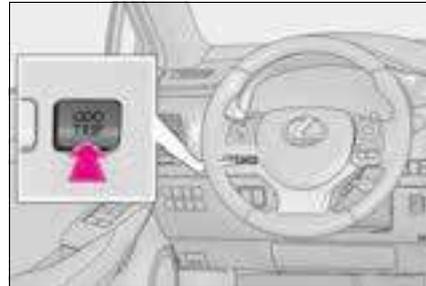
■ **Customization**

The meter display can be customized on the multi-information display. (Customizable features: →P.482)

⚠ WARNING**■ The information display at low temperatures**

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in personal death or injury.

**Changing the Instrument panel light brightness**

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.

⚠ NOTICE**■ To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H); or "Engine Coolant Temp High" is shown on the multi-information display. In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P.465)



- 1 Darker
- 2 Brighter

■ Instrument panel brightness adjustment

The instrument panel brightness levels when the tail lights are on and off can be adjusted individually. However, when the surroundings are bright (daytime, etc.), turning on the tail lights will not change the instrument panel brightness.

Changing between the odometer, trip meter and maintenance required information

Switches between odometer, trip meter and maintenance required information (if equipped) displays. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the button will reset the trip meter.

2

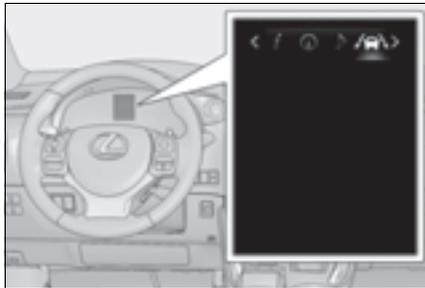
Vehicle status information and indicators

Multi-information display

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data.

Display contents

■ Display



■ Menu icons

	Drive information (→P.91)
	Navigation system-linked display (if equipped) (→P.93)
	Audio system-linked display (→P.93)
	Driving assist system information (→P.93)
	Stop & Start system information (if equipped) (→P.93)
	Warning message display (→P.93)
	Settings display (→P.93)

■ Liquid crystal display

→P.88

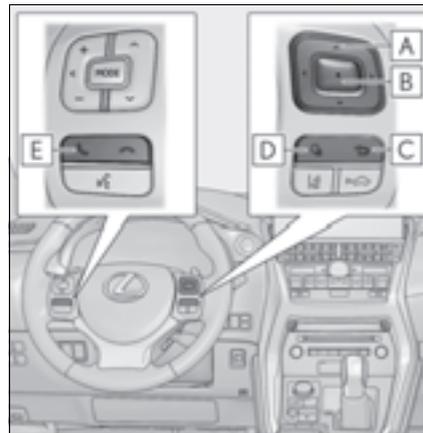
⚠ NOTICE

■ The multi-information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

Changing the meter display

The multi-information display is operated using the meter control switches.



A Select an item/change pages

B Enter/set

C Return to the previous screen

D Press: Displays the screen regis-

tered to When no screen has been registered, the drive information screen will be displayed. Press and hold: Registers the currently

displayed screen to 

The registration confirmation screen is displayed. If the selected screen cannot be registered, a registration failure message will be shown.

E Call sending/receiving and history display

Linked with the hands-free system, sending or receiving call is displayed. For details regarding the hands-free system, refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

Drive information

■ Content displayed as drive information

Select to display various drive data.

Up to 2 of the following items can be selected.

Items displayed can be switched by pressing  or  of the meter control switches to select  and pressing  or .

- Current fuel consumption ^{*1}

Displays the current rate of fuel consumption

- Average fuel consumption (after reset ^{*2}/after start/after refuel) ^{*1}

Displays the average fuel consumption since the function was reset, the engine was started, and the vehicle was refueled, respectively

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

- Average vehicle speed (after reset ^{*2}/after start) ^{*1}

Displays the average vehicle speed since the function was reset and the engine was started, respectively

- Elapsed time (after reset ^{*2}/after start) ^{*1}

Displays the elapsed time since the function was reset and the engine was started, respectively

- Distance (driving range/after start) ^{*1}

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining and the distance driven after the engine was started respectively.

- This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.
- When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated. When refueling, turn the engine switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch off, the display may not be updated.

- Stop & Start system operation time (after reset ^{*2}/after start)

Displays the amount of time the engine was stopped due to operation of the Stop & Start system.

^{*1}: Displayed when the item is set in "Drive Info 1", "Drive Info 2" and "Drive Info 3".

^{*2}: The function can be reset by pressing the  of the meter control switches for longer than 1 second when the item to reset is displayed.

If there is more than one item that can be reset, the item selection screen will appear.

■ Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

→P.85

■ Boost Meter/Oil Temperature Gauge/Oil Pressure Gauge (if equipped)

Boost Meter:

Displays the boost pressure. The display changes colors when the specified pressure is exceeded.

Oil Temperature Gauge:

Displays the temperature of the engine oil. The display flashes when the engine oil exceeds 140°C (284°F).

Oil Pressure Gauge:

Displays the oil pressure for the engine interior. A buzzer sounds and warning message is displayed when the oil pressure gets low. (→P.435)

Depending on the road conditions, temperature, vehicle speed, etc., the actual vehicle condition on the display screen may differ.

Use the display screen as a reference.

■ G monitor (if equipped)

Displays the acceleration forces of the front, back, left and right of the vehicle. Also displays the turning angle of the steering wheel, brake oil pressure, accelerator opening.

- The actual vehicle conditions may differ from those on the display screen, depending on the road conditions, outside temperature, vehicle

speed, etc. Use the display screen as a reference.

- If a battery terminal is disconnected and reconnected, the steering amount display may be disabled temporarily. After driving the vehicle for a while, the display will be enabled.

■ Speedometer

Displays the vehicle speed.

■ Tire inflation pressure (vehicles with the tire inflation pressure display function)

Displays inflation pressure of each tire.

Vehicles with compact spare tire: The inflation pressure of the compact spare tire will not be displayed.

■ Vehicle sway warning

Detects the sway of the vehicle within a lane, which is often associated with a decrease in the driver's attention level, and displays the decrease in attention using a bar display.

The shorter the bar length, the more the driver may need to rest.

This display is a part of the LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) system or LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) system. The display is enabled when the operating conditions of the vehicle sway warning are met. (→P.235, 246)

■ Display off

A blank screen is displayed

■ When disconnecting and reconnecting battery terminals

The drive information will be reset.

Navigation system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to display the following navigation system-linked information.

- Route guidance
- Compass display (heading-up display)

Audio system-linked display

Select to enable selection of an audio source or track on the display using the meter control switches.

Driving assist system information

Select to display the operational status of the following systems:

- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (→P.231)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (→P.241)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (→P.248)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (→P.259)
- Cruise control (→P.267)

The displayed icon changes depending on the system used.

Stop & Start System Information (if equipped)

Able to display the operation status of the Stop & Start system. (→P.270)

■ Stop & Start system settings

→P.270

■ Idling Stop Time

Displays the current idling stop time (Engine stop time due to the Stop & Start system)

■ Idling Stop Time (after reset/after start)

Displays the total idling stop time (engine stop time via the Stop & Start system) after resetting and engine startup.

■ Idling Stop Time fuel savings (after reset/after start)

Displays the fuel savings (reference) during idling stop time after resetting and engine startup.

Warning message display

Select to display warning messages and measures to be taken if a malfunction is detected. (→P.433)

Settings display

The settings of the following items can be changed, using the meter control switches.

For functions that can be enabled or disabled, the function switches

between on and off each time  is pressed.

■  **LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped) (→P.231)**

Select to set up the following items.

● Lane centering

Select to enable/disable the lane centering function.

● Steering Assist

Select to enable/disable steering wheel assistance.

● Alert

Select to change the alert types.

● Alert sensitivity

Select to set the warning sensitivity.

● Sway warning

Select to enable/disable the vehicle sway warning.

● Sway sensitivity

Select to set the vehicle sway warning sensitivity.

■  **LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped) (→P.241)**

Select to set up the following items.

● Steering Assist

Select to enable/disable steering wheel assistance.

● Alert

Select to change the alert types.

● Alert sensitivity

Select to set the warning sensitivity.

● Sway warning

Select to enable/disable the vehicle sway warning.

● Sway sensitivity

Select to set the vehicle sway warning sensitivity.

■  **PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped) (→P.223)**

Select to set up the following items.

● PCS on/off

Select to enable/disable the pre-collision system.

● PCS sensitivity

Select to change the warning timing.

■  **PKSA (Parking Support Alert) (if equipped) (→P.277)**

Select to set up the following items.

● Lexus parking assist-sensor

Select to enable/disable the Lexus parking assist-sensor.

● Volume

Select to set the volume of the buzzer which sounds when the parking support alert is operated.

■  **PKSB (Parking Support Brake function) (if equipped) (→P.283)**

● PKSB on/off

Select to enable/disable the parking support brake function (for static objects).

■ **Clock**

Select to switch between 12-hour display and 24-hour display.

■ Vehicle Settings

-  PBD (Power Back Door)^{*1}
(→P.114)

Select to set up the following items.

- System settings

Select to enable/disable the power back door system.

- Volume

Select to set the volume of the buzzer which sounds when the power back door system.

- Kick Sensor^{*2}

Select to enable/disable the kick sensor.

^{*1}: Vehicles with power back door

^{*2}: Vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door

-  Stop & Start (if equipped)
(→P.270)

- Stop & Start system operation time

Select to set the length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the "A/C" switch of the air conditioning system is on.

- TPMS (Tire Pressure Warning System) (→P.394)

Select to initialize the tire pressure warning system.

- Oil maintenance (if equipped)
(→P.383)

Select to reset the engine oil maintenance information (message indicating maintenance is required and distance until the next oil change) after engine oil maintenance is performed.

■ Meter settings

- Language

Select to change the language on the display.

- Units

Select to change the unit of measure for fuel consumption.

-  Eco Driving Indicator Light
(→P.85)

Select to activate/deactivate the Eco Driving Indicator Light.

-  Switch settings (→P.90)

Displays a procedure to register a desired screen to .

You can register 1 screen as a shortcut, which can be displayed by pressing .

- Drive information screen (→P.91)

Select to choose between 2 items that will be displayed on each drive information screen ("Drive Info 1", "Drive Info 2" and "Drive Info 3") respectively.

- Pop-up display (→P.88)

Select to set the following pop-up displays, which may appear in some situations, on/off.

- Intersection guidance display of the navigation system-linked system
- Incoming call display of the hands-free phone system
- Stop & Start system duration^{*}
- Stop & Start system status^{*}
- Instrument panel brightness adjustment display

* : Vehicles with Stop & Start system

- Accent color

Select to change the accent colors on the screen, such as the cursor color.

- Initialization

Select to reset the meter display settings.

■ Suspension of the settings display

In the following situations, operation of the settings display will be temporarily suspended.

- When a warning message appears on the multi-information display
- When the vehicle begins to move

■ Tire inflation pressure (vehicles with the tire inflation pressure display function)

- It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- “---” may be displayed if the tire information cannot be determined due to unfavorable radio wave conditions.
- Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using a tire pressure gauge.



NOTICE

■ During setting up the display

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while setting up the display features.

Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)

Automatically displayed when the system is used. (→P.278)



WARNING

■ Cautions during setting up the display

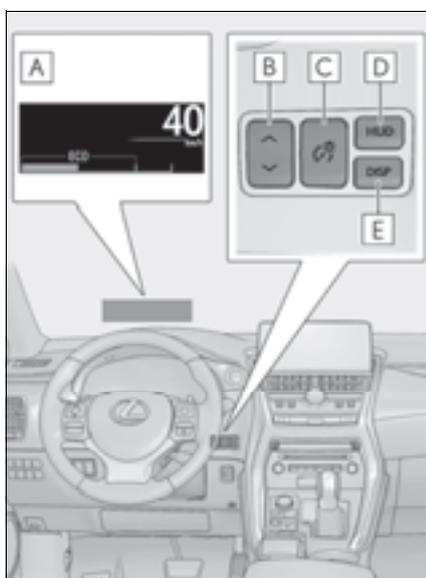
As the engine needs to be running during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

Head-up display*

*: If equipped

The head-up display can be used to project vehicle speed and other information onto the windshield.

System components



A Head-up display

Display brightness will change automatically according to the brightness of the surrounding area.

B Display position adjustment switch

C Display brightness adjustment switch

Display brightness can be adjusted to the desired level.

D "HUD" button

E "DISP" button

Head-up display contents

- Vehicle speed
- Eco Driving Indicator (→P.99)
- Tachometer
- Shift position and shift range

Displays the selected shift position or selected shift range (→P.177, 181)

- Audio display

Displays audio information for approximately 3 seconds when the audio system is operated

- Route guidance display (vehicles with navigation system) (→P.100)

When approaching an intersection while the navigation system is giving route guidance, an arrow will automatically be displayed to indicate the direction of travel.

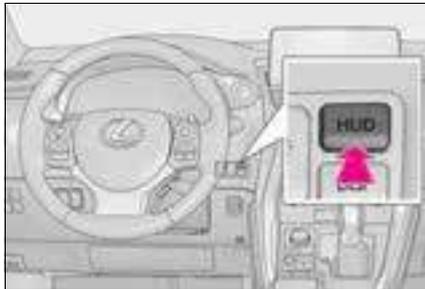
- Lane departure warning display (LTA [Lane Tracing Assist]) (if equipped) (→P.231)
- Lane departure warning display (LDA [Lane Departure Alert with steering control]) (if equipped) (→P.241)
- Approach warning display (Dynamic radar cruise control) (if equipped) (→P.248, 259)
- Pre-collision warning message (pre-collision system) (if equipped) (→P.223)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped) (→P.278)
- Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) (if equipped) (→P.283)

- G monitor (if equipped) (→P.92)
- Boost Meter (if equipped) (→P.92)
- Brake Override System (→P.161)
- Drive-Start Control (→P.161)

Switching the head-up display

■ “HUD” button

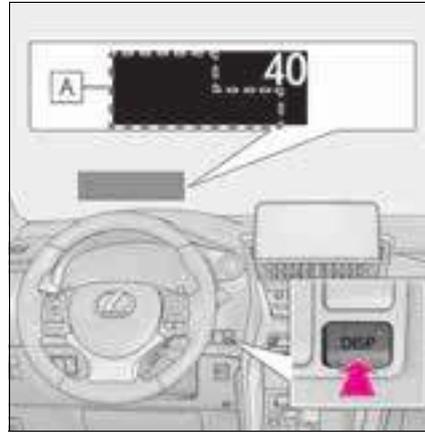
Pressing the button turns the head-up display on/off.



■ “DISP” button

Pressing the button changes the display items **A** (except vehicle speed) as follows:

- Off
- Eco Driving Indicator
- Tachometer
- Tachometer/Boost Meter (if equipped)
- G monitor (if equipped)



■ Head-up display

- The head-up display may seem dark and hard to see when viewed through sunglasses, especially polarized sunglasses. Adjust the brightness of the head-up display or remove your sunglasses.
- When the head-up display is turned off, it will not display anything until it is turned on again.

⚠ WARNING

■ Before using the head-up display

Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Caution for changing settings of the head-up display

As the engine needs to be running while changing the settings of the head-up display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

 NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to components

- Do not place any drinks near the head-up display projector. If the projector gets wet, electrical malfunctions may result.



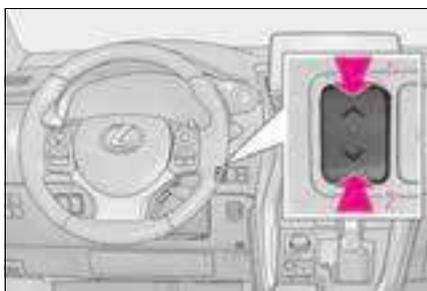
- Do not place anything on or put stickers onto the head-up display projector. Doing so could interrupt head-up display indications.
- Do not touch the inside of the head-up display projector or thrust sharp edges or the like into the projector. Doing so could cause mechanical malfunctions.

■ When changing the settings of the head-up display

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while changing the settings of the head-up display.

Making the display easier to see

■ Adjusting the display position



1 Higher

2 Lower

■ Setting the brightness

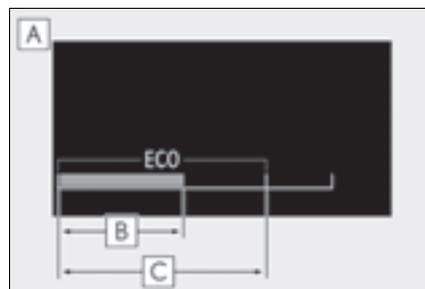
The brightness of the display is automatically adjusted in accordance with the brightness of the surrounding environment. However, the brightness can also be manually adjusted in 9 stages.



1 Brighter

2 Darker

Eco Driving Indicator



A Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display
Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

B Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

If the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, the right side of the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will illuminate.

2

Vehicle status information and indicators

C Zone of Eco driving

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch is operated.
- Neither Normal mode nor Eco mode is selected. (→P.304)
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

Settings of the display and non-display of the Eco Driving Indicator Light can be changed. (→P.95)

Route guidance display (vehicles with navigation system)

When the vehicle approaches an intersection, the direction the vehicle should go is guided by the arrow.

When the vehicle approaches an intersection, the route guidance will start and the distance* to the intersection will also be displayed.

*: The distance indication will disappear when the vehicle passes through the intersection.



Display customization

Select to display/non-display the following items:

- Route guidance to destination
- Driving assist system information
- Audio system operation status
- Lane display

When customizing vehicle features, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe place with the shift lever in P and the parking brake set.



- 1 Press and hold the "DISP" button until the screen changes.

Customization can be performed when the head-up display is on.

- 2 Press the "DISP" button to switch between on and off.

On and off will be switched between each time the button is pressed.

If the button is left alone without being operated for a short time, setting will be finished automatically.

When the battery is disconnected

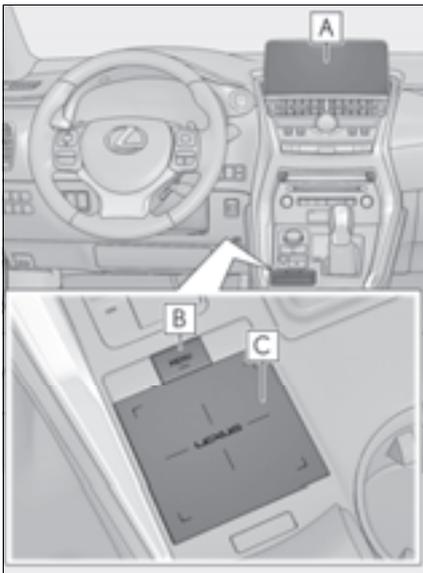
The customize settings of the head-up display will be reset.

Fuel consumption information

Fuel consumption information can be displayed on the navigation system display/multimedia system display.

The fuel consumption information can be displayed and operated on the side display.

System components



A Navigation/multimedia system display

B "MENU" button

C Touchpad*

*: For use of the Remote Touch, refer to "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

Fuel consumption (vehicles with navigation or multimedia system)

■ Trip information

Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch, then select **F** on the screen.

If a screen other than "Trip information" is displayed, select "Trip information".



A Resetting the consumption data

B Fuel consumption in the past 15 minutes

C Current fuel consumption

D Average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

E Elapsed time since the engine was started.

F Cruising range (→P.102)

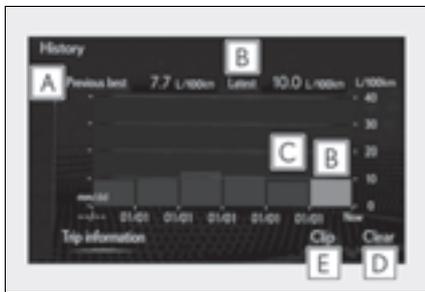
Average fuel consumption for the past 15 minutes is divided by color into past averages and averages attained since the engine switch was last turned to IGNITION ON mode. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ **History**

Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select  on the screen.

If a screen other than “History” is displayed, select “History”.



- A** Best recorded fuel consumption
- B** Latest fuel consumption
- C** Previous fuel consumption record
- D** Resetting the past record data
- E** Updating the latest fuel consumption data

The average fuel consumption history is divided by color into past averages and the average fuel consumption since the last updated. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

■ **Updating the history data**

Update the latest fuel consumption by selecting “Clip” to measure the current fuel consumption again.

■ **Resetting the data**

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting “Clear” (except for Hong Kong and Macao) or “Erase log” (for Hong Kong and Macao).

■ **Cruising range**

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.

As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

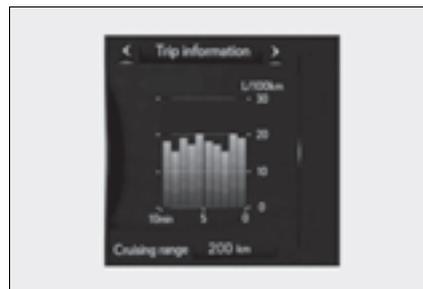
Using the side display (10.3-inch display model only)

Display the vehicle information on the side display (→P.325), and then select

 or  to display the desired screen.

■ **Trip information (type A)**

Displays the average fuel consumption for the past 10 minutes in 1 minute intervals, as well as the cruising range.

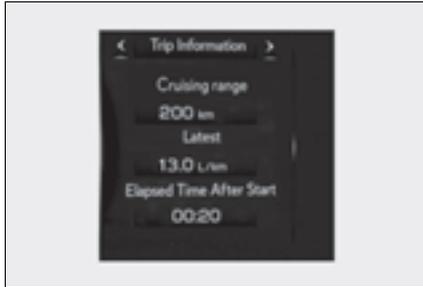


The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

■ Trip information (type B)

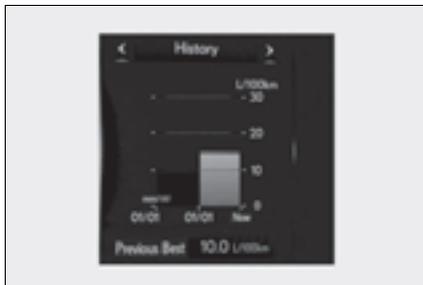
Displays the cruising range, latest fuel consumption and the amount of time elapsed since the engine was started.



The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

■ History

Displays the average fuel consumption and highest fuel consumption.



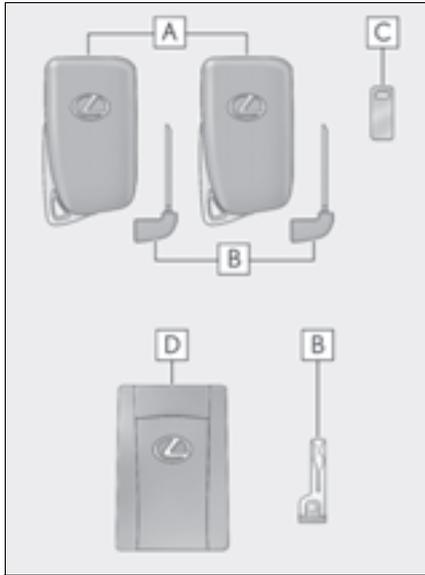
The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions. Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

- 3-1. Key information
 - Keys 106
- 3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors
 - Side doors 110
 - Back door 114
 - Smart entry & start system 127
- 3-3. Adjusting the seats
 - Front seats 135
 - Rear seats 136
 - Driving position memory 141
 - Head restraints 144
- 3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
 - Steering wheel 146
 - Inside rear view mirror 147
 - Outside rear view mirrors 149
- 3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
 - Power windows 151
 - Moon roof 153
 - Electronic sunshade 156

Keys

Key types

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



A Electronic keys

- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.127)
- Operating the wireless remote control function

B Mechanical keys

C Key number plate

D Card key (electronic key)
(if equipped)

Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.127)

■ **Card key (if equipped)**

- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a

problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.

- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.



- The card key is not waterproof.

■ **When riding in an aircraft**

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag, etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is about a year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will sound in the cabin when the engine stops.
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary.
 - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
 - The detection area becomes smaller.
 - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.
- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.)

of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:

- TVs
- Personal computers
- Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
- Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
- Induction cookers
- Table lamps

■ Replacing the battery

→P.406

■ Confirmation of the registered key number

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.



NOTICE

■ To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer, etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers, or medical electrical equipment, such as low-frequency therapy equipment.

■ Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

→P.458

■ When an electronic key is lost

→P.457

■ Handling the card key

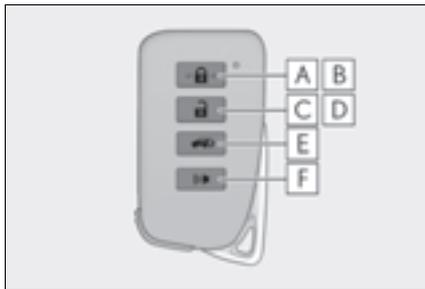
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working. If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water, etc., is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.

 NOTICE

- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
 - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
 - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
 - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

Wireless remote control

The electronic keys are equipped with the following wireless remote control:



- A** Locks all the doors (→P.110)
- B** Closes the windows and moon roof^{*1,2} (→P.110)
- C** Unlocks all the doors (→P.110)
- D** Opens the windows and moon roof^{*1,2} (→P.110)
- E** Opens and closes the power back door^{*1} (→P.117)
- F** Sounds the alarm^{*1} (→P.108)

^{*1}: If equipped

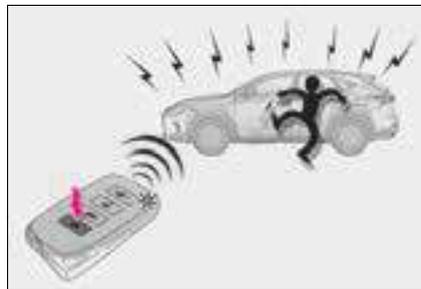
^{*2}: These settings must be customized at

your Lexus dealer.

■ **Theft deterrent panic mode (if equipped)**

When  is pressed for longer than about 1 second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.



■ **Back door reserve lock function (vehicles with power back door)**

This function is a function which reserves locking of all doors, beforehand, when the back door is open. When the follow is done, all the doors except the back door are locked and then back door will also be locked at the same time it is closed.

- 1 Close all doors, except the back door.
- 2 Push the wireless lock button during the automatic closing operation of the back door.

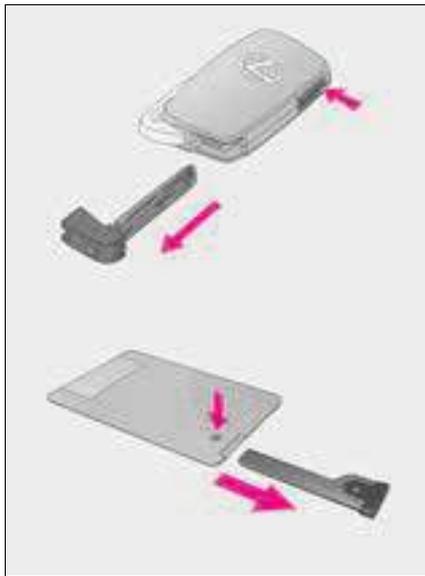
Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.

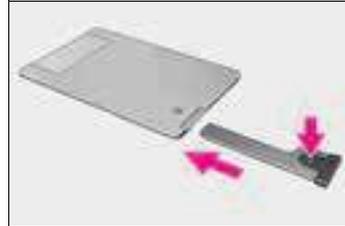
The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in

the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P.458)



key, insert it while pressing the release button.



NOTICE

Handling the card key

Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.

When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Lock the glove box as circumstances demand. (→P.342)

Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

If you lose your mechanical keys

→P.457

If a wrong key is used

The key cylinder rotates freely to isolate inside mechanism.

Card key

- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the release button using a pen tip, etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin, etc.
- To store the mechanical key in the card

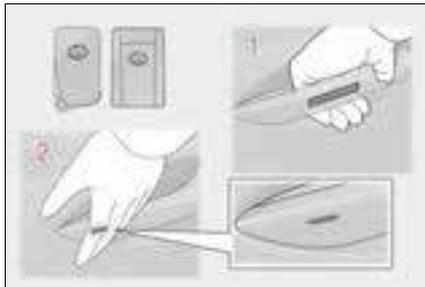
Side doors

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked using the entry function, wireless remote control or door lock switch.

Unlocking and locking the doors from the outside

■ Using the smart entry & start system

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



▶ Except for AGZ10L-AWTLTV, AGZ15L-AWTLTV models^{*1}

1 Grip the door handle to unlock the doors.^{*2}

▶ For AGZ10L-AWTLTV, AGZ15L-AWTLTV models^{*1}

1 Grip the driver's door handle to unlock the door. Grip any passenger door handle to unlock all the doors.^{*2}

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

2 Touch the lock sensor (the indentation on the surface of the door handle) to lock the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

^{*1}: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.470)

^{*2}: The door unlock settings can be changed. (→P.482)

■ Using the wireless remote control



1 Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked. Press and hold to close the windows and moon roof.^{*1,2}

2 Unlocks all the doors

For AGZ10L-AWTLTV, AGZ15L-AWTLTV models^{*3}:

Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 3 seconds unlocks the other doors.

Press and hold to open the windows and moon roof.^{*1,2}

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

^{*3}: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.470)

■ **Switching the door unlock function**

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

- 1 Turn the engine switch off.
- 2 Cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor of the alarm system to prevent unintended triggering of the alarm while changing the settings. (if equipped) (→P.78)
- 3 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold  ,  or  for approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding  .

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 3.)

Multi-information display/Beep	Unlocking function
 (Left-hand drive vehicles)	Holding the driver's door handle unlocks only the driver's door.
 (Right-hand drive vehicles) Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Pings once	Holding any of the passenger door handles unlocks all the doors.
 Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Pings once	Holding a door handle unlocks all the doors.

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after  is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)

In a case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P.77)

■ **Locking the doors from the outside without a key**

- 1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.
- 2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

The door cannot be locked if the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

The key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

■ **Impact detection door lock release system**

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

■ **Operation signals**

Doors:

A buzzer (if equipped) sounds and the emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: Once; Unlocked: Twice)

Windows and moon roof:

A buzzer sounds to indicate that all windows and moon roof are opening/closing.

■ **Security feature**

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again.

■ Open door warning buzzer

If the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h (3 mph), the master warning light flashes and a buzzer sounds to indicate that the door(s) or the hood is not fully closed. The open door(s) or hood is displayed on the multi-information display.

■ Welcome light illumination control

The front position, tail and license plate lights automatically turn on at night when the doors are unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control if the light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

■ When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the surface of the door handle

When the door cannot be locked even if the lock sensor on the surface of the door handle is touched by a finger, touch the lock sensor with the palm. When gloves are being worn, remove the gloves.



■ Door lock buzzer

If an attempt to lock the doors is made when a door is not fully closed, a buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds. Fully close the door to stop the buzzer, and lock the vehicle once more.

■ Setting the alarm (if equipped)

Locking the doors will set the alarm system. (→P.76)

■ Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control

→P.129

■ If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly

- Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors. (→P.458)
- Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.482)

⚠ WARNING

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant falling out, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that all doors are properly closed and locked.
- Do not pull the inside handle of the doors while driving. Be especially careful for the front doors, as the door may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.
- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seats.

■ When opening or closing a door

Check the surroundings of the vehicle such as whether the vehicle is on an incline, whether there is enough space for a door to open and whether a strong wind is blowing. When opening or closing the door, hold the door handle tightly to prepare for any unpredictable movement.

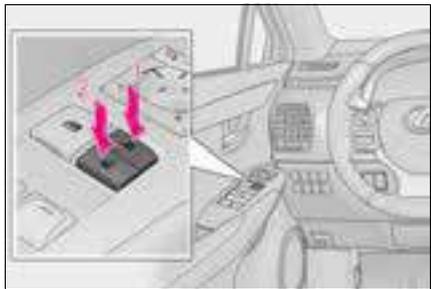
⚠ WARNING

■ **When using the wireless remote control and operating the power windows or moon roof (if equipped)**

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the wireless remote control. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or moon roof.

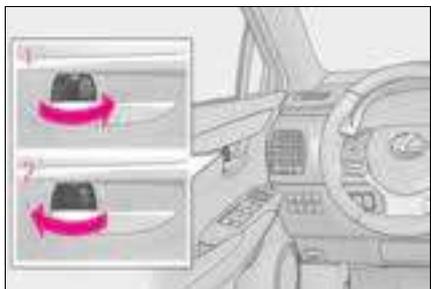
Unlocking and locking the doors from the inside

■ **Using the door lock switches**



- 1 Locks all the doors
- 2 Unlocks all the doors

■ **Using the inside lock button**



- 1 Locks the door
- 2 Unlocks the door

The driver's door and front passenger's door (for some models only) can be opened by pulling the inside handle even if the lock button is in the lock position.

■ **Rear door child-protector lock**

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.



- 1 Unlock
- 2 Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

■ **Automatic door locking and unlocking systems**

The following functions can be set or canceled:
For instructions on customizing, refer to P.482.

Function	Operation
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12mph) or higher.
Shift position linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when shifting the shift lever out of P.

3 Before driving

Function	Operation
Shift position linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when shifting the shift lever to P.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when driver's door is opened.

Back door

The back door can be opened using the back door open switch, smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

WARNING

■ Caution while driving

- Keep the back door closed while driving.
If the back door is left open, it may hit nearby objects while driving or luggage may be unexpectedly thrown out, causing an accident.
In addition, exhaust gases may enter the vehicle, causing death or a serious health hazard. Make sure to close the back door before driving.
- Before driving the vehicle, make sure that the back door is fully closed. If the back door is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving, causing an accident.
- Never let anyone sit in the luggage compartment. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ When children are in the vehicle

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play in the luggage compartment.
If a child is accidentally locked in the luggage compartment, they could have heat exhaustion or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the back door.
Doing so may cause the back door to move unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing back door.

⚠ WARNING**■ Operating the back door**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the back door before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the back door to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the back door, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the back door in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- Vehicles without power back door: The back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the back door on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the back door unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the back door is fully open and secure before using the luggage compartment.



- Vehicles with power back door: The back door may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully, while on a steep incline. Make sure that the back door is secured before using the luggage compartment.

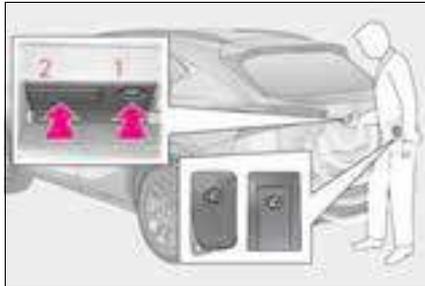
- When closing the back door, take extra care to prevent your fingers, etc., from being caught.



- When closing the back door, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the back door handle is used to fully close the back door, it may result in hands or arms being caught.
- Do not pull on the back door damper stay (vehicles without power back door) (→P.117) or back door spindle (vehicles with power back door) (→P.124) to close the back door, and do not hang on the back door damper stay (vehicles without power back door) or back door spindle (vehicles with power back door). Doing so may cause hands to be caught or the back door damper stay (vehicles without power back door) or back door spindle (vehicles with power back door) to break, causing an accident.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, it may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

Unlocking and locking the back door from the outside**■ Smart entry & start system**

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



1 Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

2 Unlocks all the doors

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

■ **Wireless remote control**

→P.108

Unlocking and locking the back door from the inside

■ **Door lock switches**

→P.113

Opening/closing the back door (vehicles without power back door)

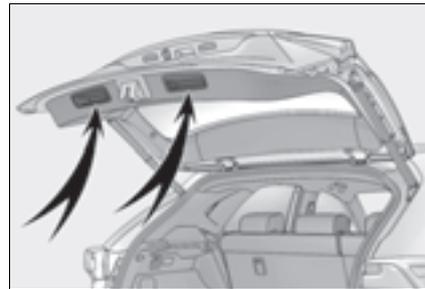
■ **Open**

Raise the back door while pressing up the back door opener switch.



■ **Close**

Lower the back door using the back door handle, and make sure to push the back door down from the outside to close it.



■ **Luggage compartment light**

● The luggage compartment light turns on when the back door is opened.

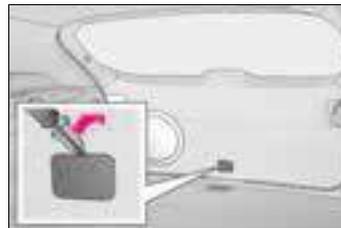
● If the luggage compartment light is left on when the engine switch is turned off, the light will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ **If the back door opener is inoperative**

The back door can be unlocked from the inside.

1 Remove the cover.

To protect the cover, place a rag between the flathead screwdriver and the cover as shown in the illustration.



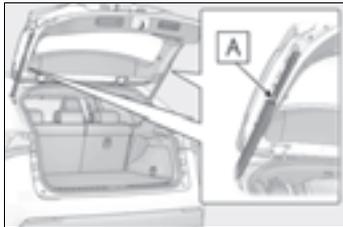
2 Move the lever.



 NOTICE

■ Back door damper stays

The back door is equipped with damper stays **A** that hold the back door in place. Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door damper stay **A**, resulting in malfunction.



- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the damper stay rod.
- Do not touch the damper stay rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the back door.
- Do not place your hand on the damper stay or apply lateral forces to it.

Opening/closing the back door (vehicles with power back door)

■ Opening/closing the back door using the wireless remote control

Press the  for 1 second.

It can be made to operate when unlocking the back door.*

*: With the customization feature, it can be set up so that it operates even from the time of locking (except for Malaysia). (→P.482)



■ Opening/closing the back door from the inside

Press the  for 1 second.

A buzzer sounds and the back door automatically opens and closes.

Pressing the  while the back door is opening/closing stops the operation.

When the  is pressed again for 1 second during the halted operation, the back door will perform the reverse operation.



■ Opening/closing the back door from the outside

- Open

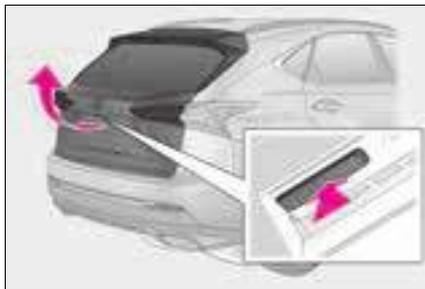
When the back door is unlocked: Press the back door opener switch.

When the back door is locked (except for Malaysia): While carrying the electronic key on your person, press the back door opener switch.

When the back door is locked (for Malaysia): Unlock the back door and press the back door opener switch.

A buzzer sounds and the back door automatically opens.

Pressing the switch while the back door is opening stops the operation.



● Close

Pressing the .

A buzzer sounds and the back door automatically closes.

Pressing the  while the back door is closing stops the operation.

Pressing the  again will reverse the operation.



● Close the back door and lock all doors (close & lock function)

Press the .

A different buzzer than the normal one will sound and the power back door will begin closing automatically. When the power back door is closed, all of the doors will lock simultaneously and operation signals will indicate that all of the doors have been locked.

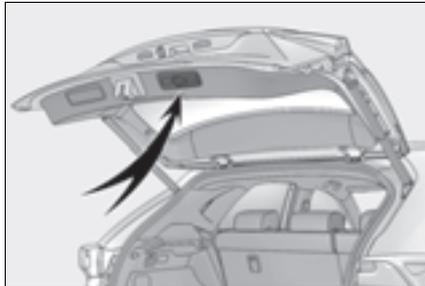
If the  is pressed while the power back door is closing, the operation will stop.

Pressing the  again will close the power back door automatically.



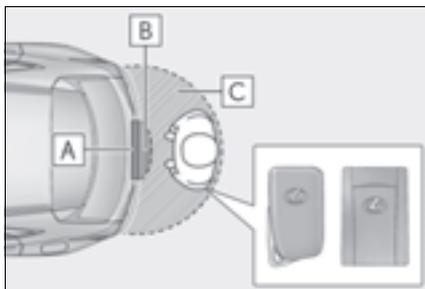
■ Closing the back door using the back door handle

Lower the back door using the back door handle, then a buzzer sounds and the back door automatically closes.



■ **Opening/closing the back door using the kick sensor (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)**

- 1 While carrying an electronic key, stand within the smart entry & start system operation range, approximately 50 to 70 cm (19.7 to 27.6 in.) from the rear bumper.



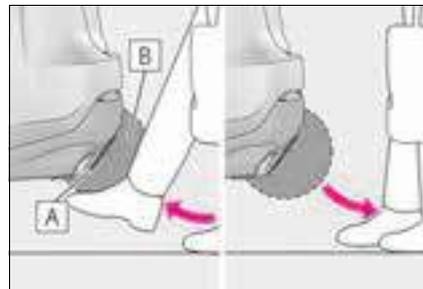
- A** Kick sensor
- B** Kick sensor detection area
- C** Smart entry & start system operation detection area (→P.127)

- 2 Perform a kick operation by moving your foot to within approximately 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the rear bumper and then pulling it back.
 - Perform the entire kick operation within 1 second.
 - The back door will not start operating while a foot is detected under

the rear bumper.

- Operate the back door without contacting the rear bumper with your foot.
- If another electronic key is in the cabin or luggage compartment, it may take slightly longer than normal for the operation to occur.

When all of the doors are locked: If the movement is detected by the kick sensor, all of the doors will be unlocked.



- A** Kick sensor
 - B** Kick sensor detection area
- 3 When the sensor detects that your foot is pulled back, a buzzer will sound and the back door will automatically fully open/close.

If kick operation is performed again in the middle of back door operating, the operation will stop.

■ **Luggage compartment light**

- The luggage compartment light turns on when the back door is opened.
- If the luggage compartment light is left on when the engine switch is turned off, the light will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ **Power back door operating conditions**

- ▶ Except for Malaysia
- With the power back door operations set

3

Before driving

to ON.

- When the back door is unlocked.

However, even if the back door is locked the power back door will operate, providing that the following situations:

- When the electronic key is being carried and the power back door switch is pushed
- When set up by customizable functions to be able to operate, even when locked, when using the wireless remote control (→P.482)
- When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, in addition to the above for the opening operations, the back door operates for any of the following conditions:
 - Parking brake is engaged
 - The brake pedal is depressed
 - The shift lever is in P

► For Malaysia

- With the power back door operations set to ON.

- When the back door is unlocked

- When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode during opening operations, the back door unlocks and operates for any of the following conditions:

- Parking brake is engaged
- The brake pedal is depressed
- The shift lever is in P

■ Kick sensor operating conditions (Hands Free Power Back Door)

- When the kick sensor setting is turned on.
- The electronic key is within the operational range. (→P.128)

■ Back door closer

In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. Whatever the state of the engine switch, the back door closer operates.

■ Operation of the power back door

- A buzzer sounds and the emergency flashers flash twice to indicate that the

back door is opening/closing.

- When the power back door operations are OFF, the power back door does not operate but it can be opened and closed by hand.
- When the power back door automatically opens, if an abnormality due to people or objects is detected, operation will stop.

■ Close & lock function

When the power back door is open, this function closes the power back door and then locks all of the doors simultaneously.

When the following procedures are performed and there are no electronic keys for the vehicle within the vehicle, all of the doors will lock when the power back door is completely closed.

- 1 Close all of the doors except the power back door.
- 2 While carrying an electronic key, press the  switch on the lower part of the power back door (→P.115).

A different buzzer than the normal one will sound and then the power back door will begin closing automatically. When the power back door is closed, all of the doors will lock simultaneously and operation signals will indicate that all of the doors have been locked.

Vehicle with Double locking system: The double locking system will not operate at this time.

■ Situations in which the close & lock function may not operate properly (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)

In the following situations, the close & lock function may not operate properly:

- If the  switch on the lower part of the power back door is pressed by a hand which is holding an electronic key
- If the  switch on the lower part of the power back door is pressed when the

electronic key is in a bag, etc. that is placed on the ground

- If the  switch on the lower part of the power back door is pressed with the electronic key not near the vehicle.

■ **Situations in which the kick sensor does not operate properly (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)**

In the following situations, the kick sensor may not operate properly:

- When a foot remains under the rear bumper
- If the rear bumper is strongly hit with a foot or is touched for a while

If the rear bumper has been touched for a while, wait for a short time before attempting to operate the back door again.

- When operated while a person is too close to the rear bumper
- When an external radio wave source interferes with the communication between the vehicle and electronic key (→P.129)
- When the vehicle is parked near an electrical noise source which affects the sensitivity of the kick sensor, such as a pay parking spot, gas station, electrically heated road, or fluorescent light
- When the vehicle is near a TV tower, electric power plant, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When a large amount of water is applied to the rear bumper, such as when the vehicle is being washed or in heavy rain
- When mud, snow, ice, etc. is attached to the rear bumper
- When the vehicle has been parked for a while near objects that may move and contact the rear bumper, such as plants
- When an accessory is installed to the rear bumper

If an accessory has been installed, turn the

kick sensor operation setting off.

■ **Preventing unintentional operation of the kick sensor (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)**

When an electronic key is in the operation range, the kick sensor may operate unintentionally, so be careful in the following situations.

- When a large amount of water is applied to the rear bumper, such as when the vehicle is being washed or in heavy rain
- When dirt is wiped off the rear bumper
- When a small animal or small object, such as a ball, moves under the rear bumper
- When an object is moved from under the rear bumper
- If someone is swinging their legs while sitting on the rear bumper
- If the legs or another part of someone's body contacts the rear bumper while passing by the vehicle
- When the vehicle is parked near an electrical noise source which affects the sensitivity of the kick sensor, such as a pay parking spot, gas station, electrically heated road, or fluorescent light
- When the vehicle is near a TV tower, electric power plant, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the vehicle is parked in a place where objects such as plants are near the rear bumper
- If luggage, etc. is set near the rear bumper
- If accessories or a vehicle cover is installed/removed near the rear bumper
- When the vehicle is being towed

To prevent unintentional operation, turn the kick sensor operation setting off.

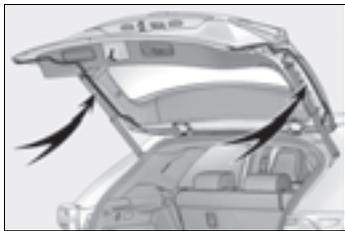
■ **When reconnecting the battery**

To enable the power back door to operate properly, close the back door manually.

■ **Jam protection function**

Sensors are installed in the right and left sides of the power back door. When the door is automatically closing and the sensors are pushed due to an object being clamped, etc., the jam protection function operates.

From that position the door automatically moves a little in the opposite direction and then the function stops.

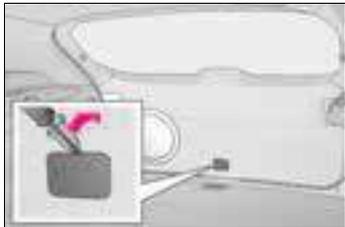


■ **If the back door opener is inoperative**

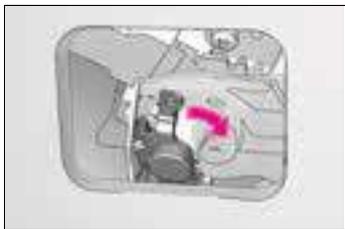
The back door can be unlocked from the inside.

1 Remove the cover.

To protect the cover, place a rag between the flathead screwdriver and the cover as shown in the illustration.



2 Move the lever.



■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. back door automatic open and stop position) can be changed. (Cus-

tomizable features: →P.482)

WARNING

■ **Back door closer**

● In the event that the back door is left slightly open, the back door closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the back door closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers caught or anything else in the back door, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.



● Use caution when using the back door closer as it still operates when the power back door system is canceled.

■ **Power back door**

Observe the following precautions when operating the power back door. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the back door is about to open or close.
- If the power back door system is turned off with the main switch while the back door is operating automatically, the automatic operation is stopped. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close unexpectedly.

⚠ WARNING

- If the operating conditions of the power back door are no longer met, a buzzer may sound and the back door may stop opening or closing. The back door then has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close abruptly.
- On an incline, the back door may suddenly shut after it opens. Make sure the back door is fully open and secure.
- In the following situations, the power back door may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the back door has to be operated manually. Take extra care when on an incline, as the back door may open or close abruptly.
 - When the back door contacts an obstacle
 - When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode or the engine is started during automatic operation
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the back door, the power back door may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the back door may suddenly shut again after being opened, causing someone's hands, head or neck to be caught and injured. When installing an accessory part to the back door, using a genuine Lexus part is recommended.

■ Jam protection function

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.

- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the back door fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers caught or anything else.

- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

■ Kick sensor (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)

Observe the following precautions when operating the power back door. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

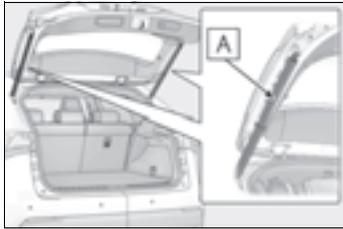
- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- When putting your foot near the lower center part of the rear bumper and moving it from the rear bumper, be careful not to touch the exhaust pipes until they have cooled down sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes can cause burns.
- Do not operate the Hands Free Power Back Door if there is little space under the rear bumper.

 NOTICE

■ **Back door spindles**

The back door is equipped with spindles **A** that hold the back door in place.

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the back door spindle **A**, resulting in malfunction.



- Do not attach any foreign objects, such as stickers, plastic sheets, or adhesives to the spindle rod.
- Do not touch the spindle rod with gloves or other fabric items.
- Do not attach heavy accessories to the back door. When attaching, ask your Lexus dealer for details.
- Do not place your hand on the spindle or apply lateral forces to it.

■ **To prevent back door closer malfunction**

Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the back door closer is operating.

■ **To prevent damage to the power back door**

- Make sure that there is no ice between the back door and frame that would prevent movement of the back door. Operating the power back door when excessive load is present on the back door may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the back door while the power back door is operating.

- Take care not to damage the sensors (installed on the right and left edges of the power back door) with a knife or other sharp object. If the sensor is disconnected, the power back door will not close automatically.

■ **Close & lock function**

When closing the power back door using the close & lock function, a different buzzer than the normal one will sound before the operation begins.

To check that the operation has started correctly, check that a different buzzer than the normal one has sounded.

Additionally, when the power back door is fully closed and locked, operation signals will indicate that all of the doors have been locked.

Before leaving the vehicle, make sure that the operational signals have operated and that all of the doors are locked.

■ **Kick sensor precautions (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)**

The kick sensor is located behind lower center part of the rear bumper. Observe the following to ensure that the power back door function operates properly:

- Keep the lower center part of the rear bumper clean at all times. If the lower center part of the rear bumper is dirty or covered with snow, the kick sensor may not operate. In this situation, clean off the dirt or snow, move the vehicle from the current position and then check if the kick sensor operates. If it does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not apply coatings that have a rain clearing (hydrophilic) effect, or other coatings, to the lower center part of the rear bumper.

 NOTICE

- Do not park the vehicle near objects that may move and contact the lower center part of the rear bumper, such as grass or trees.
If the vehicle has been parked for a while near objects that may move and contact the lower center part of the rear bumper, such as grass or trees, the kick sensor may not operate. In this situation, move the vehicle from the current position and then check if the kick sensor operates. If it does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not subject the kick sensor or its surrounding area to a strong impact. If the kick sensor or its surrounding area has been subjected to a strong impact, the kick sensor may not operate properly. If the kick sensor does not operate in the following situations, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
 - The kick sensor or its surrounding area has been subjected to a strong impact.
 - The lower center part of the rear bumper is scratched or damaged.
- Do not disassemble the rear bumper.
- Do not attach stickers to the rear bumper.
- Do not paint the rear bumper.
- If a bicycle carrier or similar heavy object is attached to the power back door, disable the kick sensor.

Canceling the power back door system (vehicles with power back door)

ON (operate) and OFF (stop) can be switched between by the  of the

multi-information display. (→P.90)

- 1 Press  or  of the meter control switches and select .



- 2 Press  or  of the meter control switches, select the "Vehicle Settings" and then press .
- 3 Press  or  of the meter control switches, select  and then press .
- 4 Press  or  of the meter control switches, and then select "PBD".
- 5 ON and OFF will be switched over with presses of  on the meter control switches.

When OFF is selected and the operations of the power back door is made to stop from the  of multi-information display, unless it is set to ON, the operation of the power back door will not return. (No return in the engine switch operation)

3

Before driving

Canceling the kick sensor (vehicles with Hands Free Power Back Door)

ON (enable) and OFF (disable) can be switched between by the  of the multi-information display. (→P.90)

- 1 Press  or  of the meter control switches and select .



- 2 Press  or  of the meter control switches, select the "Vehicle Settings" and then press .
- 3 Press  or  of the meter control switches, select  and then press .
- 4 Press  or  of the meter control switches, and then select "Kick Sensor".
- 5 ON and OFF will be switched over with presses of  on the meter control switches.

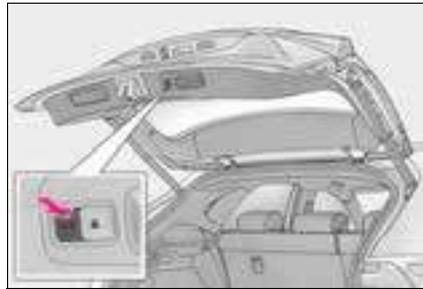
When OFF is selected and the operations of the kick sensor is made to stop from the

 of multi-information display, unless it is set to ON, the operation of the kick sensor will not return. (No return in the engine switch operation)

Adjusting the open position of the back door (vehicles with power back door)

The open position of the power back door can be adjusted.

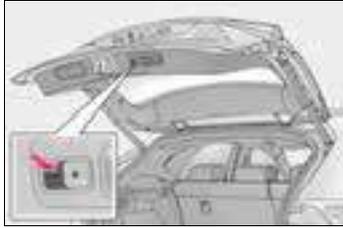
- 1 Stop the back door in the desirable position. (→P.117)
- 2 Press and hold the power back door switch on the back door for 2 seconds.
 - When the settings are completed, the buzzer sounds 4 times.
 - When opening the back door the next time, the back door will stop at that position.



Returning the back door automatic stop position to the initial settings

Press and hold the power back door switch on the back door for 7 seconds.

After the buzzer sounds 4 times, it sounds twice more. When the power back door does the opening operation the next time, the door will open to the initial settings position.



■ **When setting by the navigation system or multimedia system**

The opening position can be set with the navigation system or multimedia system. (→P.482)

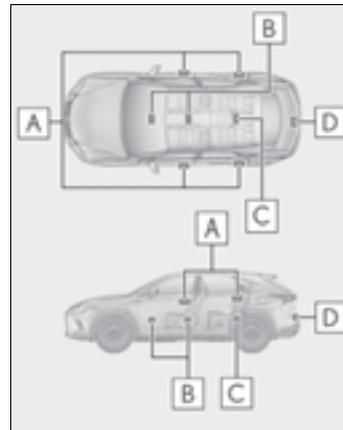
Priority for the stop position is given to the last position set by either the  switch, navigation system or multimedia system.

Smart entry & start system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket. The driver should always carry the electronic key.

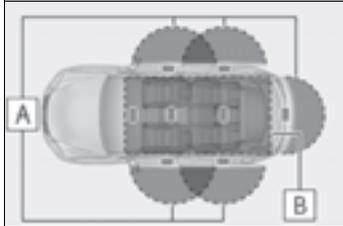
- Locks and unlocks the doors (→P.110)
- Locks and unlocks the back door (→P.115)
- Starts and stops the engine (→P.174)

■ **Antenna location**



- A** Antennas outside the cabin
- B** Antennas inside the cabin
- C** Antenna inside the luggage compartment
- D** Antenna outside the luggage compartment

■ **Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)**



A When locking or unlocking the doors
The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

B When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes
The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

■ **If an alarm sounds or a warning message is displayed**

A combination of exterior and interior alarms as well as warning messages shown on the multi-information display are used to prevent theft of the vehicle and accidents resulting from erroneous operation. Take appropriate measures in response to any warning message on the multi-information display. (→P.433)

When only an alarm sounds, circumstances and correction procedures are as follows.

- When an exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds

Situation	Correction procedure
An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.

- When an Interior alarm pings repeatedly

Situation	Correction procedure
The engine switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (The driver's door was opened when the engine switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the engine switch off and close the driver's door.

■ **When "Smart Entry & Start System Malfunction See Owner's Manual" will be displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Battery-saving function**

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

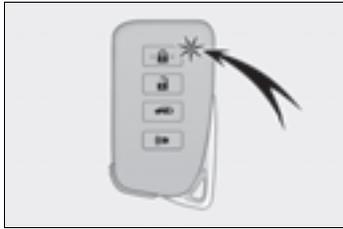
- In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to unlock the doors.
 - The electronic key has been left in an area of approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
 - The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.
- If the smart entry & start system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at any doors except the driver's door. In this case, take hold of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

■ Turning an electronic key to battery-saving mode

When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press  twice while pressing and holding .

Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times. While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used. To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.



■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and immobilizer system use weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and immobilizer system from operating properly. (Ways of coping: →P.458)

- When the electronic key battery is depleted
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
 - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
 - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
 - Metallic wallets or bags
 - Coins
 - Hand warmers made of metal
 - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby
- When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
 - Portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
 - Another vehicle's electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
 - Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
 - Digital audio players
 - Portable game systems
- If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window
- When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices

■ Note for the entry function

- Even when the electronic key is within the effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:
 - The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
 - The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the rear bumper center when the back door is opened.
 - The electronic key is on the instrument panel, luggage room, floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the engine is started or engine switch modes are changed.
- Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the door will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.
- As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone.

- Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.
 - The doors may unlock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The door will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)
 - If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)
 - Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.
 - Except for AGZ10L-AWTLTW, AGZ15L-AWTLTW and ZGZ10L-AWXLTPW models*: When the lock operation is performed using the lock sensor, recognition signals will be shown up to two consecutive times. After this, no recognition signals will be given.
- *: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.470)
- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
 - Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
 - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.129)
 - If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.
 - The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again.
 - A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.
 - If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.
- **When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods**
- To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.
 - The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance. (→P.482)
- **To operate the system properly**
- Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.
- Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention may not operate.)
- **If the smart entry & start system does not operate properly**
- Locking and unlocking the doors: Use the mechanical key. (→P.458)
 - Starting the engine: →P.459
- **Customization**
- Settings (e.g. smart entry & start system) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.482)
- If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to the explanations for the following opera-

tions.

- Locking and unlocking the doors:
Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P.110, 458)

- Starting the engine and changing engine switch modes: →P.459

- Stopping the engine: →P.175

■ Certification for the smart entry & start system

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore



- ▶ For vehicles sold in the Dominican Republic

FCC ID: NI4TMLF12-4

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Panama

FCC ID: HYQ14CCB

NOTE:

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

► For vehicles sold in Vietnam



► For vehicles sold in Argentina



3

Before driving

**WARNING****■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices**

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas.
(→P.127)

The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.

- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details on disabling the entry function.

Front seats

The seats can be adjusted (longitudinally, vertically, etc.). Adjust the seat to ensure the correct driving posture.

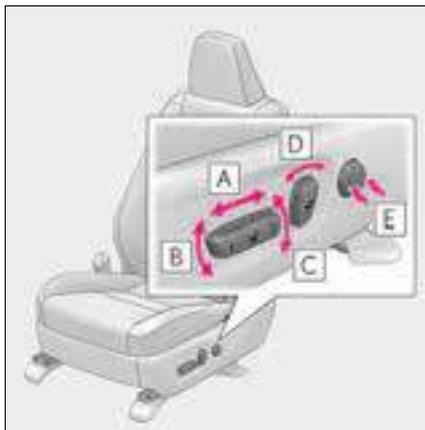
Adjustment procedure

► Manual seat



- A** Seat position adjustment lever
- B** Seatback angle adjustment lever
- C** Vertical height adjustment lever

► Power seat



- A** Seat position adjustment switch

- B** Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment switch
- C** Vertical height adjustment switch
- D** Seatback angle adjustment switch
- E** Lumbar support adjustment switch (for driver's side)

■ Power easy access system (if equipped)

The driver's seat and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.141)

⚠ WARNING

■ When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury. Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.

■ Seat adjustment

- To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary. If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident. Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- After adjusting the seat, make sure that the seat is locked in position. (manual seat)

3

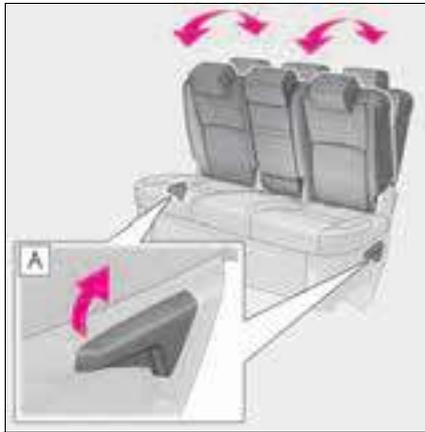
Before driving

Rear seats

Reclining adjustments and folding the seat backs can be done with either lever or switch operations.

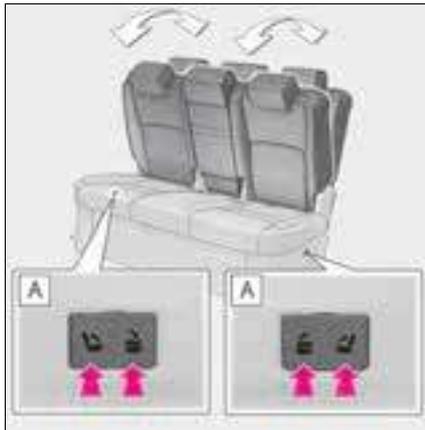
Adjustment procedure

▶ Manual seat



A Seatback angle adjustment lever

▶ Power seat

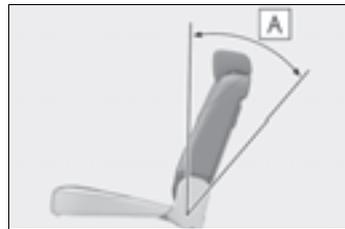


A Seatback angle adjustment switch

Operating conditions for reclining adjustment (power seat)

When the following conditions are met, switch operations are possible.

- When the seatback position is within the **A** range in the following illustration from the upright position.



- When the other operation switches for the seat being operated are not pressed.

Reclining adjustment (power seat)

Stop the seatback partway. To set the seatback to the rearmost position, press the button again.



Power seat operations (if equipped)

If the seat has a cover or seat cushion, it may not operate properly. Also, when folding down the seat, check that there is nothing on the rear seat that would interfere with the operation.

WARNING

When operating the seatback

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Keep other passengers from being hit with the seatback.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not bring your hands close to the moving parts or between the seats, as well as do not let any part of your body get caught.
- Vehicles with power seat: Do not let children operate the seatback as other passengers may get caught in seat.
- Vehicles with power seat: Check that there are no passengers sitting in the seat before folding that seat forward. Also, do not let other passengers sit in the seat while the seat is forward folding.

■ Seat adjustment

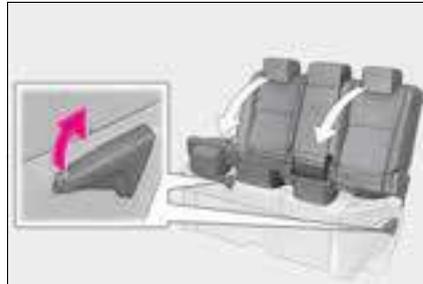
To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary. If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident. Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

Folding down the rear seatbacks**■ Before folding down the rear seatbacks**

- 1 Stow the rear center seat belt, seat belt buckles and armrest. (→P.39)
- 2 Lower the head restraint of the rear seat. (→P.144)

■ Folding down rear seatbacks (manual seat)

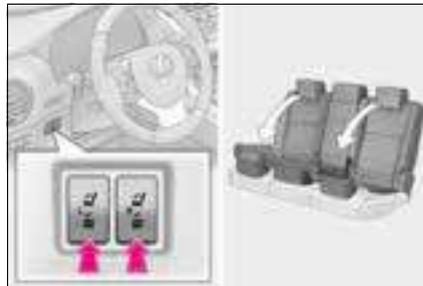
Pull the seatback angle adjustment lever and fold down the seatback.

**■ Folding down rear seatbacks (power seat)**

Press and hold the switch to fold down the seatback.

The buzzer sounds and operations start. The buzzer sounds again when the operation is complete.

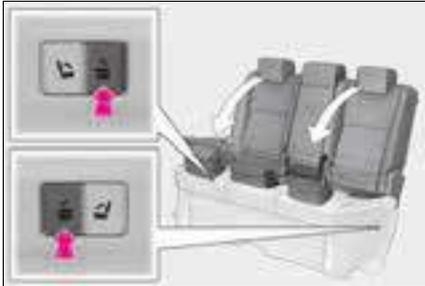
To stop the operation of a seat partway, press either seat operation switch for that seat, once more. Switches for that seat in other locations can be used to stop the operations. (buzzer sounds depending on stopping position of the seatback)

▶ Instrument panel switch

3

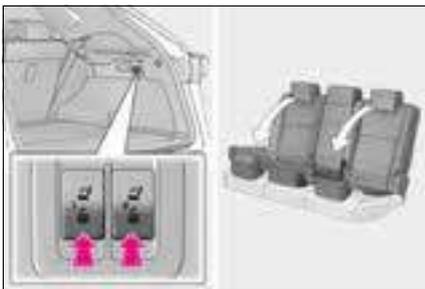
Before driving

▶ Rear seat switch



When the seatback is collapsed to the rear, put the seatback in the most upright position and press the switch once again.

▶ Luggage room switch



■ Returning the rear seatbacks (manual seat)

- 1 Raise the rear seatback until it locks.



- 2 Check that the plate for the seat belt is on the front side of the seat.

When using the seat belt for the rear

center seat (→P.38)



■ Returning the rear seatbacks (power seat)

- 1 Press and hold the switch to return the seatback.

The buzzer sounds and operations start. The buzzer sounds again when the operation is complete.

To stop the operation of a seat partway, press either seat operation switch for that seat, once more. Switches for that seat in other locations can be used to stop the operations. (buzzer sounds depending on stopping position of the seatback)

▶ Instrument panel switch



▶ Rear seat switch



▶ Luggage room switch



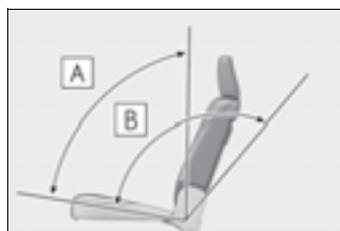
2 Check that the plate for the seat belt is on the front side of the seat.

When using the seat belt for the rear center seat (→P.38)



■ **Operating conditions for folding down the seatback (power seat)**

When the following conditions are met, switch operations are possible.



- When operating the rear seat switch: The seatback position is within the **A** range in the following illustration from the most upright position.
- When operating the instrument panel switch or luggage compartment switch: The seatback position is within the range of illustration **B**.
- When operating the rear seat switch: When the rear door for the seat to be operated is open.
- When operating the luggage compartment switch: When the back door is open.
- When the other operation switches for the seat being operated are not pressed.

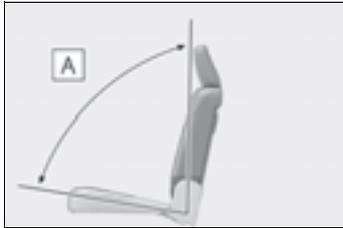
When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, in addition to the above, the power seat operates for any of the following conditions:

- Parking brake is engaged
- The brake pedal is depressed
- The shift lever is in P

■ **Operating conditions for returning the seatback (power seat)**

When the following conditions are met, switch operations are possible.

- When operating the rear seat switch: The seatback position is within the **A** range in the following illustration from the most upright position.



- When operating the rear seat switch: When the rear door for the seat to be operated is open.
- When operating the luggage compartment switch: When the back door is open.
- When the other operation switches for the seat being operated are not pressed.

When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, in addition to the above, the power seat operates for any of the following conditions:

- Parking brake is engaged
- The brake pedal is depressed
- The shift lever is in P

■ **Seatback jam protection function (power seat)**

When folding down the seatback, if a foreign object is perceived between the seatback and seat cushion, the seatback will reverse operations and then stops operations.

The buzzer sounds intermittently during reverse operations and sounds continuously when operations are stopped.

⚠ WARNING

■ **When folding the rear seatbacks down and after folded**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not fold the seatbacks down while driving.
- Stop the vehicle on level ground, set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

- Do not allow anyone to sit on a folded seatback or in the luggage compartment while driving.
- Do not allow children to enter the luggage compartment.

■ **After returning the rear seatback to the upright position**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Make sure that the seatback is securely locked in position by lightly pushing it back and forth.
- Check that the seat belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.

■ **Jam protection function (vehicles with power seat)**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the seatback is fully folded forward. Be careful not to get fingers caught or anything else.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Stowing the seat belts**

The seat belts and buckles for the rear center seat, as well as the armrest, must be stowed before you fold down the rear seatbacks. (→P.39)

Driving position memory*

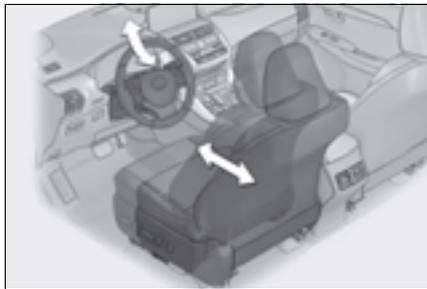
*: If equipped

This feature automatically adjusts the front seats, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors to make entering and exiting the vehicle easier or to suit your preferences.

Three different driving positions can be recorded into memory.

Each electronic key (including a card key) can be registered to recall your preferred driving position.

Enabling easier driver entry and exit (Power easy access system)



When all of the following have been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to a position that allows driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

- The shift lever has been shifted to P.
- The engine switch has been turned off.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.

When any of the following has been

performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically return to their original positions.

- The engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

■ Operation of the power easy access system

When exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system may not operate if the seat is already close to the rearmost position, etc.

■ Customization

The seat movement amount settings of the power easy access system can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.482)

Recording a driving position into memory

- 1 Check that the shift lever is in P.
- 2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 3 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel and outside rear view mirrors to the desired positions.
- 4 While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the buzzer sounds.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position

3

Before driving

will be overwritten.



■ **Seat positions that can be memorized**

The adjusted positions other than the position adjusted by lumbar support switch can be recorded. (→P.135)

■ **In order to correctly use the driving position memory function**

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Seat adjustment caution**

Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Recalling a driving position

- 1 Check that the shift lever is in P.
- 2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

- 3 Press one of the buttons for the driving position you want to recall until the buzzer sounds.



■ **To stop the position recall operation part-way through**

Perform any of the following:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Operate any of the seat adjustment switches (only cancels seat position recall).
- Operate the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).

■ **Operating the driving position memory after turning the engine switch off**

Recorded seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again.

Registering/canceling/recall an electronic key to driving position (memory recall function)

■ **Registering procedure**

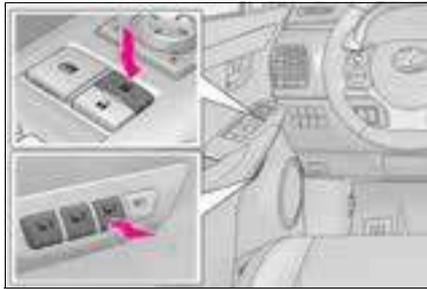
Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

Carry only the key you want to register, and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be recorded properly.

- 1 Check that the shift lever is in P.
- 2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 3 Recall the driving position that you want to record.
- 4 While pressing the recalled button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds.

If the driving position could not be registered, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.



■ Cancellation procedure

- 1 Carry only the key you want to cancel and then close the driver's door. If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.
- 2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 3 While pressing the "SET" button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds twice.

If it could not be canceled, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3

seconds.

■ Recall procedure

- 1 Make sure that the doors are locked before recalling the driving position. Carry the electronic key that has been registered to the driving position, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

The driving position will move to the recorded position (not including the steering wheel). However, the seat will move to a position slightly behind the recorded position in order to make entering the vehicle easier.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the seat and outside rear view mirrors will not move.

- 2 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode, or fasten a seat belt.

The seat and steering wheel will move to the recorded position.

■ Recalling the driving position using the memory recall function

- Different driving positions can be registered for each electronic key. Therefore, the driving position that is recalled may be different depending on the key being carried.
- If a door other than the driver's door is unlocked with the smart entry & start system, the driving position cannot be recalled. In this case, press the driving position button which has been set.

■ Customization

The unlock door settings of the memory recall function can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.482)

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

WARNING

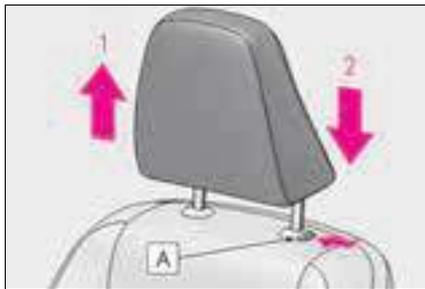
■ Head restraint precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

Vertical adjustment

■ Front seats



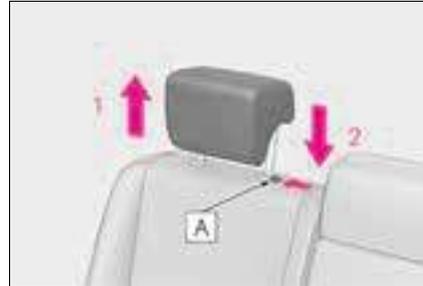
1 Up

Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button **A**.

■ Rear seats



1 Up

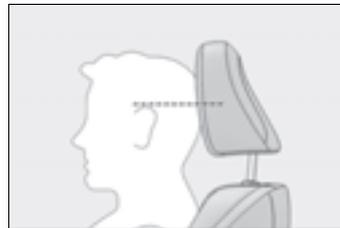
Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button **A**.

■ Adjusting the height of the head restraints (front seats)

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.



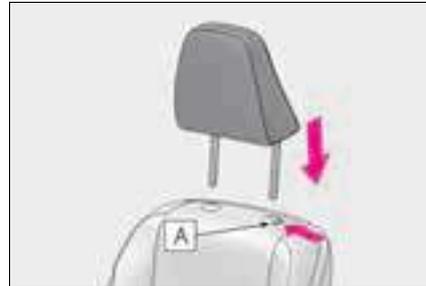
■ Adjusting the rear seat head restraint

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

Horizontal adjustment (if equipped)

The position of the head restraint can be adjusted forward in 4 stages.

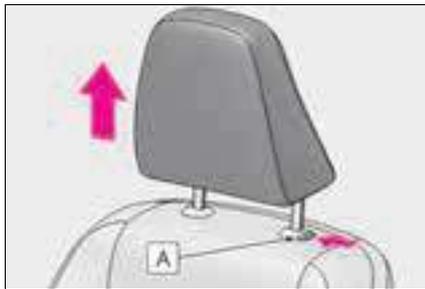
If the head restraint is pulled forward from the foremost position, it will return to the rearmost position.



Removing the head restraints

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button **A**.

If the head restraint touches the ceiling, making the removal difficult, change the seat height or angle. (→P.135, 136)



Installing the head restraints

Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

Press and hold the lock release button **A** when lowering the head restraint.

3

Before driving

Steering wheel

Adjustment procedure

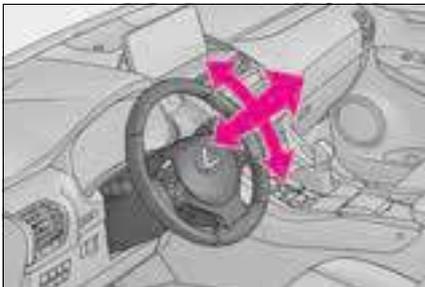
► Manual type

- 1 Hold the steering wheel and push the lever down.



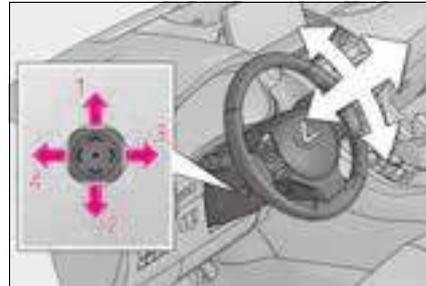
- 2 Adjust to the ideal position by moving the steering wheel horizontally and vertically.

After adjustment, pull the lever up to secure the steering wheel.



► Power type

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:



- 1 Up
- 2 Down
- 3 Toward the driver
- 4 Away from the driver

■ The steering wheel can be adjusted when (power type only)

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode*.

*: If the driver's seat belt is fastened, the steering wheel can be adjusted regardless of engine switch mode.

■ Automatic adjustment of the steering position (if equipped)

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P.141)

■ Power easy access system (if equipped)

The steering wheel and driver's seat move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.141)

■ After adjusting the steering wheel (manual type only)

Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked.

The horn may not sound if the steering wheel is not securely locked.

⚠ WARNING**■ Caution while driving**

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ After adjusting the steering wheel (manual type)

Make sure that the steering wheel is securely locked. Otherwise, the steering wheel may move suddenly, possibly causing an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Sounding the horn

To sound the horn, press on or close to the  mark.

Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.

**⚠ WARNING****■ Caution while driving**

Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.

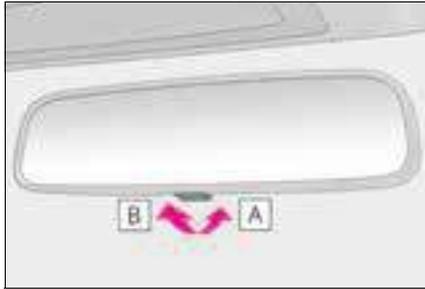
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

3

Before driving

Anti-glare function

- ▶ Manual anti-glare inside rear view mirror



- A** Normal position
- B** Anti-glare position

- ▶ Auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror

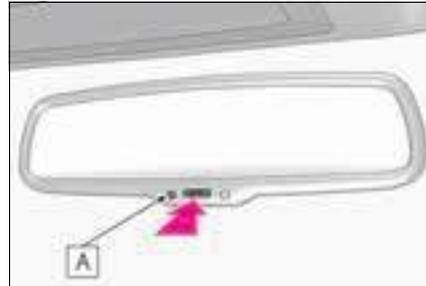
Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

Changing automatic anti-glare function mode on/off

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator **A** illuminates.

The function will set to ON mode each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator **A** also turns off.)



- To prevent sensor error (vehicles with auto anti-glare inside rear view mirror)

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



Outside rear view mirrors

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

⚠ WARNING

■ When driving the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while driving. Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

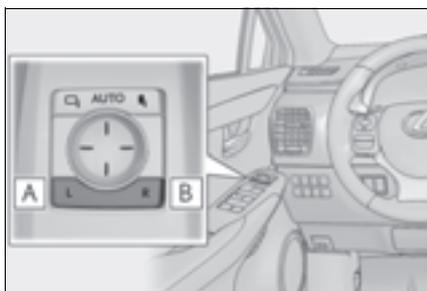
- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

■ When the mirror defoggers are operating (if equipped)

Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

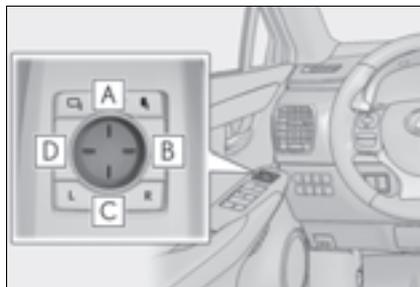
Adjustment procedure

- 1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.



- A Left
- B Right

- 2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.



- A Up
- B Right
- C Down
- D Left

■ Mirror angle can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ When using in cold weather

Vehicles with driving position memory: When used in cold weather during reverse driving, the door mirror could be frozen and may not automatically point the mirror surface downward. In this event, remove any ice and snow from the mirror surface.

■ Defogging the mirrors (if equipped)

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P.329)

■ Automatic anti-glare function (if equipped)

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the outside rear view mirrors will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P.148)

■ **Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle (vehicles with driving position memory)**

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P.141)

■ **Linked mirror function when reversing (vehicles with driving position memory)**

When the mirror select switch is in the "L" or "R" position, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground.

To disable this function, move the mirror select switch to the neutral position (between "L" and "R").

With the shift lever in R, adjust the mirror angle to a desired position to set the mirror angle used when the vehicle is reversing.

The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift lever is shifted to R from next time.

The memorized downward tilt position of the mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift lever in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position will also change.

When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.

- 1 Folds the mirrors
- 2 Extends the mirrors

Putting the outside rear view mirror folding switch in the neutral position sets the mirrors to automatic mode. Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

■ **When using in cold weather**

When automatic mode is used in cold weather, the door mirror could freeze up and automatic stowing and return may not be possible. In this event, after removing any ice and snow from the door mirror, operate the mirror using manual mode or move it by hand.

■ **Customization**

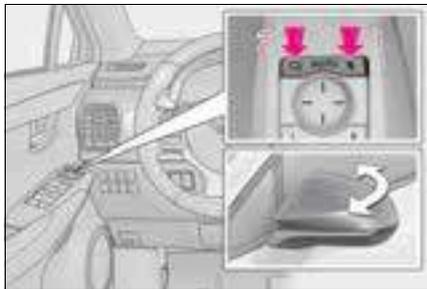
The automatic mirror folding and extending operation can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.482)

⚠ WARNING

■ **When a mirror is moving**

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

Folding and extending the mirrors



Power windows

Opening and closing the power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed by a one-touch operation of the switches.



- 1 Closing
- 2 One-touch closing *
- 3 Opening
- 4 One-touch opening *

* : To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

■ The power windows can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Operating the power windows after turning the engine off

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds even after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object becomes jammed between the window and the window frame while the window is closing, window movement is

stopped and the window is opened slightly.

■ Catch protection function

If an object becomes caught between the door and window while the window is opening, window movement is stopped.

■ When the window cannot be opened or closed

When the jam protection function or catch protection function operates unusually and the door window cannot be opened or closed, perform the following operations with the power window switch of that door.

- Stop the vehicle. With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, within 4 seconds of the jam protection function or catch protection function activating, continuously operate the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction or one-touch opening direction so that the door window can be opened and closed.
- If the door window cannot be opened and closed even when performing the above operations, perform the following procedure for function initialization.
 - 1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
 - 2 Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction and completely close the door window.
 - 3 Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pulling the switch in the one-touch closing direction, and hold it there for approximately 6 seconds or more.
 - 4 Press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening direction. After the door window is completely opened, continue holding the switch for an additional 1 second or more.
 - 5 Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pushing the switch in the one-touch opening direction, and hold it there for approximately 4 seconds or more.
 - 6 Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction again. After the door window is com-

pletely closed, continue holding the switch for a further 1 second or more.

If you release the switch while the window is moving, start again from the beginning. If the window reverses and cannot be fully closed or opened, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key. * (→P.458)
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control. * (→P.110)

* : These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Power windows open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the power windows open.

■ Customization

Setting (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.482)

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ Closing the windows

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P.152)

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.

- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the power windows, operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also do not let a child operate window by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.

- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets jammed just before the window is fully closed. Be careful not to get any part of your body jammed in the window.

■ Catch protection function

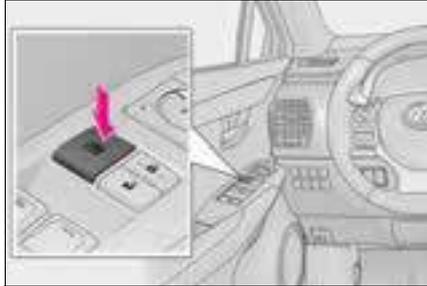
- Never use any part of your body or clothing to intentionally activate the catch protection function.
- The catch protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window is fully opened. Be careful not to get any part of your body or clothing caught in the window.

Preventing accidental operation (window lock switch)

This function is designed to prevent

children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

Press the switch down to lock the passenger window.



Moon roof*

*: If equipped

For comfortable cabin experience, the ceiling (moon roof) can be opened or tilted up.

⚠ WARNING

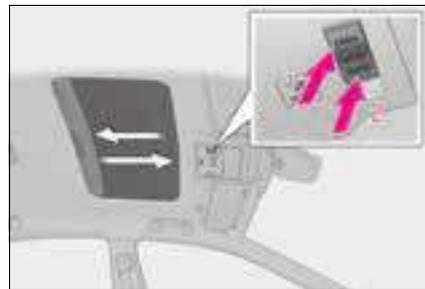
■ Opening the moon roof

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

Operation instructions

■ Opening and closing



1 Open

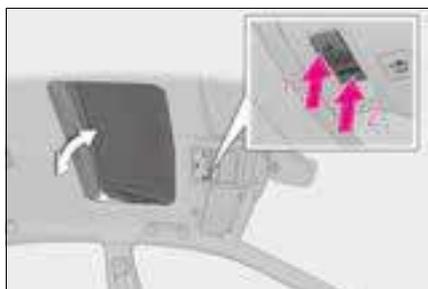
Press and hold the "OPEN" switch. The moon roof tilts up and then fully opens automatically.*

2 Close

Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch. The moon roof fully closes automatically.*

*: Lightly press either end of the moon roof open/close switch to stop the moon roof while it is operating.

■ **Tilting up and down**



1 Tilt up

Press and hold the "UP" switch. It automatically opens until the tilt up stop position.*

2 Tilt down

Press and hold the "DOWN" switch. The moon roof full close automatically.*

*: Lightly press either end of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof while it is operating.

■ **The moon roof can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ **Sunshade**

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ **When the moon roof does not close normally**

Perform the following procedure:

- If the moon roof closes but then re-opens slightly

- 1** Stop the vehicle.
- 2** Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*¹
The moon roof will close, reopen and pause

for approximately 10 seconds.*² Then it will close again and tilt down. Finally it will stop.

- 3** Check to make sure that the moon roof completely stops and then release the switch.

- If the moon roof tilts down but then tilts back up

- 1** Stop the vehicle.
- 2** Press and hold the "DOWN" switch.*¹

The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds in the tilt up position.*² Then it will close again. Finally it will stop.

- 3** Check to make sure that the moon roof has completely stopped and then release the switch.

*¹: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

*²: If the switch is released after the above mentioned 10 second pause, automatic operation will be disabled. In that case, perform the moon roof initialization by referring to "When tilt up/down or moon roof opening and closing can be done but automatic full opening and closing cannot be done" on P.154.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **When the moon roof does not move normally**

When the opening and closing operation or automatic opening function of the moon roof does not move normally, perform the following initialization procedures.

- 1** Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 2** Operate the moon roof.

The initialization method changes depending on the contents that can be operated.

- If only the tilt up operations can be done when the moon roof is closed

- 3 Press and hold the “DOWN” or “CLOSE” switch.

Open until the tilt up stop position. After that the moon roof opens and completely closes.

After that tilt up once again and stop at the completely closed position.

- 4 Confirm that moon roof has completely stopped and release the switch.

- If the moon roof can only be closed when the moon roof is partially opened

- 3 Press and hold the “DOWN” or “CLOSE” switch.

Fully close the moon roof, tilt up and open it close to the fully open position. After that, fully close the moon roof and tilt up once again, then stop the moon roof in the fully closed position.

- 4 Confirm that moon roof has completely stopped and release the switch.

- When tilt up/down or moon roof opening and closing can be done but automatic full opening and closing cannot be done.

- 3 Press the “OPEN” switch and fully open.

- 4 Press the “CLOSE” switch and fully close.

- 5 Press the “UP” switch and tilt up until the tilt up stop position.

- 6 Press the “DOWN” switch and tilt down.

If the switch is released before any step is completed, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

If the opening and closing operations or automatic opening function does not move as normal, even after performing the above mentioned operations, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Moon roof open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster when the engine switch is turned off and the driver’s door is opened with the moon roof open.

■ Door lock linked moon roof operation

- The moon roof can be opened and

closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.458)

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.110)

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Closing the moon roof

- The driver is responsible for moon roof opening and closing operations. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the moon roof.

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.

- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the moon roof, operate the moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the moon roof. Also, do not let a child operate moon roof by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the moon roof.

- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

**WARNING****■ Jam protection function**

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof is fully closed. Also, the jam protection function is not designed to operate while the moon roof switch is being pressed. Take care so that your fingers, etc. do not get caught.

Electronic sunshade*

*: If equipped

Use the overhead switches to open and close the electronic sunshade.

**WARNING**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Closing the electronic sunshade

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the electronic sunshade is being operated.
- Do not allow children to operate the electronic sunshade. Closing the electronic sunshade on someone can cause death or serious injury.

■ Jam protection function

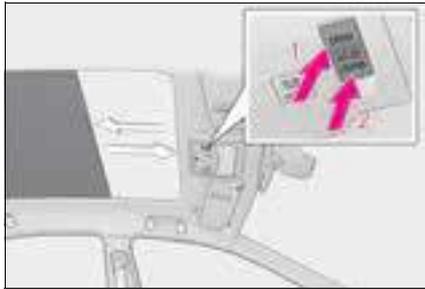
- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the electronic sunshade fully closes.

■ To prevent burns or injuries

Do not touch the gaps between the underside of the roof and the electronic sunshade. Your hand may get caught and you could injure yourself. Also, if the vehicle is left in direct sunlight for a long time, the underside of the roof could become very hot and could cause burns.

Operation instructions

■ Opening and closing



1 Open

Press and hold the "OPEN" switch. The electronic sunshade fully opens automatically.*

2 Close

Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch. The electronic sunshade fully closes automatically.*

*: Lightly press either end of the switch to stop the electronic sunshade while it is operating.

■ The electronic sunshade can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Jam protection function

- If an object is detected between the electronic sunshade and the frame while the electronic sunshade is closing, travel is stopped and the electronic sunshade opens slightly.
- When the jam protection function has operated, even if the "CLOSE" side of the switch is pressed again, the electronic sunshade will not move in the close direction until the reverse operation has stopped completely.
- Depending on the driving conditions and the surroundings, the electronic sun-

shade may collide with something and operate in reverse.

■ When the automatic opening and closing function does not work

Perform the following initialization procedure.

- 1 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.

It closes until it is near the fully closed position and then stops. After that, it operates in the opening direction then closes to the fully closed position.

If the switch is released before completion, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

If the automatic opening and closing function does not work as normal, even after performing the above mentioned operations, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

3

Before driving

- 4-1. Before driving**
- Driving the vehicle..... **160**
 - Cargo and luggage..... **166**
 - Trailer towing (vehicles without towing package)..... **168**
 - Trailer towing (vehicles with towing package) **168**
- 4-2. Driving procedures**
- Engine (ignition) switch **174**
 - Automatic transmission..... **177**
 - Continuously variable transmission **181**
 - Turn signal lever **185**
 - Parking brake **186**
 - Brake Hold..... **189**
 - ASC (Active Sound Control) **190**
- 4-3. Operating the lights and wipers**
- Headlight switch..... **193**
 - AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)..... **198**
 - Automatic High Beam **201**
 - Fog light switch **204**
 - Windshield wipers and washer **207**
 - Rear window wiper and washer **212**
- 4-4. Refueling**
- Opening the fuel tank cap..... **214**
- 4-5. Using the driving support systems**
- Lexus Safety System+ **217**
 - PCS (Pre-Collision System) . **223**
 - LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) **231**
 - LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)..... **241**
 - Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range **248**
 - Dynamic radar cruise control **259**
 - Cruise control **267**
 - Stop & Start system..... **270**
 - PKSA (Parking Support Alert) **277**
 - Lexus parking assist-sensor . **278**
 - Parking Support Brake function (for static objects)..... **283**
 - BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)..... **292**
 - Driving mode select switch .. **304**
 - GPF (Gasoline Particulate Filter) system **306**
 - Driving assist systems **307**
 - All-wheel drive lock switch (AWD models) **312**
- 4-6. Driving tips**
- Winter driving tips **314**
 - Eco-friendly driving tips **317**
 - Utility vehicle precautions..... **319**

Driving the vehicle

The specified procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Driving procedure

■ Starting the engine

→P.174

■ Driving

- 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P.178, 182)
- 2 Release the parking brake. (→P.186)

If the parking brake is in automatic mode, the parking brake is released automatically when shifting the shift lever to any position other than P. (→P.186)

- 3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ Stopping

- 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.
- 2 If necessary, set the parking brake. (→P.187)

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P. (→P.178, 182)

■ Parking the vehicle

- 1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.
- 2 Set the parking brake (→P.187), and shift the shift lever to P (→P.178, 182).

- 3 Press the engine switch to stop the engine.

- 4 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

■ Starting off on a uphill

- 1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P.178, 182)
- 2 Pull the parking brake switch and parking brake is set manually. (→P.187)
- 3 Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.
- 4 Press the parking brake switch and parking brake is released manually. (→P.187)

■ When starting off on an uphill

The hill-start assist control will activate. (→P.308)

■ Driving in the rain

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ Engine speed while driving

In the following conditions, the engine

speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When the brake pedal is depressed while Sport mode is selected

■ **Restraining the engine output (Brake Override System)**

- When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.
- A warning message is displayed on the multi-information display while the system is operating.

■ **Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)**

- When the following unusual operation is performed, the engine output may be restrained.
 - When the shift lever is shifted from R to D, D to R, N to R, P to D, or P to R (D includes M) with the accelerator pedal depressed, a warning message appears on the multi-information display. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
 - When the accelerator pedal is depressed too much while the vehicle is in reverse.
- While Drive-Start Control is being activated, your vehicle may have trouble escaping from the mud or fresh snow. In such case, deactivate TRC (→P.309) to cancel Drive-Start Control so that the vehicle may become able to escape from the mud or fresh snow.

■ **Breaking in your new Lexus**

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

- For the first 300 km (200 miles):
Avoid sudden stops.
- For the first 2000 km (1200 miles):
 - Do not drive at extremely high speeds.

- Avoid sudden acceleration.
- Do not drive continuously in low gears.
- Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

▶ For South Africa vehicles with towing package

- For the first 800 km (500 miles):
Do not tow a trailer.

■ **Operating your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P.481)

■ **Idling time before engine stop**

To prevent damage to the turbocharger, allow the engine to idle immediately after high-load driving.

Driving condition	Idling time
Normal city driving or high-speed driving (at the highway speed limit or recommended speed)	Not necessary
Steep hill driving, continuous driving (race track driving etc.), or towing a trailer or another vehicle (vehicles with towing package)	Approximately 1 minute

■ **Eco-friendly driving**

→P.85

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **When starting the vehicle**

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

**WARNING**
■ When driving the vehicle

- Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
- Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
- When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
- Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
- Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials. The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.
- During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
In the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P.414

- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P.177, 181)

- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.

- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.

- AWD models: Do not drive the vehicle off-road.
This is not an AWD vehicle designed for off-road driving. Proceed with all due caution if it becomes unavoidable to drive off-road.

- Do not drive across a river or through other bodies of water.
This may cause electric/electronic components to short circuit, damage the engine or cause other serious damage to the vehicle.

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

**WARNING****■ When shifting the shift lever**

- Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Shifting the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. Shifting the shift lever to any position other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

■ If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear indicators)

- ▶ Except for AGZ10L-AWTLTV and AGZ15L-AWTLTV models*

Have your Lexus dealer check and replace the brake pads as soon as possible.

Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

*: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label. (→P.470)

- ▶ For AGZ10L-AWTLTV and AGZ15L-AWTLTV models*

Have the brake pads checked and replaced by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed.

Front brakes only: Moderate levels of brake pad and disc wear allow enhanced front braking power. As a result, the discs may wear more quickly than conventional brake discs. Therefore, when replacing the brake pads, Lexus recommends that you also have the thickness of the discs measured.

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

*: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.470)

■ When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
If the shift lever is in any position other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.
In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.

**WARNING**

- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine. Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.
- **When the vehicle is parked**
 - Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun. Doing so may result in the following:
 - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
 - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
 - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
 - Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
 - Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.

- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle. Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running. If the vehicle is parked with the shift lever in P but the parking brake is not set, the vehicle may start to move, possibly leading to an accident.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off. Doing so may cause burns.
- **When taking a nap in the vehicle**

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.
- **When braking**
 - When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously. Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.
 - If the brake booster device does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking. In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls. Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

■ If the vehicle becomes stuck

Do not spin the wheels excessively when any of the tires is up in the air, or the vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, etc. This may damage the driveline components or propel the vehicle forward or backward, causing an accident.

⚠ NOTICE**■ When driving the vehicle**

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain the engine output.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

■ Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time. Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

- NX300: Make sure to idle the engine immediately after high-load driving. Stop the engine only after the turbo-charger has cooled down. (→P.161) Failure to do so may cause damage to the turbo charger.

■ If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P.436, 446)

■ When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain, etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, transfer (AWD vehicles), rear differential (AWD vehicles), etc.
- Lubricant condition for the propeller shaft (AWD models), bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

**NOTICE****■ When parking the vehicle**

Always set the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load.

**WARNING****■ Things that must not be carried in the luggage compartment**

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the luggage compartment:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment whenever possible.
- Do not stack cargo and luggage in the luggage compartment higher than the seatbacks.
- When you fold down the rear seats, long items should not be placed directly behind the front seats.
- Never allow anyone to ride in the luggage compartment. It is not designed for passengers. They should ride in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
 - At the feet of the driver
 - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
 - On the luggage cover
 - On the instrument panel
 - On the dashboard
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.

■ Load and distribution

- Do not overload your vehicle.
- Do not apply loads unevenly.

Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

■ When using a roof luggage carrier (vehicles with roof rails)

Observe the following precautions:

- Place the cargo so that its weight is distributed evenly between the front and rear axles.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width. (→P.470)
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely fastened on the roof luggage carrier.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier will make the center of gravity of the vehicle higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly and result in death or serious injury.

- If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, stop the vehicle now and then during the trip to make sure the cargo remains in its place.

- Do not exceed 80 kg (176.3 lb.) cargo weight on the roof luggage carrier.

⚠ NOTICE**■ When loading cargo (vehicles with moon roof or panoramic roof)**

Do not set luggage on the moon roof and panoramic roof. Failure to observe so may lead to cause damage.

Trailer towing (vehicles without towing package)

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



Trailer towing (vehicles with towing package)

Your vehicle is designed primarily as a passenger carrying vehicle. Towing a trailer will have an adverse effect on handling, performance, braking, durability, and fuel consumption. Your safety and satisfaction depend on the proper use of correct equipment and cautious driving habits. For your safety and the safety of others, do not overload the vehicle or trailer.

To tow a trailer safely, use extreme care and drive the vehicle in accordance with the trailer's characteristics and operating conditions.

Lexus warranties do not apply to damage or malfunction caused by towing a trailer for commercial purposes.

Ask your local Lexus dealer for further details before towing, as there are additional legal requirements in some countries.

Weight limits

Check the allowable towing capacity, GVM (Gross Vehicle Mass), MPAC (Maximum Permissible Axle Capacity), and permissible draw bar load before towing. (→P.470)

Towing hitch/bracket

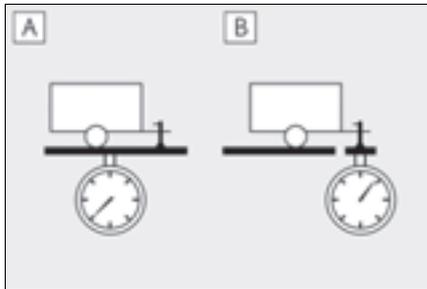
Lexus recommends the use of the Lexus hitch/bracket for your vehicle. Other products of a suitable nature and comparable quality may also be used.

Connecting trailer lights

Please consult your dealer when installing trailer lights, as incorrect installation may cause damage to the vehicle's lights. Please take care to comply with your state's laws when installing trailer lights.

Important points regarding trailer loads

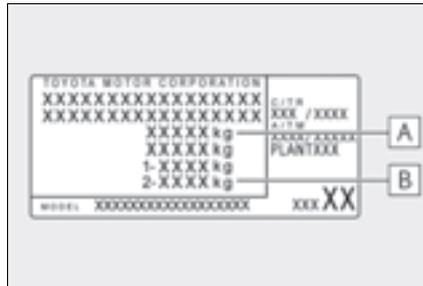
■ **Total trailer weight and permissible drawbar load**



A Total trailer weight
 Weight of the trailer itself plus the trailer load should be within the maximum towing capacity. Exceeding this weight is dangerous. (→P.470)
 When towing a trailer, use a friction coupler or friction stabilizer (sway control device).

B Permissible drawbar load
 Allocate the trailer load so that the drawbar load is 25 kg (55.1 lb.).

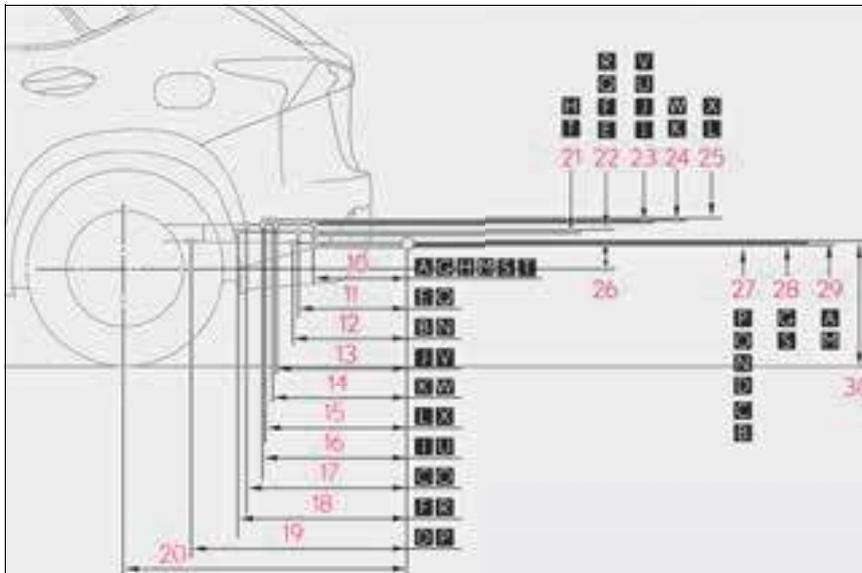
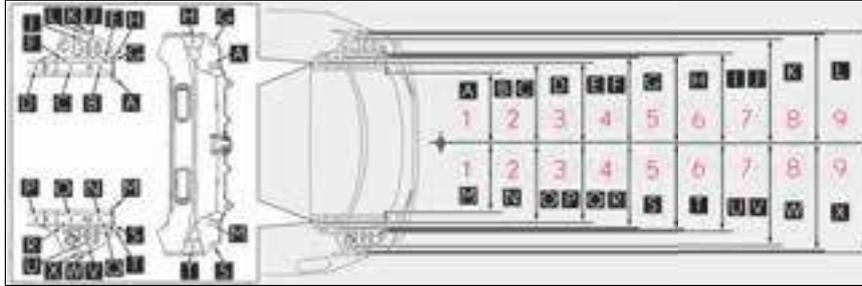
■ **Information tag (manufacturer's label)**



A Gross vehicle mass
 The combined weight of the driver, passengers, cargo, towing hitch, total curb mass and drawbar load must not exceed the gross vehicle mass. Exceeding this weight is dangerous.

B Maximum permissible rear axle capacity
 The weight borne by the rear axle should not exceed the maximum permissible rear axle capacity. Exceeding this weight is dangerous. The values for towing capacity were derived from testing conducted at sea level. Take note that engine output and towing capacity will be reduced at high altitudes.

Installation positions for the towing hitch/bracket and hitch ball



- | | |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 484 mm (19.1 in.) | 12 434 mm (17.1 in.) |
| 2 546 mm (21.5 in.) | 13 496 mm (19.5 in.) |
| 3 551 mm (21.7 in.) | 14 512 mm (20.2 in.) |
| 4 583 mm (23.0 in.) | 15 539 mm (21.2 in.) |
| 5 604 mm (23.8 in.) | 16 549 mm (21.6 in.) |
| 6 617 mm (24.3 in.) | 17 610 mm (24.0 in.) |
| 7 713 mm (28.1 in.) | 18 643 mm (25.3 in.) |
| 8 757 mm (29.8 in.) | 19 818 mm (32.2 in.) |
| 9 767 mm (30.2 in.) | 20 1070 mm (42.1 in.) |
| 10 355 mm (14.0 in.) | 21 32 mm (1.3 in.) |
| 11 413 mm (16.3 in.) | 22 43 mm (1.7 in.) |

- 23** 69 mm (2.7 in.)
- 24** 75 mm (3.0 in.)
- 25** 78 mm (3.1 in.)
- 26** 106 mm (4.2 in.)
- 27** 2 mm (0.1 in.)
- 28** 6 mm (0.2 in.)
- 29** 9 mm (0.4 in.)
- 30** 371 mm (14.6 in.)

■ Tire information

- Increase the tire inflation pressure to 20.0 kPa (0.2 kgf/cm² or bar, 3 psi) greater than the recommended value when towing. (→P.479)
- Increase the air pressure of the trailer tires in accordance with the total trailer weight and according to the values recommended by the manufacturer of your trailer.

■ Trailer lights

Check that the turn signal lights and stop lights are operating correctly every time you hitch up the trailer. Directly wiring up to your vehicle may damage the electrical system and stop the lights from functioning correctly.

■ Break-in schedule

Lexus recommends that vehicles fitted with new power train components should not be used for towing trailers for the first 800 km (500 miles).

■ Safety checks before towing

- Check that the maximum load limit for the towing hitch/bracket and hitch ball is not exceeded. Bear in mind that the coupling weight of the trailer will add to the load exerted on the vehicle. Also make sure that the total load exerted on the vehicle is within the range of the weight limits. (→P.169)
- Ensure that the trailer load is secure.
- Supplementary outside rear view mirrors should be added to the vehicle if the traf-

fic behind cannot be clearly seen with standard mirrors. Adjust the extending arms of these mirrors on both sides of the vehicle so that they always provide maximum visibility of the road behind.

■ Maintenance

- Maintenance must be performed more frequently when using the vehicle for towing due to the greater weight burden placed on the vehicle compared to normal driving.
- Retighten all bolts securing the hitching ball and bracket after towing for approximately 1000 km (600 miles).

Guidance

Your vehicle will handle differently when towing a trailer. In order to avoid accident, death or serious injury, keep the following in mind when towing:

■ Checking connections between trailer and lights

Stop the vehicle and check the operation of the connection between the trailer and lights after driving for a brief period as well as before starting off.

■ Practicing driving with a coupled trailer

- Get the feel for turning, stopping and reversing with the trailer coupled by practicing in an area with no or light traffic.
- When reversing with a coupled trailer, hold the section of the steering wheel nearest to you and rotate clockwise to turn the trailer left or counterclockwise to turn it right. Always rotate a little at a time to prevent steering error. Have someone

guide you when reversing to lessen the risk of an accident.

■ **Increasing vehicle-to-vehicle distance**

At a speed of 10 km/h (6 mph), the distance to the vehicle running ahead of you should be equivalent to or greater than the combined length of your vehicle and trailer. Avoid sudden braking that may cause skidding. Otherwise, the vehicle may spin out of control. This is especially true when driving on wet or slippery road surfaces.

■ **Sudden acceleration/steering input/cornering**

Executing sharp turns when towing may result in the trailer colliding with your vehicle. Decelerate well in advance when approaching turns and take them slowly and carefully to avoid sudden braking.

■ **Important points regarding turning**

The wheels of the trailer will travel closer to the inside of the curve than the wheels of the vehicle. To make allowance for this, take the turns wider than you would normally do.

■ **Important points regarding stability**

Vehicle movement resulting from uneven road surfaces and strong crosswinds will affect handling. The vehicle may also be rocked by passing buses or large trucks. Frequently check behind when moving alongside such vehicles. As soon as such vehicle movement occurs, immediately start to

decelerate smoothly by slowly applying the brakes. Always steer the vehicle straight ahead while braking.

■ **Passing other vehicles**

Consider the total combined length of your vehicle and trailer and ensure that the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is sufficient before executing lane changes.

■ **Transmission information**

To maintain engine braking efficiency and charging system performance, when using engine braking, do not use the transmission in D. If in the M mode, the transmission shift range position must be in 4 or lower. (→P.177, 181)

■ **If the engine overheats**

Towing a loaded trailer up a long, steep incline in temperatures exceeding 30°C (85°F) may result in the engine overheating. If the engine coolant temperature gauge indicates that the engine is overheating, turn the air conditioning off immediately, leave the road and stop the vehicle in a safe place. (→P.465)

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Always place wheel chocks under the wheels of both the vehicle and trailer. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.

 **WARNING**

Follow all the instructions described in this section.
Failure to do so could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Trailer towing precautions

When towing, make sure that none of the weight limits are exceeded. (→P.169)

■ To avoid accident or injury

- Vehicles with compact spare tire:
Do not tow a trailer when the compact spare tire is installed on your vehicle.
- Do not use the following systems when trailer towing.
 - Cruise control (if equipped)
 - Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)

■ Vehicle speed in towing

Observe the legal maximum speeds for trailer towing.

■ Before descending hills or long declines

Reduce speed and downshift. However, never downshift suddenly while descending steep or long downhill grades.

■ Operation of the brake pedal

Do not hold the brake pedal depressed often or for long periods of time. Doing so may result in the brake overheating or reduce braking effects.

 **NOTICE****■ Do not directly splice trailer lights**

Directly splicing trailer lights may damage your vehicle's electrical system and cause a malfunction.

Engine (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes engine switch modes.

Starting the engine

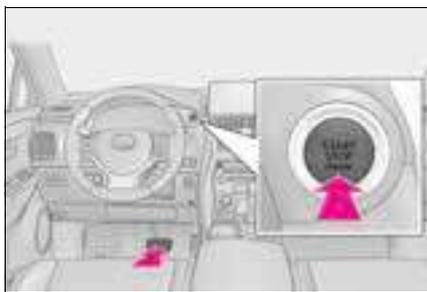
- 1 Check that the parking brake is set.
- 2 Check that the shift lever is in P.
- 3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

 and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. If it is not displayed, the engine cannot be started.

- 4 Press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

When operating the engine switch, one short, firm press is enough. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less. Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started. The engine can be started from any engine switch mode.



■ If the engine does not start

- The engine immobilizer system may not

have been deactivated. (→P.73)
Contact your Lexus dealer.

- Check that the shift lever is securely set in P. The engine may not start if the shift lever is displaced out of P. "To Start Vehicle, Put Shift Lever into P" will be displayed on the multi-information display.
- The smart entry & start system may not be operating properly. (→P.459)

■ Electronic key battery depletion

→P.106

■ Conditions affecting operation

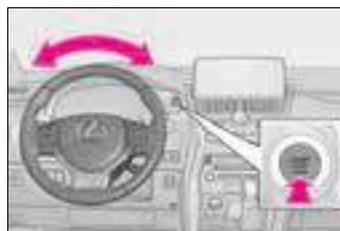
→P.129

■ Note for the entry function

→P.129

■ Steering lock function

- After turning the engine switch off and opening and closing the doors, the steering wheel will be locked due to the steering lock function. Operating the engine switch again automatically cancels the steering lock.
- When the steering lock cannot be released, "Steering Wheel Lock Press Engine Switch while Turning Wheel" will be displayed on the multi-information display. Check that the shift lever is in P. Press the engine switch while turning the steering wheel left and right.



- To prevent the steering lock motor from overheating, operation of the motor may be suspended if the engine is turned on and off repeatedly in a short period of time. In this case, refrain from running the engine. After about 10 seconds, the steering lock motor will resume functioning.

■ **If “Smart Entry & Start System Malfunction See Owner’s Manual” is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Electronic key battery**

→P.406

■ **Operation of the engine switch**

- If the switch is not pressed shortly and firmly, the engine switch mode may not change or the engine may not start.
- If attempting to restart the engine immediately after turning the engine switch off, the engine may not start in some cases. After turning the engine switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the engine.

■ **If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated by a customized setting**

→P.482

- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the engine switch**

If the engine switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Stopping the engine

- 1 Stop the vehicle completely.
- 2 Set the parking brake (→P.187), and shift the shift lever to P (→P.178, 182).
- 3 Press the engine switch.
- 4 Release the brake pedal and check that the display on the instrument cluster is off.

 **WARNING**

■ **When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver’s seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances. Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Caution while driving**

If engine failure occurs while the vehicle is moving, do not lock or open the doors until the vehicle reaches a safe and complete stop. The steering lock function will activate and this may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

 **WARNING**

■ **Stopping the engine in an emergency**

If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the engine switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P.414)

However, do not touch the engine switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, but the power assist to these systems will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer and brake, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

 **NOTICE**

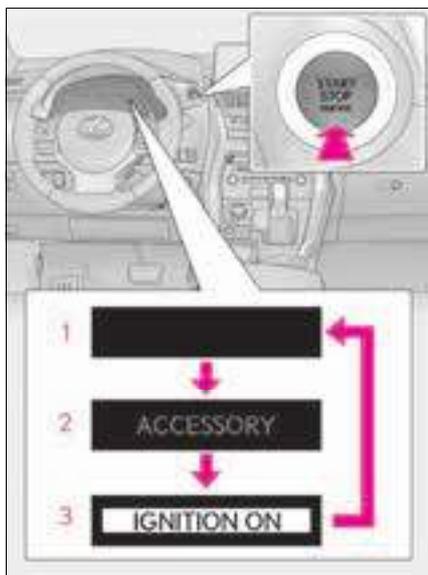
■ **When starting the engine**

- Do not race a cold engine.

Changing engine switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the engine switch with brake pedal

released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used. "ACCESSORY" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used. "IGNITION ON" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the engine switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.

■ Auto power off function

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for more than an hour with the shift lever in P,

the engine switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent battery discharge. Do not leave the vehicle with the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

■ When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

- 1 Check that the parking brake is set.
- 2 Shift the shift lever to P.
- 3 Check that "Turn Off Vehicle" is displayed on the multi-information display and then press the engine switch once.
- 4 Check that "Turn Off Vehicle" on the multi-information display is off.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Do not leave the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is displayed on the multi-information display while the engine is not running, the engine switch is not off. Exit the vehicle after turning the engine switch off.
- Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, battery discharge may occur.

Automatic transmission

Select the shift position depending on your purpose and situation.

Shift position purpose and functions

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving ^{*1}
M	M mode driving ^{*2} (→P.180)

^{*1}: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noise, shift the shift lever to D for normal driving.

You can choose gear range suitable for your driving situation by operating the paddle shift switches.

^{*2}: Any gear range can be fixed when driving in M mode.

■ To protect the automatic transmission

“Transmission Fluid Temp High See Owner’s Manual” is displayed on the multi-information display and a function is adopted that automatically selects a higher shift range when the fluid temperature is high. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ When driving with cruise control (if equipped), dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) or dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) activated

Even when performing the following

actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because cruise control, dynamic radar cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range will not be canceled.

- While driving in D position, downshifting to 5 or 4. (→P.179)
- When switching the driving mode to Sport mode while driving in D position. (→P.304)

■ Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)

When the following unusual operation is performed, the engine output may be restrained.

- When the shift lever is shifted from R to D, D to R, N to R, P to D, or P to R (D includes M) with the accelerator pedal depressed, a warning message appears on the multi-information display. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed too much while the vehicle is in reverse.

■ If the “M” indicator does not come on or the “D” indicator is displayed even after shifting the shift lever to M

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer. (In this situation, the transmission will operate in the same manner as when the shift lever is in D.)

■ AI-SHIFT

- The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions. The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the driving mode select switch is set to Normal mode with the shift lever in the D position. (The function will be canceled, if the driving mode select switch is set to Sport mode or shift lever is put in the M position.)
- The G AI-SHIFT is automatically changed to a suitable gear step while running in Sport mode according to the

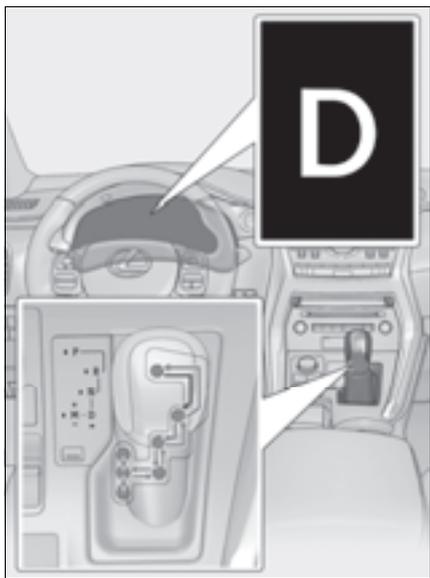
driving operations and running conditions.
 The G AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the driving mode select switch is set to Sport mode with the shift lever in the D position. (The function will be canceled, if the driving mode select switch is set to Normal mode or shift lever is put in the M position.)

⚠ WARNING

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

Be careful of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

Shifting the shift lever



← While the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, move the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

■ Shift lock system

The shift lock system is a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever in starting.

The shift lever can be shifted from P only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the brake pedal is being depressed.

■ If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P

First, check whether the brake pedal is being depressed.
 If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

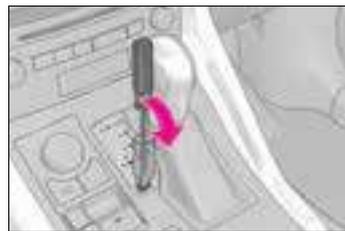
The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

Releasing the shift lock:

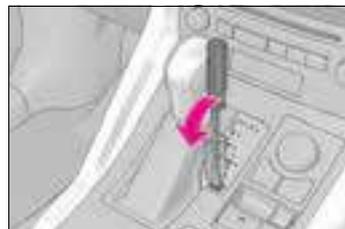
- 1 Set the parking brake.
- 2 Turn the engine switch off.
- 3 Depress the brake pedal.
- 4 Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent tool.

To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles

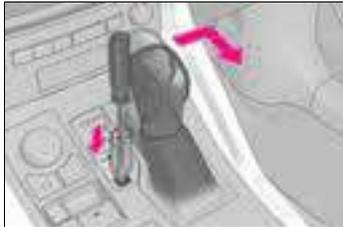


▶ Right-hand drive vehicles

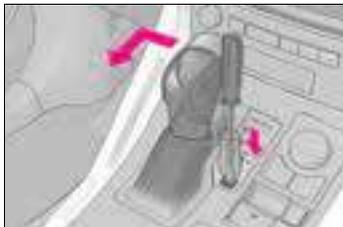


5 Press the shift lock override button. The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



⚠ WARNING

■ To prevent an accident when releasing the shift lock

Before pressing the shift lock override button, make sure to set the parking brake and depress the brake pedal. If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed instead of the brake pedal when the shift lock override button is pressed and the shift lever is shifted out of P, the vehicle may suddenly start, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

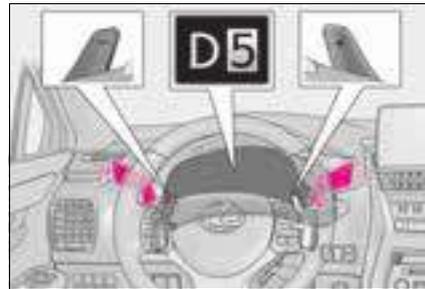
Selecting the driving mode

→P.304

Selecting shift ranges in the D position

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the “-” paddle shift

switch while the shift lever in D. Changing the shift range enables the level of engine braking force to be selected. The shift range can then be selected by operating the “-” and “+” paddle shift switches.



- 1** Upshifting
- 2** Downshifting

The selected shift range, from 1 to 6, will be displayed on the multi-information display.

The initial shift range when the “-” paddle shift switch is operated is automatically set to 2, 3, 4 or 5 according to the vehicle speed.

To return to normal D position driving, the “+” paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

Meter display	Function
D2 - D6	A gear in the range between 1 and the selected gear is automatically chosen depending on vehicle speed and driving conditions
D1	1st gear is set

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

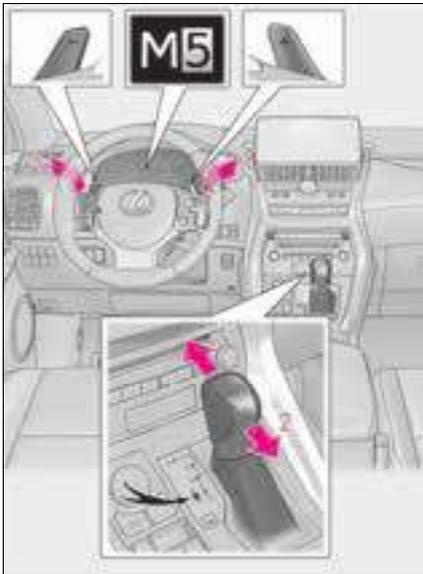
■ **Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position**

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time
- When the shift lever is shifted to a position other than D

■ **Selecting gears in the M position**

To enter M mode, shift the shift lever to M. Gears can then be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the gear of your choice. The gear can be selected by operating the shift lever or the “-” and “+” paddle shift switches.



- 1 Upshifting
- 2 Downshifting

The gear changes once every time the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated.

The selected gear, from 1 to 6, will be fixed and displayed on the multi-information display.

When in the M position, the gear will not change unless the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated.

However, even when in the M position, the gears will be automatically changed in the following situation:

- When vehicle speed drops (downshift only).
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed further, while driving (downshift only).
- When the needle of the tachometer is in the red zone (the range which exceeds the allowable revs of the engine).

■ **Downshifting restriction warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Continuously variable transmission*

*: If equipped

Select the shift position depending on your purpose and situation.

Shift position purpose and functions

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving ^{*1}
M	8-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode driving ^{*2} (→P.183)

^{*1}: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noise, shift the shift lever to D for normal driving.

You can choose gear range suitable for your driving situation by operating the paddle shift switches.

^{*2}: By selecting gear steps using M position, you can control accelerating force and engine braking force.

To protect the transmission

"Transmission Fluid Temp High See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-information display and a function is adopted that automatically selects a higher gear ratio when the fluid temperature is high. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

When driving with cruise control activated (if equipped)

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because cruise control will not be canceled.

- While driving in D position. (→P.183)
- When switching the driving mode to Sport mode while driving in D position. (→P.304)

Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)

When the following unusual operation is performed, the engine output may be restrained.

- When the shift lever is shifted from R to D, D to R, N to R, P to D, or P to R (D includes M) with the accelerator pedal depressed, a warning message appears on the multi-information display. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
- When the accelerator pedal is depressed too much while the vehicle is in reverse.

AI-SHIFT

AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.

AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in the D position. (Shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels the function.)

WARNING

When driving on slippery road surfaces

Be careful-of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

Shifting the shift lever



← While the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, move the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed. When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped.

■ **Shift lock system**

The shift lock system is a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever in starting.

The shift lever can be shifted from P only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the brake pedal is being depressed.

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P**

First, check whether the brake pedal is being depressed.

If the shift lever cannot be shifted with your foot on the brake pedal, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer

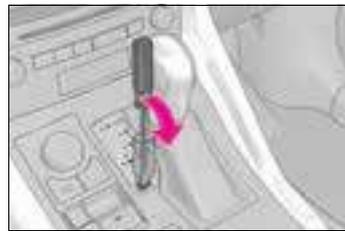
immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

Releasing the shift lock:

- 1 Set the parking brake.
- 2 Turn the engine switch off.
- 3 Depress the brake pedal.
- 4 Pry the cover up with a flathead screwdriver or equivalent tool.

To prevent damage to the cover, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



- 5 Press the shift lock override button.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.



⚠ WARNING

■ **To prevent an accident when releasing the shift lock**

Before pressing the shift lock override button, make sure to set the parking brake and depress the brake pedal.

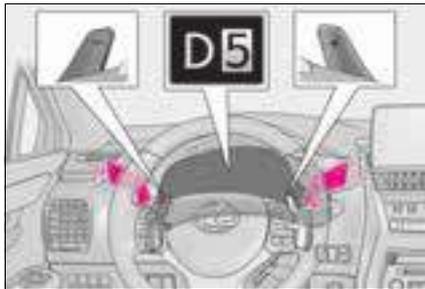
If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed instead of the brake pedal when the shift lock override button is pressed and the shift lever is shifted out of P, the vehicle may suddenly start leading to an accident which may result in death or serious injury.

Selecting the driving mode

→P.304

Selecting gear steps in the D position

To drive using temporary gear step selection, operate the paddle shift switch while the shift lever in D. Changing the gear step enables the level of engine braking force to be selected. The gear step can then be selected by operating the “-” and “+” paddle shift switches.



- 1** Upshifting
- 2** Downshifting

The selected gear step, from 1 to 8, will be displayed on the multi-information display.

To return to normal D position driving, the “+” paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

■ Gear steps and their functions

- You can choose from 8 levels of engine braking force.
- A lower gear step will provide greater engine braking force than a higher gear step, and the engine

revolutions will also increase.

■ When the vehicle comes to a stop with the shift lever in the M position

- The transmission will automatically downshift to M1 once the vehicle is stopped.
- After a stop, the vehicle will start off in M1.
- When the vehicle is stopped, the transmission is set at M1.

■ Automatic deactivation of gear step selection in the D position

Gear step selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time at a gear step
- When the shift lever is shifted to a position other than D
- Automatically selects a higher gear step before the engine speed becomes too high.

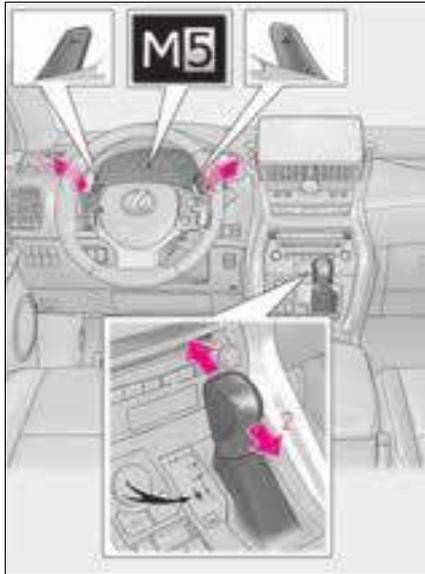
■ Downshifting restriction warning buzzer (when driving in 8-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode)

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Changing gear steps in the M position

To enter 8-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode, shift the shift lever to M. Gear steps can be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the gear step of your choice. The gear step can be selected by operating the shift

lever or the “-” and “+” paddle shift switches.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The selected gear step, from 1 to 8, will be displayed on the multi-information display.

However, even when in the M position, the gear steps will be automatically changed if the engine speed is too high, or too low.

■ **Gear steps and their functions**

- You can choose from 8 levels of accelerating force and engine braking force.
- A lower gear step will provide greater accelerating force and engine braking force than a higher gear step, and the engine revolutions will also increase.
- If you accelerate while in gear step 1 to 7, the gear step may automatically

shift up in accordance with the engine speed.

- When vehicle speed drops, the gear step will be automatically downshifted unless the shift lever or paddle shift switches are operated.
- When the vehicle speed and engine speed are too low, the gear step may not change even when the shift lever is operated.

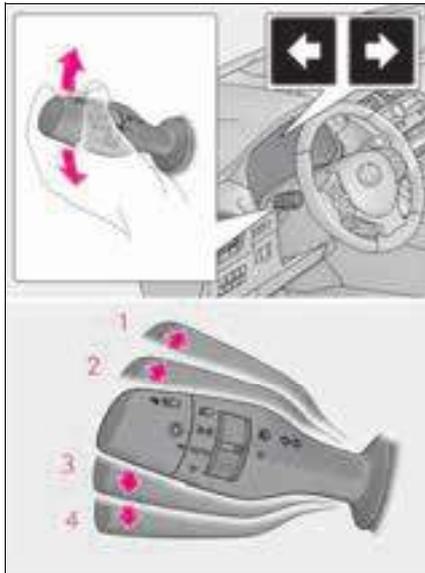
■ **Downshifting restriction warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Turn signal lever

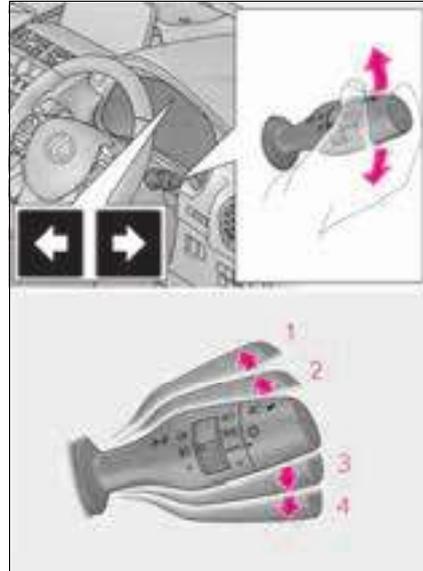
Operating instructions

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



- 1** Right turn
- 2** Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)
The right hand signals will flash 3 times.
- 3** Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)
The left hand signals will flash 3 times.
- 4** Left turn

▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



- 1** Left turn
- 2** Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)
The left hand signals will flash 3 times.
- 3** Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)
The right hand signals will flash 3 times.
- 4** Right turn

■ Turn signals can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ If the indicator flashes faster than usual

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ Customization

→P.482

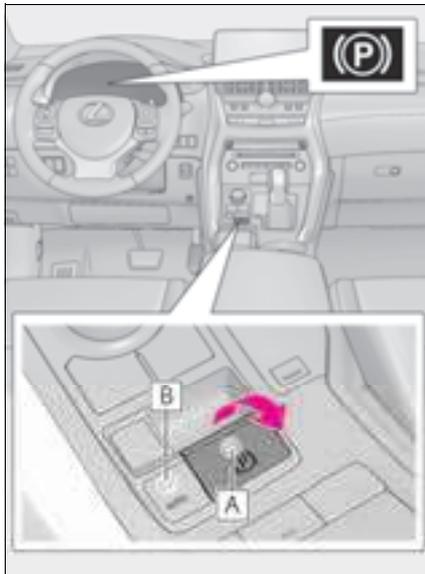
Parking brake

The parking brake can be set or released automatically or manually. In automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released automatically according to shift lever operation. Also, even in automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released manually.

Operating instructions

■ Turns automatic mode on

While the vehicle is stopped, pull and hold the parking brake switch until the automatic mode lamp turns on



- A** Parking brake lamp
- B** Automatic mode lamp

The parking brake is set or released

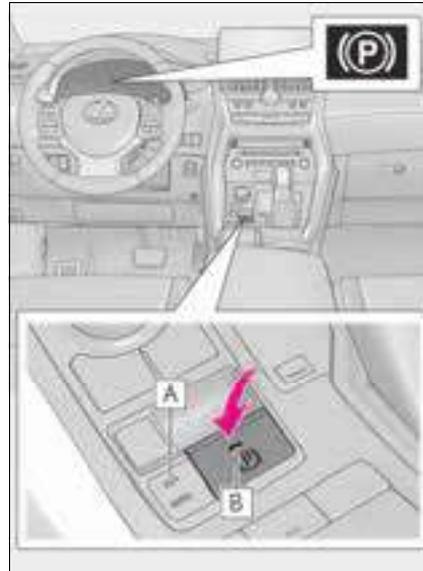
automatically according to shift lever operation.

- When the shift lever is moved out of P, the parking brake will be released, and the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp turn off.
- When the shift lever is moved into P, the parking brake will be set, and the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp turn on.

Operate the shift lever with the brake pedal depressed.

■ Turns automatic mode off

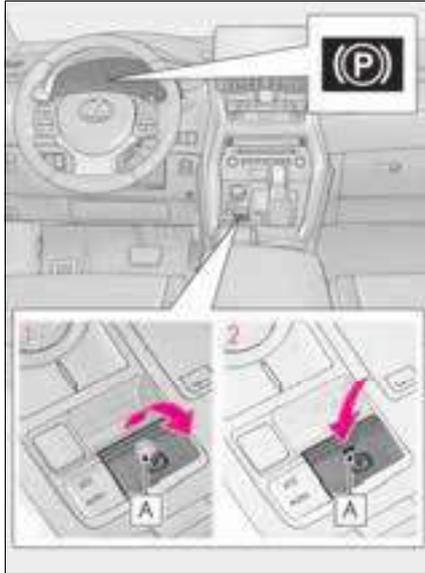
While the vehicle is stopped, press and hold the parking brake switch until the automatic mode lamp turns off



- A** Automatic mode lamp
- B** Parking brake lamp

■ Using the manual mode

The parking brake can be set and released manually.



A Parking brake lamp

1 Sets the parking brake

The parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp **A** will turn on.

Pull and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving.

2 Releases the parking brake

Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. Make sure that the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp **A** turn off.

If the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp flashes, operate the switch again. (→P.427)

■ Parking brake operation

- When the engine switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the engine switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.

■ If “Parking Brake Overheated Parking Brake Unavailable” is displayed on the multi-information display

If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

■ Parking brake operation sound

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp

- Depending on the engine switch mode, the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp will turn on and stay on as described below:
IGNITION ON mode: Comes on until the parking brake is released.
Not in IGNITION ON mode: Stays on for approximately 15 seconds.
- When the engine switch is turned off with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light and parking brake lamp will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Changing the mode

When changing the automatic mode on/off, the message will be shown on the multi-information display and the buzzer sounds.

■ Parking the vehicle

→P.160

■ Parking brake engaged warning buzzer

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven

with the parking brake engaged. "Release Parking Brake" is displayed on the multi-information display.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **If the brake system warning light comes on**

→P.423, 424

■ **Usage in winter time**

→P.315

■ **When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction**

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

 **WARNING**

■ **When parking the vehicle**
Do not leave a child in the vehicle alone. The parking brake may be released unintentionally and there is the danger of the vehicle moving that may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Parking brake switch**
Do not set any objects near the parking brake switch. Objects may interfere with the switch and may lead the parking brake to unexpectedly operate.

 **NOTICE**

■ **When parking the vehicle**
Before you leave the vehicle, shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ **When the system malfunctions**
Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

Brake Hold

The brake hold system keeps the brake applied when the shift lever is in D, M or N with the system on and the brake pedal has been depressed to stop the vehicle. The system releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever in D or M to allow smooth start off.

Enabling the system

Turns the brake hold system on

The brake hold standby indicator **A** (green) comes on. While the system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator **B** (yellow) comes on.



Brake hold system operating conditions

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.

If any of the conditions above are detected when the brake hold system is enabled, the system will turn off and the brake hold standby indicator light will go off. In addition, if any of the conditions are detected while the system is holding the brake, a

warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will then be set automatically.

Brake hold function

- If the brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes after the system has started holding the brake, the parking brake will be set automatically. In this case, a warning buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the button again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. A warning buzzer will sound and the multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes

With the brake pedal depressed, release the parking brake by operating the parking brake switch, making sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P.186)

When an inspection at your Lexus dealer is necessary

When the brake hold standby indicator (green) does not illuminate even when the brake hold switch is pressed with the brake hold system operating conditions met, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

If "Brake Hold Fault Depress Brake to Deactivate Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Warning messages and buzzers

Warning messages and buzzers are used to

indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **If the brake hold operated indicator flashes**
→P.427

⚠ WARNING

■ **When the vehicle is on a steep incline**
When using the brake hold system on a steep incline, exercise caution. The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle in such a situation.

■ **When stopped on a slippery road**
The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**
The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the engine switch off while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the engine switch, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to P and set the parking brake.

ASC (Active Sound Control)*

*: If equipped

The ASC system is an electronic sound system that generates engine sound, conveying the kinetic situations of the vehicle's acceleration and deceleration to the driver through the speakers inside the instrument panel. The vehicle's response to the driver's acceleration behavior and shift operations are also conveyed in sound. When Sport mode is selected, the sound conveyed to the driver will be louder.

Controlling volume



- 1 Louder
- 2 Lower

The indicator comes on when the ASC system is on.

When the dial is turned to the lowest volume, the ASC system will be turned off and the indicator will go off.

■ Operating conditions

When the driving mode select switch is not in Eco mode.

■ Temporary cancelation of the ASC system functions

The ASC system may be temporarily canceled depending on the driving conditions, such as when the tires slip due to sudden acceleration.

■ Certification for the ASC (Active Sound Control)

限用物質含有情況標示

設備名稱：主動聲音控制 型號(型式)：EAE1124P0-EAE1124P0-EAE1124P0 Equipment name: Active Sound Control Type designation (Type): EAE1124P0-EAE1124P0-EAE1124P0						
單元 Unit	限用物質及其化學符號 Restricted substances and its chemical symbols					
	鉛 Lead (Pb)	汞 Mercury (Hg)	鎘 Cadmium (Cd)	六價鉻 Hexavalent chromium (Cr ⁶⁺)	多環聯苯 Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs)	多環二苯醚 Polychlorinated dibenzyl ethers (PCDE)
外殼	○	○	○	○	○	○
散熱片	○	○	○	○	○	○
絕緣	○	○	○	○	○	○
電線束	○	○	○	○	○	○
漆面層	—	○	○	○	○	○
電子元件	—	○	○	○	○	○

備考1: “超出0.1 wt %” 或 “超出0.01 wt %” 係指限用物質之百分比含量超出百分比含量基準值。
Note 1: “Exceeding 0.1 wt %” and “exceeding 0.01 wt %” indicate that the percentage content of the restricted substance exceeds the reference percentage value of process condition.

備考2: “○” 係指該項限用物質之百分比含量未超出百分比含量基準值。
Note 2: “○” indicates that the percentage content of the restricted substance does not exceed the percentage of reference value of process.

備考3: “—” 係指該項限用物質為排除項目。
Note 3: The “—” indicates that the restricted substance corresponds to the exception.

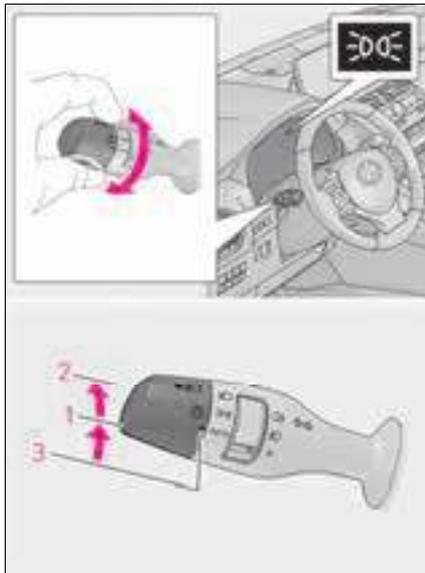
Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Operating instructions (Left-hand drive vehicles)

Operating the  switch turns on the lights as follows:

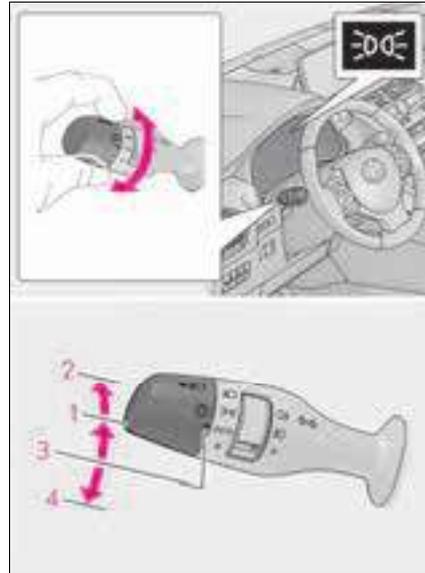
► Type A



- 1  The front position, tail, license plate, instrument panel and switch lights turn on.
- 2  The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.
- 3 **AUTO** The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on and off

automatically.

► Type B



- 1  The front position, tail, license plate, instrument panel and switch lights turn on.
- 2  The headlights and all lights listed above turn on.
- 3 **AUTO** The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.193) and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.
- 4  The daytime running lights turn on. (→P.193)

■ Operating conditions of AUTO mode

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Daytime running light system

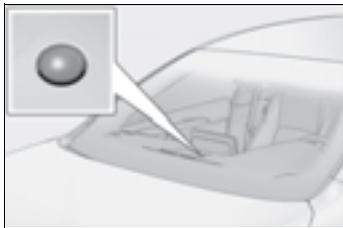
- To make your vehicle more visible to

other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically (at an increased intensity) whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch off or in the **AUTO** position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

- If a turn signal light is in use, the daytime running light, on the same side, is turned off. For emergency flashers, both are turned off.

■ **Headlight control sensor**

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield. Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.



■ **Automatic light off system**

▶ **Type A**

- The headlights and all lights turn off after the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch to the **AUTO** position once and then back to the  or



▶ **Type B**

- When the light switch is in the  or  position: The headlights and front

fog lights (if equipped) turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or off.

- When the light switch is in the **AUTO** position: The headlights and all lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to ON mode, or turn the light switch to the **AUTO** position once and then back to the  or  position.

■ **Light reminder buzzer (for Mongol)**

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

■ **Automatic headlight leveling system**

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ **Battery-saving function**

Type A: In order to prevent the battery of the vehicle from discharging, if the headlights and/or tail lights are on when the engine switch is turned off the battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes.

Type B: In order to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging, if the light switch is in the  position when the engine switch turned off the battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes.

When any of the following are performed, the battery-saving function is canceled once and then reactivated. All the lights will turn off automatically 20 minutes after the battery-saving function has been reactivated:

- When the headlight switch is operated

- When a door is opened or closed

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.482)

⚠ NOTICE

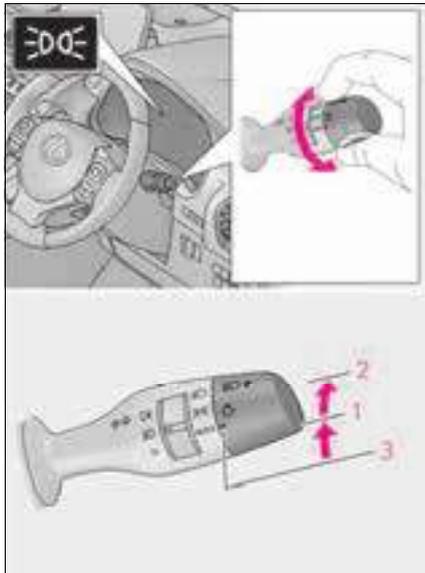
■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Operating instructions (Right-hand drive vehicles)

Operating the  switch turns on the lights as follows:

▶ Type A

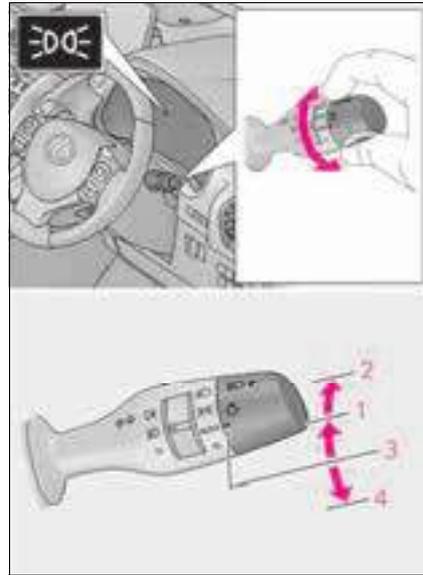


-  The front position, tail, license plate, instrument panel and switch lights turn on.
-  The headlights and all lights

listed above turn on.

- 3 AUTO** The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.

▶ Type B



-  The front position, tail, license plate, instrument panel and switch lights turn on.
-  The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.196) and all lights listed above turn on.
- 3 AUTO** The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.
-  The daytime running lights turn on. (→P.196)

■ Operating conditions of AUTO mode

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Daytime running light system

- To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically (at an increased intensity) whenever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch off or in the **AUTO** position. (Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.
- If a turn signal light is in use, the daytime running light, on the same side, is turned off. For emergency flashers, both are turned off.

■ Headlight control sensor

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield. Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.



■ Automatic light off system

▶ Type A

- The headlights and all lights turn off after the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened. To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch to the **AUTO** or  position once and then back to the

 or  position.

▶ Type B

- When the light switch is in the  or  position: The headlights and front fog lights (if equipped) turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or off.
- When the light switch is in the **AUTO** position: The headlights and all lights turn off automatically if the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to ON mode, or turn the light switch to the **AUTO** or  position once and then back to the  or  position.

■ Light reminder buzzer (for Malaysia)

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

■ Automatic headlight leveling system

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

■ Battery-saving function

Type A: In order to prevent the battery of the vehicle from discharging, if the headlights and/or tail lights are on when the engine switch is turned off the battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes.

Type B: In order to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging, if the light switch is in the  position when the engine switch turned off the battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes.

When any of the following are performed, the battery-saving function is canceled once and then reactivated. All the lights will turn off automatically 20 minutes after the battery-saving function has been reactivated:

- When the headlight switch is operated
- When a door is opened or closed

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.482)

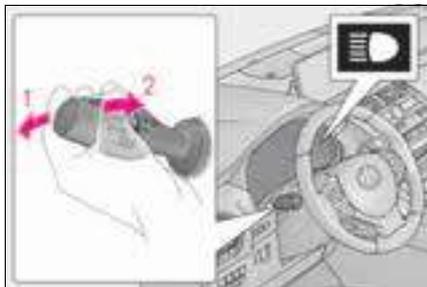
⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Turning on the high beam headlights

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



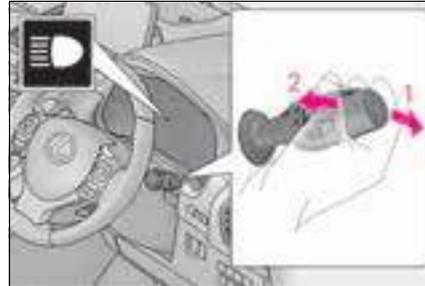
- 1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

- 2 Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



- 1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

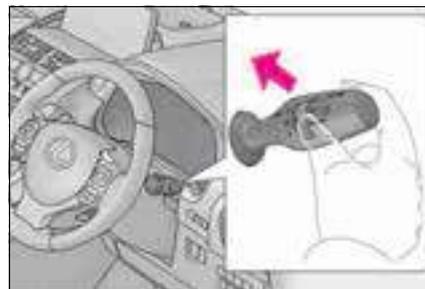
Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

- 2 Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

Follow me home system (if equipped)

This system allows the headlights to be turned on for 30 seconds when the engine switch is off.



Pull the lever toward you and release it with the light switch is in **AUTO** or

- after turning the engine switch off.
- Pull the lever toward you and release it again to turn off the lights.

Cornering lights (vehicles with front fog lights)

When the following conditions are met, while the headlights (low beam) are on, the cornering lights will additionally turn on and light up the direction of movement for the vehicle. This is to ensure excellent visibility when either driving at intersections or parking at night.

- The steering wheel is operated
- The turn signal lever is operated
- The shift lever is in R

■ Cornering light control

- However, when vehicle speed is 40 km/h (25 mph) or above, the cornering lights do not turn on.
- After the lights remain illuminated for 30 minutes, they automatically turn off.

AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*

*: If equipped

The Adaptive High-beam System uses a camera sensor located behind the upper portion of the windshield to assess the brightness of the lights of vehicles ahead, streetlights, etc., and automatically controls the headlight light distribution as necessary.

⚠ WARNING

■ Limitations of the Adaptive High-beam System

Do not overly rely on the Adaptive High-beam System. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beams on or off manually if necessary.

■ To prevent incorrect operation of the Adaptive High-beam System

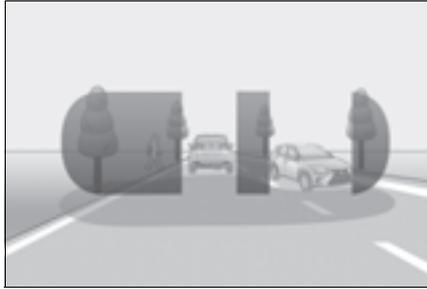
Do not overload the vehicle.

High-beam switch control

- Adjusts the brightness and illuminated area of the high beams according to the vehicle speed.
- Adjusts the intensity of the high beams, while driving on a curve, so that the area in the direction that the vehicle is turning will be illuminated more brightly than other areas.
- Operates the shaded high beams so that the area around vehicles ahead is partially not illuminated while all other areas continue to be illumi-

nated with the high beams.

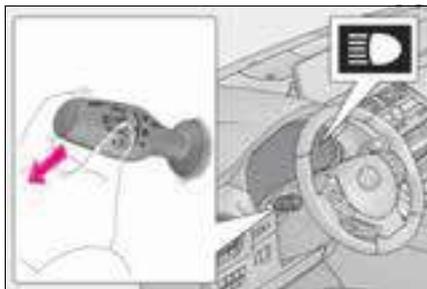
The shaded high beams help optimize forward visibility while reducing the dazzling effect on the drivers of vehicles ahead.



- Adjusts the distance that the low beams are projected according to the distance to a preceding vehicle.

Activating the Adaptive High-beam System

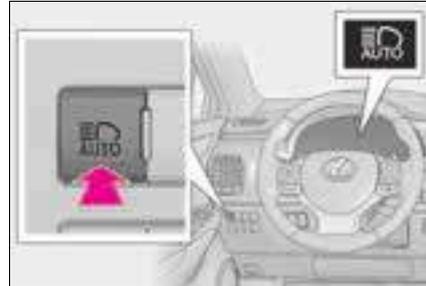
- 1 Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in the  or **AUTO** position.



- 2 Press the Adaptive High-beam System switch.

The Adaptive High-beam System indicator

will come on when the system is operating.



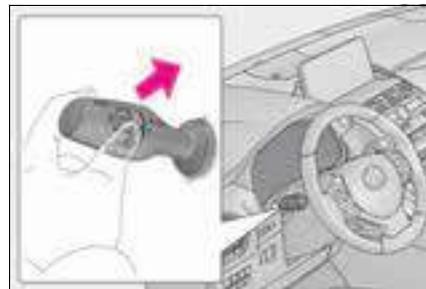
Turning the high beams on/off manually

■ Switching to the low beams

Pull the lever to its original position.

The Adaptive High-beam System indicator will turn off.

Push the lever away from you to activate the Adaptive High-beam System again.

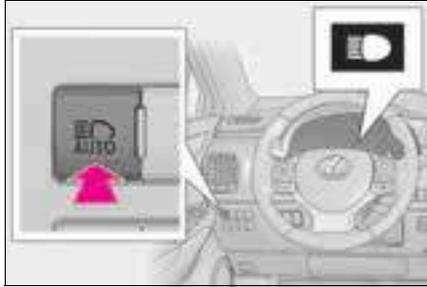


■ Switching to the high beams

Press the Adaptive High-beam System switch.

The Adaptive High-beam System indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Press the switch to activate the Adaptive High-beam System again.



■ **Conditions in which the light distribution control of the headlights changes automatically**

- When all of the following conditions are met, the high beams will be turned on automatically and the system will operate:
 - The vehicle speed is approximately 60 km/h (38 mph) or more.
 - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- When all of the following conditions are met, the shaded high beams will turn on and the distance that the low beams are projected will be adjusted automatically, depending on the location of vehicles ahead:
 - The vehicle speed is approximately 60 km/h (38 mph) or more.
 - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
 - There are vehicles ahead with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- If any of the following conditions is met, the high beams or shaded high beams will be changed to the low beams automatically:
 - The vehicle speed is below approximately 10 km/h (7 mph).
 - The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
 - There are many vehicles ahead.
 - Vehicles ahead are moving quickly and the high beams may blind the drivers of the other vehicles.

■ **Camera sensor detection information**

- The high beams may not be automatically changed to the shaded high beams in the following situations:
 - When vehicles ahead suddenly appear from a curve
 - When the vehicle is cut in front of by

another vehicle

- When vehicles ahead are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- When vehicles ahead appear from the faraway lane on wide road
- When vehicles ahead have no lights
- The high beams may be changed to the shaded high beams if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights without its headlights turned on is detected.
- House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs and other reflective objects may cause the high beams to change to the shaded high beams, cause the high beams not to change to the shaded high beams, or change the area that is not illuminated.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn the high beam on or off, or the speed by which the areas not illuminated change:
 - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of vehicles ahead
 - The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
 - When a vehicle ahead only has operational lights on one side
 - When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
 - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface etc.)
 - The number of passengers and amount of luggage
- The light distribution control of the headlights may change unexpectedly.
- Bicycles or similar objects may not be detected.
- In the following situations the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness level. This may cause the low beams to remain on or the high beams to flash or dazzle pedestrians or vehicles ahead. In such a case, it is necessary to manually switch between the high and low beams.
 - When driving in inclement weather (heavy rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, etc.)
 - When the windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt, etc.

- When the windshield is cracked or damaged
- When the camera sensor is deformed or dirty
- When the temperature of the camera sensor is extremely high
- When the surrounding brightness level is equal to that of headlights, tail lights or fog lights
- When headlights or tail lights of vehicles ahead are turned off, dirty, changing color, or not aimed properly
- When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a preceding vehicle
- When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness
- When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel roads, etc.)
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road
- When there is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or mirror
- When the back of a preceding vehicle is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck
- When the vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty, or are not aimed properly
- When the vehicle is listing or tilting due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed, etc.
- When the headlights are changed between the high beams and low beams repeatedly in an abnormal manner
- When the driver believes that the high beams may be flashing or dazzling pedestrians or other drivers
- When the vehicle is used in an area in which vehicles travel on the opposite side of the road of the country for which the vehicle was designed, for example using a vehicle designed for right-hand traffic in a left-hand traffic area, or vice versa

Automatic High Beam*

*: If equipped

The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle camera sensor to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles, etc., and automatically turns high beam on or off as necessary.

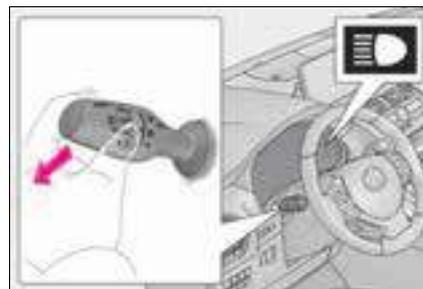
⚠ WARNING

■ Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning high beam on or off manually if necessary.

Activating the Automatic High Beam system

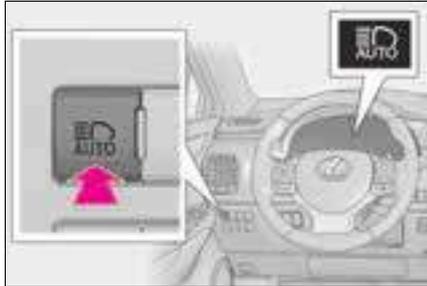
- 1 Push the lever away from you with the headlight switch in **AUTO** or  position.



- 2 Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the headlights are turned

on automatically to indicate that the system is active.



■ **Operating conditions**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **High beam automatic turning on or off conditions**

When all of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned on:

- Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
- There are no oncoming or preceding vehicles with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are few streetlights on the road ahead.

If any of the following conditions are fulfilled, high beam will be automatically turned off:

- Vehicle speed drops below approximately 25 km/h (16 mph).
- The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
- Oncoming or preceding vehicles have headlights or tail lights turned on.
- There are many streetlights on the road ahead.

■ **Camera sensor detection information**

- High beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
 - When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve
 - When the vehicle is cut in front of by

- another
 - When oncoming or preceding vehicles are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
- High beam may be turned off if an oncoming vehicle that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.
- House lights, street lights, red traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to turn off.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn high beam on or off:
 - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of oncoming and preceding vehicles
 - The movement and direction of oncoming and preceding vehicles
 - When a oncoming or preceding vehicle only has operational lights on one side
 - When a oncoming or preceding vehicle is a two-wheeled vehicle
 - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface, etc.)
 - The number of passengers and amount of luggage
- High beam may be turned on or off when unexpected by the driver.
- In the situations below, you should consider turning the high beams on or off manually rather than relying on the Automatic High Beam system.
 - The system is not able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness levels, and flashes or exposes nearby pedestrians to the high beam.
 - In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, etc.)
 - The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt, etc.
 - The windshield is cracked or damaged.
 - The camera sensor is deformed or dirty.
 - The camera sensor temperature is extremely high.
 - Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights.
 - Vehicles ahead have headlights or tail lights that are either switched off, dirty, are changing color, or are not aimed properly.

- When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and darkness.
- When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel tracks, etc.).
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road.
- There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror.
- The back of a vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck.
- The vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty.
- The vehicle is listing or titling, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed, etc.
- The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

- Do not place items on the dashboard. There is a possibility that the camera sensor will mistake items reflected in the windshield for streetlights, the headlights of other vehicles, etc.
- Do not install a parking tag or any other accessories near or around the camera sensor.
- Do not overload the vehicle.
- Do not modify the vehicle.
- Do not replace windshield with non-genuine windshield. Contact your Lexus dealer.

 NOTICE

■ Notes when using the Automatic High Beam system

Observe the following to ensure that the Automatic High Beam functions correctly.

- Do not touch the camera sensor.



- Do not subject the camera sensor to a strong impact.
- Do not disassemble the camera sensor.
- Do not spill liquids onto the camera sensor.
- Do not apply window tinting or stickers to the camera sensor or the area of windshield near the camera sensor.

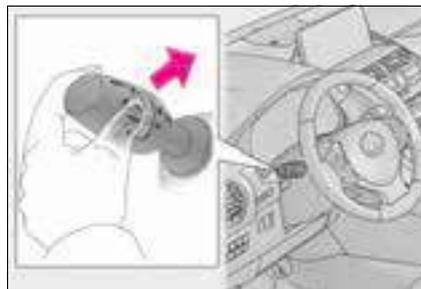
Changing to manual control mode

■ Switching to low beam

Pull the lever to original position.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off.

Push the lever away from you to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.



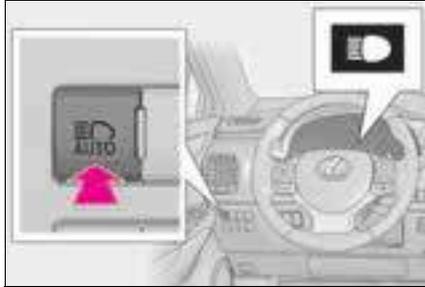
■ Switching to high beam

Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Press the switch to activate the Automatic

High Beam system again.

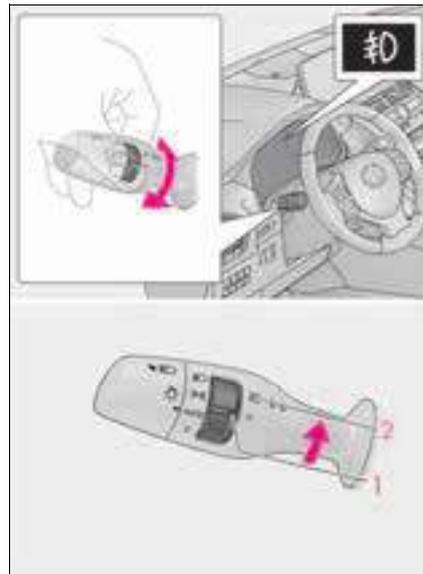


Fog light switch

When in difficult driving conditions, such as in rain and fog, turn on the front fog lights to secure front visibility and turn on the rear fog lights to notify following vehicles the existence of your vehicle.

Operating instructions (Left-hand drive vehicles)

► Front fog light switch



1 0 Turns the fog lights off

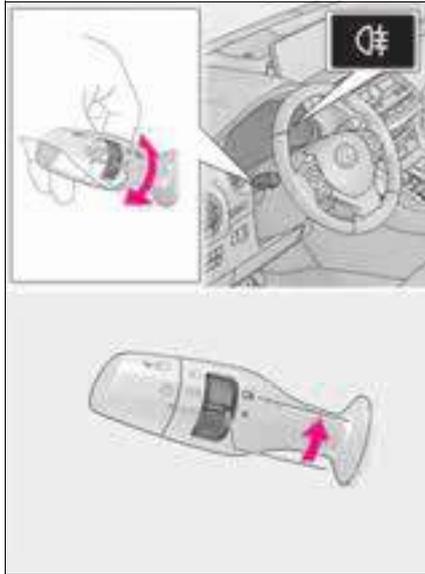
2 F Turns the fog lights on

► Rear fog light switch

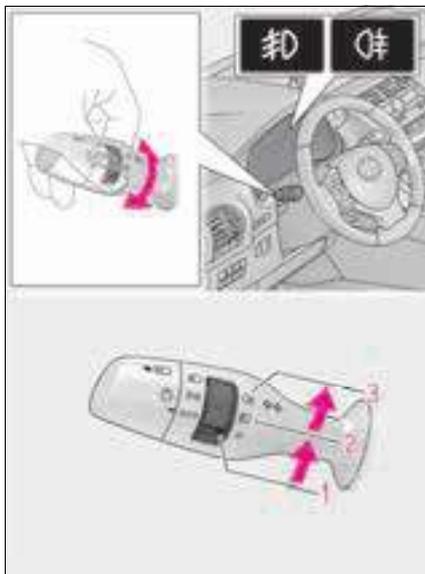
0# Turns the rear fog light on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to

○ .
Operating the switch ring again turns the rear fog light off.



▶ Front and rear fog light switch



1 ○ Turns the front and rear fog lights off

2 ☹ Turns the front fog lights on

3 ☹☹ Turns both front and rear fog lights on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to

☹ .

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog light off.

Operating instructions (Right-hand drive vehicles)

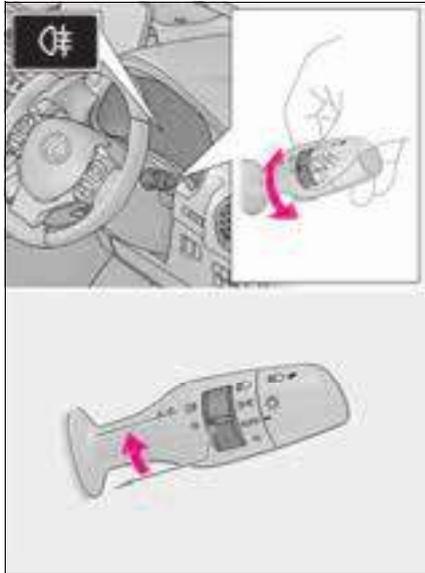
▶ Rear fog light switch

☹☹ Turns the rear fog light on

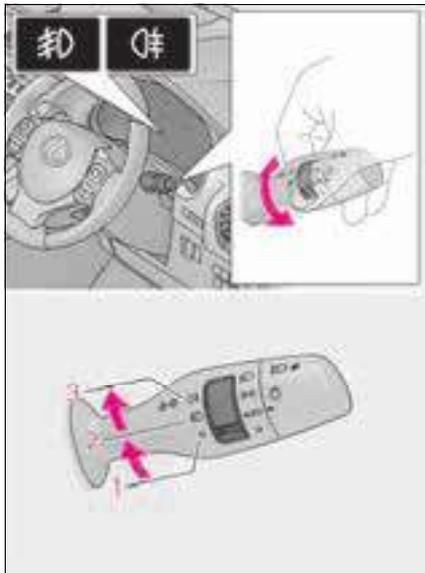
Releasing the switch ring returns it to

○ .

Operating the switch ring again turns the rear fog light off.



▶ Front and rear fog light switch



1 ○ Turns the front and rear fog lights off

2 卍 Turns the front fog lights on

3 卍 Turns both front and rear fog lights on

Releasing the switch ring returns it to

卍 .

Operating the switch ring again turns only the rear fog light off.

■ Fog lights can be used when

▶ Vehicles with front fog lights

The front position lights are turned on.

▶ Vehicles with rear fog light only

The headlights are turned on.

▶ Vehicles with front and rear fog light

Front fog lights: The front position lights are turned on.

Rear fog light: The front fog lights are turned on.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the lever can switch between automatic operation and manual operation, or can use the washer.

NOTICE

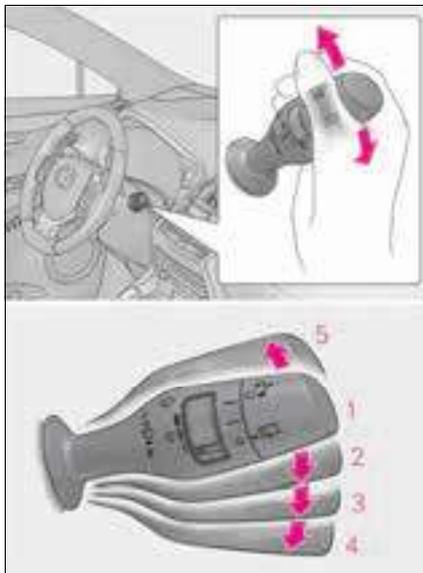
■ When the windshield is dry

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

Operating the wiper lever (Left-hand drive vehicles)

Operating the  lever operates the wipers or washer as follows.

- ▶ Intermittent windshield wipers with interval adjuster



1  Off

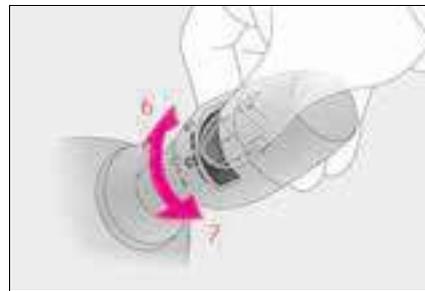
2  Intermittent operation

3  Low speed operation

4  High speed operation

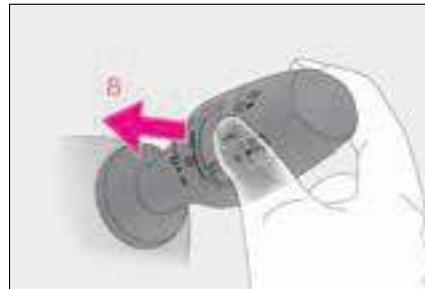
5  Temporary operation

Wiper intervals can be adjusted when intermittent operation is selected.



6 Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency

7 Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency



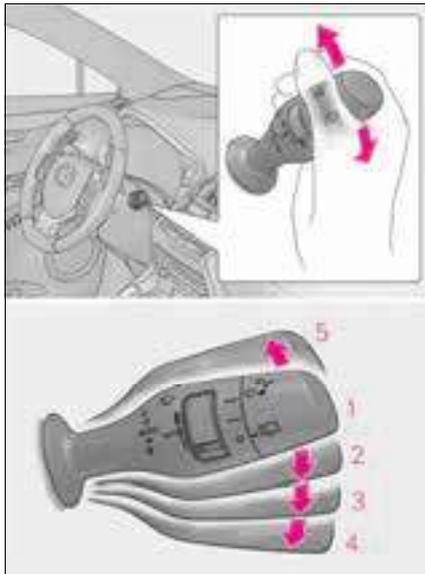
8  Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts. Vehicles with headlight cleaners: When the headlights are on and the lever is pulled

and held, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

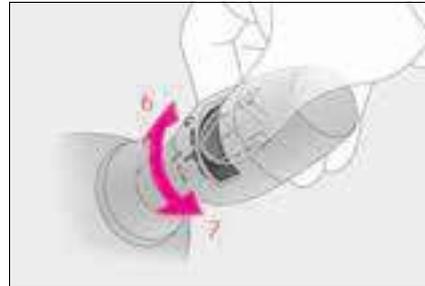
► Rain-sensing windshield wipers



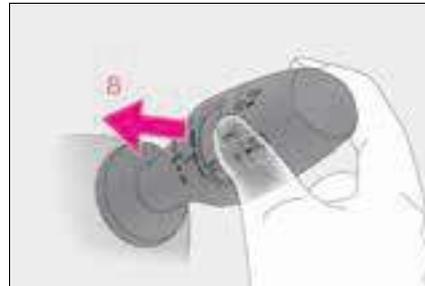
- 1 ○ Off
- 2 **AUTO** Rain-sensing operation
- 3 ▼ Low speed operation
- 4 ▾ High speed operation
- 5 ▲ Temporary operation

When **AUTO** is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.

The sensor sensitivity can be adjusted when **AUTO** is selected.



- 6 Increases the sensitivity
- 7 Decreases the sensitivity



8  Washer/wiper dual operation

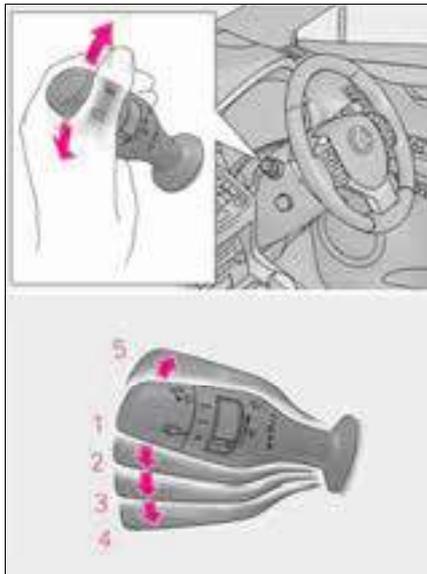
Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts. Vehicles with headlight cleaners: When the headlights are on and the lever is pulled and held, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

Operating the wiper lever (Right-hand drive vehicles)

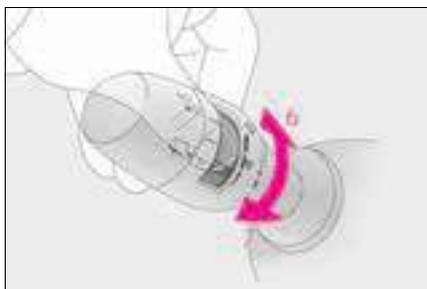
Operate the lever and switch as follows to operate the wipers. The lever will return to its original position after operation.

- ▶ Intermittent windshield wipers with interval adjuster



- 1** ○ Off
- 2** ◻ Intermittent operation
- 3** ▼ Low speed operation
- 4** ▾ High speed operation
- 5** ▲ Temporary operation

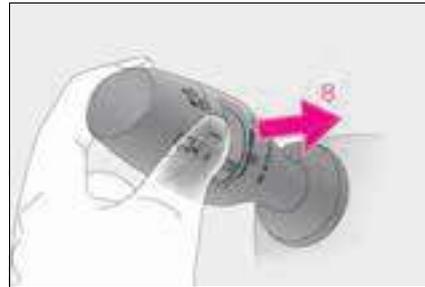
Wiper intervals can be adjusted when intermittent operation is selected.



- 6** Increases the intermittent wind-

shield wiper frequency

- 7** Decreases the intermittent wind-
shield wiper frequency

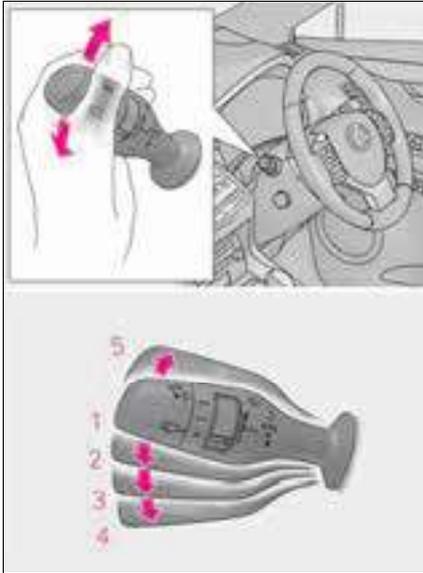


- 8** Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts. Vehicles with headlight cleaners: When the headlights are on and the lever is pulled and held, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

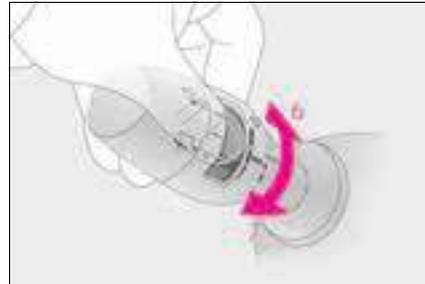
► Rain-sensing windshield wipers



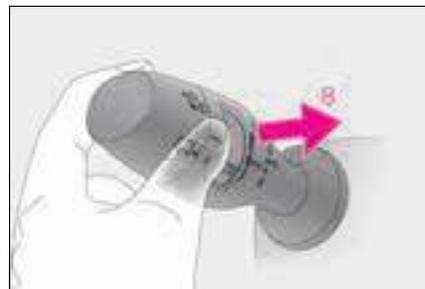
- 1 ○ Off
- 2 **AUTO** Rain-sensing operation
- 3 ▼ Low speed operation
- 4 ▼ High speed operation
- 5 ▲ Temporary operation

When **AUTO** is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.

The sensor sensitivity can be adjusted when **AUTO** is selected.



- 6 Increases the sensitivity
- 7 Decreases the sensitivity



- 8  Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts. Vehicles with headlight cleaners: When the headlights are on and the lever is pulled and held, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

■ The windshield wipers and washer can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Dripping prevention wiper sweep (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

After washing and wiping operation several

times, the wipers operate one more time after a short delay to prevent dripping. However, this function will not operate while driving.

■ **Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

Vehicle speed affects the intermittent wiper interval.

■ **Raindrop sensor (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.
An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs, etc. are present on the windshield.



- If the wiper switch is turned to the **AUTO** position while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wipers will operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.
- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 90°C (194°F) or higher, or -15°C (5°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO mode.

■ **If no windshield washer fluid sprays**

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked, if there is washer fluid in the washer fluid tank.

! WARNING

■ **Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers, etc. do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

■ **Caution regarding the use of washer fluid**

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

! NOTICE

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the wipers on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

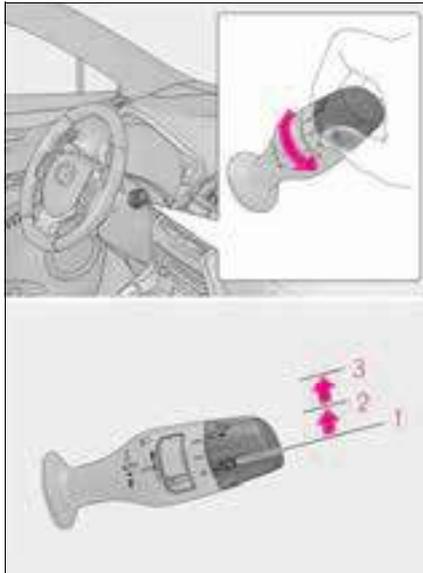
Rear window wiper and washer

 NOTICE

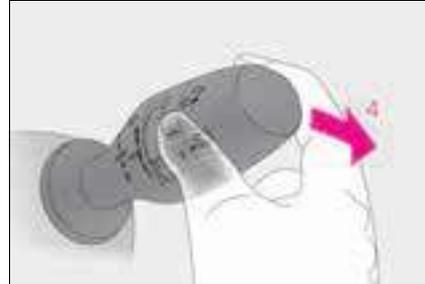
■ **When the rear window is dry**
Do not use the wiper, as it may damage the rear window.

Operating the wiper lever (Left-hand drive vehicles)

Operating the  switch operates the rear wiper as follows:



- 1 ○ Off
- 2 ■■■ Intermittent operation
- 3 — Normal operation

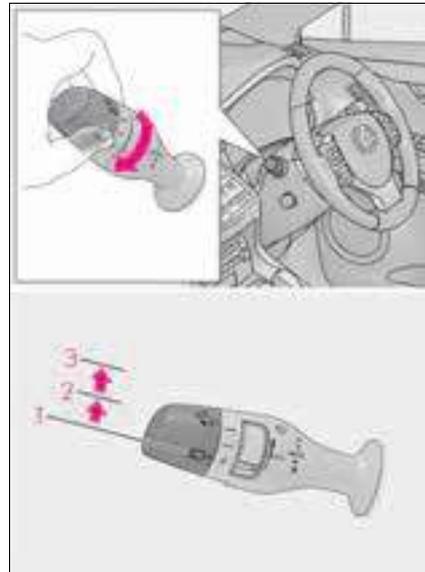


4 Washer/wiper dual operation

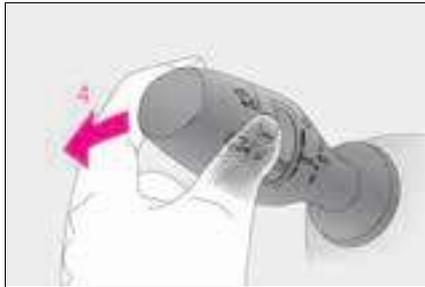
Pushing the lever operates the wiper and washer.
The wiper will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

Operating the wiper lever (Right-hand drive vehicles)

Operating the  switch operates the rear wiper as follows:



- 1 ○ Off
- 2 --- Intermittent operation
- 3 — Normal operation



- 4  Washer/wiper dual operation

Pushing the lever operates the wiper and washer.

The wiper will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts.

■ **The rear window wiper and washer can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.



NOTICE

■ **When the washer fluid tank is empty**

Do not operate the switch continually as the washer fluid pump may overheat.

■ **When a nozzle becomes blocked**

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the wiper on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Opening the fuel tank cap

Before refueling the vehicle

- Turn the engine switch off and ensure that all the doors and windows are closed.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

Fuel types

→P.481

Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

WARNING

When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out of the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.

- Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

NOTICE

Refueling

Do not spill fuel during refueling. Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally, damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

Opening the fuel tank cap

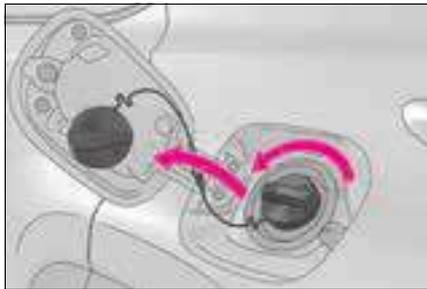
- 1 With all doors unlocked, press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

Push inward and take your hand away to slightly open the fuel filler door. Then open

the door fully by hand.



- 2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly to open it and put it into the holder on the fuel filler door.

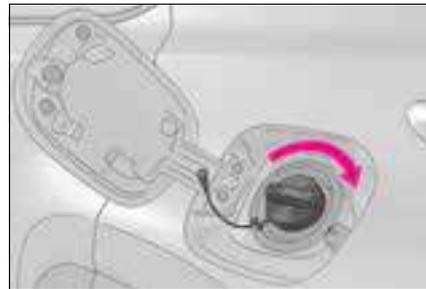


■ **When the fuel filler door cannot be opened**
→P.457

Closing the fuel tank cap

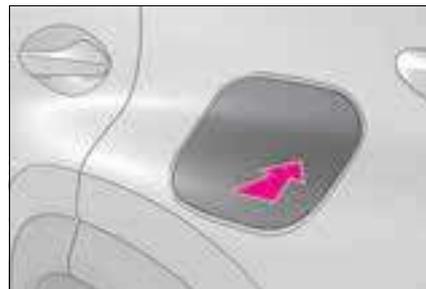
- 1 After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the

cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



- 2 Close the fuel filler door, and press the center of the rear edge of the fuel filler door.

When you lock the doors, the fuel filler door will lock also.



■ Fuel filler door lock condition

The fuel filler door may not be locked even when the vehicle's doors are locked in the following conditions:

- When operating the door lock button inside the vehicle
- When the automatic door locking system is operated (→P.113)
- When the fuel filler door is closed after the vehicle's doors are locked

■ Warning buzzer for loose fuel cap

When the engine switch is IGNITION ON mode and the cap is loose, the buzzer sounds and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.



WARNING

■ **When replacing the fuel tank cap**

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

Lexus Safety System+*

*: If equipped

The Lexus Safety System+ consists of the following drive assist systems and contributes to a safe and comfortable driving experience:

Driving assist system

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)

→P.223

- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)

→P.231

- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)

→P.241

- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)

→P.198

- Automatic High Beam

→P.201

- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

→P.248

- Dynamic radar cruise control

→P.259

⚠ WARNING

■ Lexus Safety System+

The Lexus Safety System+ is designed to operate under the assumption that the driver will drive safely, and is designed to help reduce the impact to the occupants and the vehicle in the case of a collision or assist the driver in normal driving conditions.

As there is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

Sensors

Two types of sensors, located behind the front grille and windshield, detect information necessary to operate the drive assist systems.



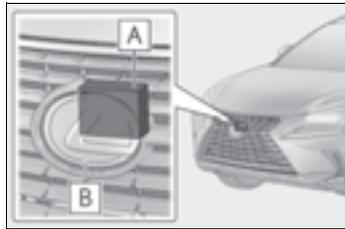
A Radar sensor

B Front camera

⚠ WARNING**■ To avoid malfunction of the radar sensor**

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, the radar sensor may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Keep the radar sensor and the grille cover clean at all times.



A Radar sensor

B Grille cover

If the front of the radar sensor or the front or back of the grille cover is dirty or covered with water droplets, snow, etc., clean it.

Clean the radar sensor and grille cover with a soft cloth to avoid damaging them.

- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers) or other items to the radar sensor, grille cover or surrounding area.
- Do not subject the radar sensor or its surrounding area to a strong impact. If the radar sensor, front grille, or front bumper has been subjected to a strong impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the radar sensor.
- Do not modify or paint the radar sensor or grille cover.

- If the radar sensor, front grille, or front bumper needs to be removed and installed, or replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ To avoid malfunction of the front camera

Observe the following precautions. Otherwise, the front camera may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
 - If the windshield is dirty or covered with an oily film, water droplets, snow, etc., clean the windshield.
 - If a glass coating agent is applied to the windshield, it will still be necessary to use the windshield wipers to remove water droplets, etc. from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera.
 - If the inner side of the windshield where the front camera is installed is dirty, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not attach objects, such as stickers, transparent stickers, etc., to the outer side of the windshield in front of the front camera (shaded area in the illustration).



- A** From the top of the windshield to approximately 1 cm (0.4 in.) below the bottom of the front camera
- B** Approximately 20 cm (7.9 in.) (Approximately 10 cm [4.0 in.] to the right and left from the center of the front camera)
- If the part of the windshield in front of the front camera is fogged up or covered with condensation or ice, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog, condensation or ice. (→P.329)
- If water droplets cannot be properly removed from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera by the windshield wipers, replace the wiper insert or wiper blade. If the wiper inserts or wiper blades need to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not attach window tint to the windshield.
- Replace the windshield if it is damaged or cracked. If the windshield needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.

- Do not allow liquids to contact the front camera.
- Do not allow bright lights to shine into the front camera.
- Do not dirty or damage the front camera. When cleaning the inside of the windshield, do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens of the front camera. Also, do not touch the lens. If the lens is dirty or damaged, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not subject the front camera to a strong impact.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the front camera or remove it.
- Do not disassemble the front camera.
- Do not modify any components of the vehicle around the front camera (inside rear view mirror, etc.) or ceiling.
- Do not attach any accessories to the hood, front grille or front bumper that may obstruct the front camera. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- If a surfboard or other long object is to be mounted on the roof, make sure that it will not obstruct the front camera.
- Do not modify the headlights or other lights.

■ **Certification**

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore



- ▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam



- ▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

For Vehicles sold in Jordan
TRC approval number: TRC/LPD/2016/506

► For vehicles sold in Thailand

Brand Name: DENSO
MODEL:DNMWR009

เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้มีความสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานหรือข้อกำหนดทางเทคนิคของ กสทช.
เพื่อหลีกเลี่ยงอันตรายที่อาจเกิดจากคลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้า กรุณารักษาระยะห่างจากเซ็นเซอร์เรดาร์ให้มากกว่า 20 ซม. ขณะเซ็นเซอร์ทำงาน เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีความถี่การแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการกระจายเสียง กิจการโทรทัศน์ และกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติประกาศกำหนด

► For vehicles sold in Taiwan

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

■ If a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display

A system may be temporarily unavailable or there may be a malfunction in the system.

- In the following situations, perform the actions specified in the table. When the normal operating conditions are detected, the message will disappear and the system will become operational.

If the message does not disappear, contact your Lexus dealer.

Situation	Actions
When the area around a sensor is covered with dirt, moisture (fogged up, covered with condensation, ice, etc.), or other foreign matter	To clean the part of the windshield in front of the front camera, use the windshield wipers or the windshield defogger of the air conditioning system (→P.329).
When the temperature around the front camera is outside of the operational range, such as when the vehicle is in the sun or in an extremely cold environment	If the front camera is hot, such as after the vehicle had been parked in the sun, use the air conditioning system to decrease the temperature around the front camera. If a sunshade was used when the vehicle was parked, depending on its type, the sunlight reflected from the surface of the sunshade may cause the temperature of the front camera to become excessively high.
	If the front camera is cold, such as after the vehicle is parked in an extremely cold environment, use the air conditioning system to increase the temperature around the front camera.
The area in front of the front camera is obstructed, such as when the hood is open or a sticker is attached to the part of the windshield in front of the front camera.	Close the hood, remove the sticker, etc. to clear the obstruction.

- In the following situations, if the situation has changed (or the vehicle has been driven for some time) and the normal operating conditions are detected, the message will disappear and the system will become operational.

If the message does not disappear, contact your Lexus dealer.

- When the temperature around the radar sensor is outside of the operational range, such as when the vehicle is in the sun or in an extremely cold environment
- When the front camera cannot detect objects in front of the vehicle, such as when driving in the dark, snow, or fog, or when bright lights are shining into the front camera

PCS (Pre-Collision System)*

* : If equipped

The pre-collision system uses a radar sensor and front camera to detect objects (→P.223) in front of the vehicle. When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with an object is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action and the potential brake pressure is increased to help the driver avoid the collision. If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with an object is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact of the collision.

The pre-collision system can be disabled/enabled and the warning timing can be changed. (→P.225)

Detectable objects

▶ Region A

Detectable objects	Countries/areas
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vehicles • Bicyclists • Pedestrians 	Bahrain, Brunei, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, Singapore, South Africa, United Arab Emirates

▶ Region B

Detectable objects	Countries/areas
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Vehicles • Pedestrians 	Hong Kong, Macao, Taiwan

▶ Region C

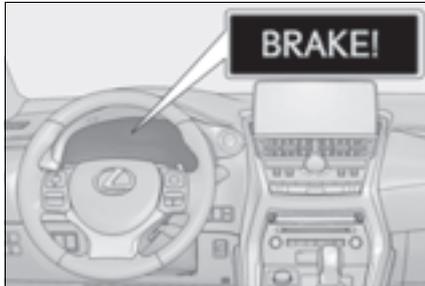
Detectable objects	Countries/areas
Vehicles	Argentina, Bolivia, Chile, Costa Rica, Dominica, Guatemala, Honduras, Indonesia, Jordan, Malaysia, Nicaragua, Lebanon, Panama, Peru, Philippines, Thailand, Viet Nam

The countries and areas for each region listed in the table are current as of May 2019. However, depending on when the vehicle was sold, the countries and areas of each region may be different. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

System functions

■ Pre-collision warning

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.



■ Pre-collision brake assist

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

■ Pre-collision braking

If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or reduce the impact of the collision.

■ Suspension control

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the AVS (→P.308) will control the damping force of the shock absorbers to help maintain an appropriate vehicle posture.

⚠ WARNING

■ Limitations of the pre-collision system

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings. Do not use the pre-collision system instead of normal braking operations under any circumstances. This system will not prevent collisions or lessen collision damage or injury in every situation. Do not overly rely on this system. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Although this system is designed to help avoid a collision or help reduce the impact of the collision, its effectiveness may change according to various conditions, therefore the system may not always be able to achieve the same level of performance.

Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.

- Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision: →P.228
- Conditions under which the system may not operate properly: →P.229

- Do not attempt to test the operation of the pre-collision system yourself. Depending on the objects used for testing (dummies, cardboard objects imitating detectable objects, etc.), the system may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident.

■ Pre-collision braking

- When the pre-collision braking function is operating, a large amount of braking force will be applied.

- If the vehicle is stopped by the operation of the pre-collision braking function, the pre-collision braking function operation will be canceled after approximately 2 seconds. Depress the brake pedal as necessary.

⚠ WARNING

- The pre-collision braking function may not operate if certain operations are performed by the driver. If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly or the steering wheel is being turned, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly prevent the pre-collision braking function from operating.
- In some situations, while the pre-collision braking function is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly or the steering wheel is turned and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.
- If the brake pedal is being depressed, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly delay the operation timing of the pre-collision braking function.

■ When to disable the pre-collision system

In the following situations, disable the system, as it may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- When the vehicle is being towed
- When your vehicle is towing another vehicle
- When transporting the vehicle via truck, boat, train or similar means of transportation
- When the vehicle is raised on a lift with the engine running and the tires are allowed to rotate freely
- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester such as a chassis dynamometer or speedometer tester, or when using an on vehicle wheel balancer

- When a strong impact is applied to the front bumper or front grille, due to an accident or other reasons
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning
- When the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner or off-road
- When the tires are not properly inflated
- When the tires are very worn
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed
- When tire chains are installed
- When a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit is used
- If equipment (snow plow, etc.) that may obstruct the radar sensor or front camera is temporarily installed to the vehicle

Changing settings of the pre-collision system**■ Enabling/disabling the pre-collision system**

The pre-collision system can be enabled/disabled on  (→P.94) of the multi-information display.

The system is automatically enabled each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

If the system is disabled, the PCS warning light will turn on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

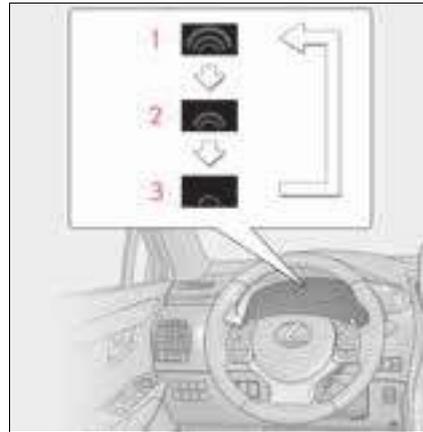


■ Changing the pre-collision warning timing

The pre-collision warning timing can be changed on  (→P.94) of the multi-information display.

The warning timing setting is retained when the engine switch is turned off. How-

ever, if the pre-collision system is disabled and re-enabled, the operation timing will return to the default setting (middle).



1 Early

2 Middle

This is the default setting.

3 Late

■ Operational conditions

The pre-collision system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a detected object is high.

Each function is operational at the following speed

● Pre-collision warning

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)
Bicyclists and pedestrians *	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)

● Pre-collision brake assist

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Vehicles	Approx. 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)	Approx. 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)
Bicyclists and pedestrians *	Approx. 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)	Approx. 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)

● Pre-collision braking

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)
Bicyclists and pedestrians *	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)

* : Applicable to vehicles designed for regions that detection of pedestrians and/or bicyclists is possible (→P.223)

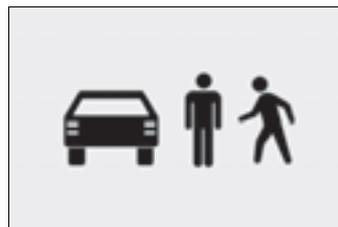
The system may not operate in the following situations:

- If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- If the shift lever is in R
- When the VSC OFF indicator is illuminated (only the pre-collision warning function will be operational)

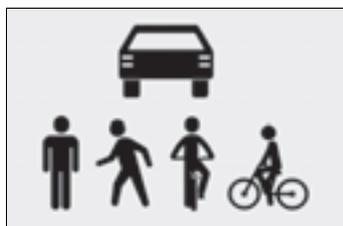
■ Object detection function

The system detects objects based on their size, profile, motion, etc. However, an object may not be detected depending on the surrounding brightness and the motion, posture, and angle of the detected object, preventing the system from operating properly. (→P.229) The illustration shows an image of detectable objects.

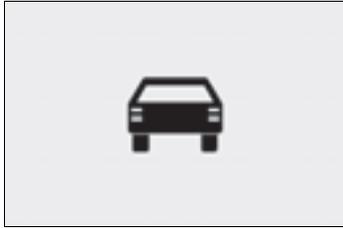
▶ Region B



▶ Region A



► Region C



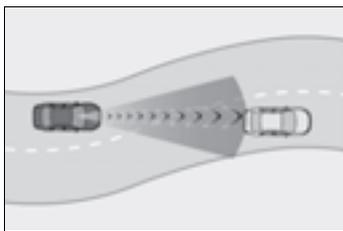
■ **Cancellation of the pre-collision braking**

If either of the following occur while the pre-collision braking function is operating, it will be canceled:

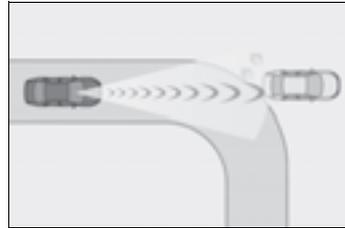
- The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.

■ **Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision**

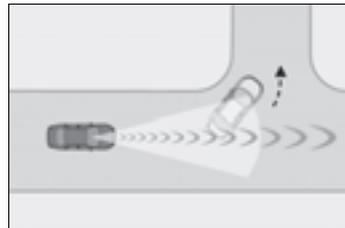
- In some situations such as the following, the system may determine that there is a possibility of a frontal collision and operate.
 - When passing a detectable object, etc.
 - When changing lanes while overtaking a detectable object, etc.
 - When approaching a detectable object in an adjacent lane or on the roadside, such as when changing the course of travel or driving on a winding road



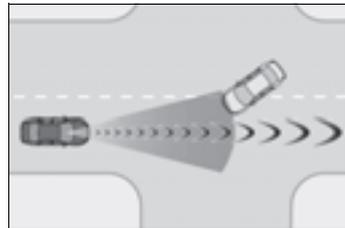
- When rapidly closing on a detectable object, etc.
- When approaching objects on the roadside, such as detectable objects, guardrails, utility poles, trees, or walls
- When there is a detectable object or other object by the roadside at the entrance of a curve



- When there are patterns or paint in front of your vehicle that may be mistaken for a detectable object
- When the front of your vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc.
- When overtaking a detectable object that is changing lanes or making a right/left turn

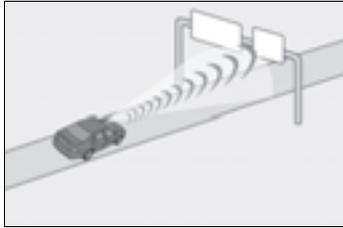


- When passing a detectable object in an oncoming lane that is stopped to make a right/left turn

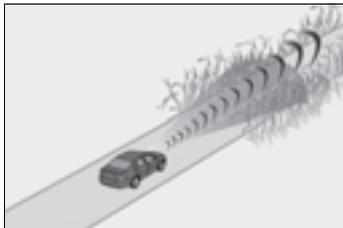


- When a detectable object approaches very close and then stops before entering the path of your vehicle
- If the front of your vehicle is raised or lowered, such as when on an uneven or undulating road surface
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on an iron bridge
- When there is a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.), steps, or a protrusion in front of your vehicle
- When passing under an object (road

sign, billboard, etc.)



- When approaching an electric toll gate barrier, parking area barrier, or other barrier that opens and closes
- When using an automatic car wash
- When driving through or under objects that may contact your vehicle, such as thick grass, tree branches, or a banner

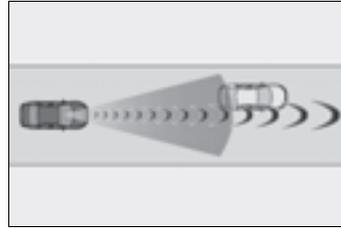


- When driving through steam or smoke
- When driving near an object that reflects radio waves, such as a large truck or guardrail
- When driving near a TV tower, broadcasting station, electric power plant, or other location where strong radio waves or electrical noise may be present

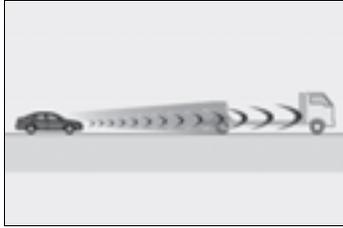
■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

- In some situations such as the following, an object may not be detected by the radar sensor and front camera, preventing the system from operating properly:
 - When a detectable object is approaching your vehicle
 - When your vehicle or a detectable object is wobbling
 - If a detectable object makes an abrupt maneuver (such as sudden swerving, acceleration or deceleration)
 - When your vehicle approaches a detectable object rapidly
 - When a detectable object is not directly

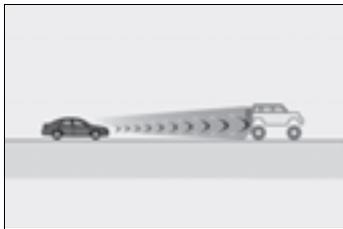
in front of your vehicle



- When a detectable object is near a wall, fence, guardrail, manhole cover, vehicle, steel plate on the road, etc.
- When a detectable object is under a structure
- When part of a detectable object is hidden by an object, such as large baggage, an umbrella, or guardrail
- When multiple detectable objects are close together
- If the sun or other light is shining directly on a detectable object
- When a detectable object is a shade of white and looks extremely bright
- When a detectable object appears to be nearly the same color or brightness as its surroundings
- If a detectable object cuts or suddenly emerges in front of your vehicle
- When the front of your vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc.
- When a very bright light ahead, such as the sun or the headlights of oncoming traffic, shines directly into the front camera
- When approaching the side or front of a vehicle ahead
- If a vehicle ahead is a bicycle^{*1} or motorcycle
- If a vehicle ahead is narrow, such as a personal mobility vehicle
- If a preceding vehicle has a small rear end, such as an unloaded truck
- If a preceding vehicle has a low rear end, such as a low bed trailer

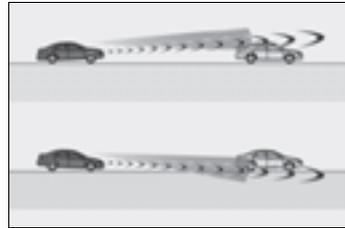


- If a vehicle ahead has extremely high ground clearance



- If a vehicle ahead is carrying a load which protrudes past its rear bumper
- If a vehicle ahead is irregularly shaped, such as a tractor or side car
- If a vehicle ahead is a child sized bicycle, a bicycle that is carrying a large load, a bicycle ridden by more than one person, or a uniquely shaped bicycle (bicycle with a child seat, tandem bicycle, etc.)^{*2}
- If a pedestrian/or the riding height of a bicyclist ahead is shorter than approximately 1 m (3.2 ft.) or taller than approximately 2 m (6.5 ft.)^{*2}
- If a pedestrian/bicyclist is wearing oversized clothing (a rain coat, long skirt, etc.), making their silhouette obscure^{*2}
- If a pedestrian is bending forward or squatting or bicyclist is bending forward^{*2}
- If a pedestrian/bicyclist is moving fast^{*2}
- If a pedestrian is pushing a stroller, wheelchair, bicycle or other vehicle^{*2}
- When driving in inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or a sandstorm
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When the surrounding area is dim, such as at dawn or dusk, or while at night or in a tunnel, making a detectable object appear to be nearly the same color as its surroundings

- When driving in a place where the surrounding brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrance or exit of a tunnel
- After the engine has started the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- While making a left/right turn and for a few seconds after making a left/right turn
- While driving on a curve and for a few seconds after driving on a curve
- If your vehicle is skidding
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered



- If the wheels are misaligned
- If a wiper blade is blocking the front camera
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds
- When driving on a hill
- If the radar sensor or front camera is misaligned
- In some situations such as the following, sufficient braking force may not be obtained, preventing the system from performing properly:
 - If the braking functions cannot operate to their full extent, such as when the brake parts are extremely cold, extremely hot, or wet
 - If the vehicle is not properly maintained (brakes or tires are excessively worn, improper tire inflation pressure, etc.)
 - When the vehicle is being driven on a gravel road or other slippery surface

^{*1}: Applicable to vehicles designed for countries/areas that detection of bicyclists is not possible (→P.223)

^{*2}: Applicable to vehicles designed for countries/areas that detection of pedestrians and/or bicyclists is possible (→P.223)

■ **If VSC is disabled**

- If VSC is disabled (→P.309), the pre-collision brake assist and pre-collision braking functions are also disabled.
- The PCS warning light will turn on and “VSC Turned Off Pre-Collision Brake System Unavailable” will be displayed on the multi-information display.

LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)*

*: If equipped

When driving on highways and freeways with white (yellow) lane lines, this function alerts the driver when the vehicle might depart from its lane or course* and provides assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its lane or course*. Furthermore, the system provides steering assistance when dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating to keep the vehicle in its lane.

The LTA system recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course* using the front camera. Additionally, it detects preceding vehicles using the front camera and radar.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



**WARNING****■ Before using LTA system**

- Do not rely solely upon the LTA system. The LTA system does not automatically drive the vehicle or reduce the amount of attention that must be paid to the area in front of the vehicle. The driver must always assume full responsibility for driving safely by paying careful attention to the surrounding conditions and operating the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle. Also, the driver must take adequate breaks when fatigued, such as from driving for a long period of time.
- Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- When not using the LTA system, use the LTA switch to turn the system off.

■ Situations unsuitable for LTA system

In the following situations, use the LTA switch to turn the system off. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Vehicle is driven on a road surface which is slippery due to rainy weather, fallen snow, freezing, etc.
- Vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road.
- White (yellow) lines are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dust, etc.
- Vehicle is driven in a temporary lane or restricted lane due to construction work.
- Vehicle is driven in a construction zone.

- A spare tire, tire chains, etc. are equipped.
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low.
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed.
- Vehicle is driven in traffic lanes other than that highways and freeways.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing.

■ Preventing LTA system malfunctions and operations performed by mistake

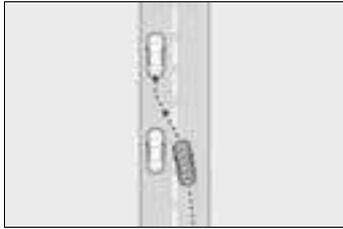
- Do not modify the headlights or place stickers, etc. on the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension etc. If the suspension etc. needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Conditions in which functions may not operate properly

In the following situations, the functions may not operate properly and the vehicle may depart from its lane. Drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings and operate the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle without relying solely on the functions.

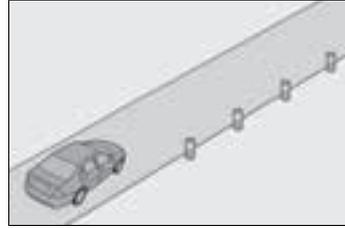
⚠ WARNING

- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.237) and the preceding vehicle changes lanes. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and also change lanes.)

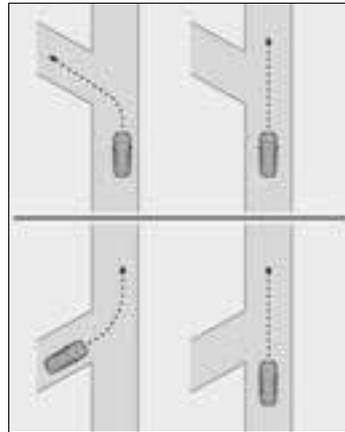


- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.237) and the preceding vehicle is swaying. (Your vehicle may sway accordingly and depart from the lane.)
- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.237) and the preceding vehicle departs from its lane. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and depart from the lane.)
- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.237) and the preceding vehicle is being driven extremely close to the left/right lane line. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and depart from the lane.)
- Vehicle is being driven around a sharp curve.

- Objects or patterns that could be mistaken for white (yellow) lines are present on the side of the road (guardrails, reflective poles, etc.).



- Vehicle is driven where the road diverges, merges, etc.



- Repair marks of asphalt, white (yellow) lines, etc. are present due to road repair.



- There are shadows on the road that run parallel with, or cover, the white (yellow) lines.

**WARNING**

- The vehicle is driven in an area without white (yellow) lines, such as in front of a tollgate or checkpoint, or at an intersection, etc.
- The white (yellow) lines are cracked, raised pavement marker or stones are present.
- The white (yellow) lines cannot be seen or are difficult to see due to sand, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a road surface that is wet due to rain, puddles, etc.
- The traffic lines are yellow (which may be more difficult to recognize than lines that are white).
- The white (yellow) lines cross over a curb, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a bright surface, such as concrete.
- If the edge of the road is not clear or straight.
- The vehicle is driven on a surface that is bright due to reflected light, etc.
- The vehicle is driven in an area where the brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of tunnels, etc.
- Light from the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc. enters the camera.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a road which tilts left or right, or a winding road.
- The vehicle is driven on an unpaved or rough road.
- The traffic lane is excessively narrow or wide.

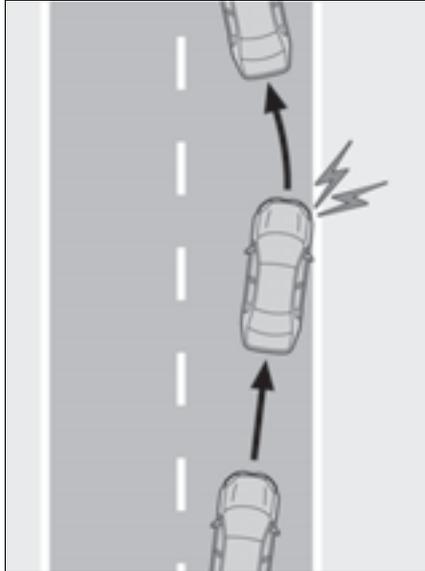
- The vehicle is extremely tilted due to carrying heavy luggage or having improper tire pressure.
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is extremely short.
- The vehicle is moving up and down a large amount due to road conditions during driving (poor roads or road seams).
- When driving in a tunnel or at night with the headlights off or when a headlight is dim due to its lens being dirty or it being misaligned.
- The vehicle is struck by a crosswind.
- The vehicle is affected by wind from a vehicle driven in a nearby lane.
- The vehicle has just changed lanes or crossed an intersection.
- Tires which differ by structure, manufacturer, brand or tread pattern are used.
- Snow tires, etc. are equipped.
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds.

Functions included in LTA system**■ Lane departure alert function**

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course^{*}, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display, and either a warning buzzer will sound or the steering wheel will vibrate to alert the driver.

When the warning buzzer sounds or the steering wheel vibrates, check the area around your vehicle and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center of the lane.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

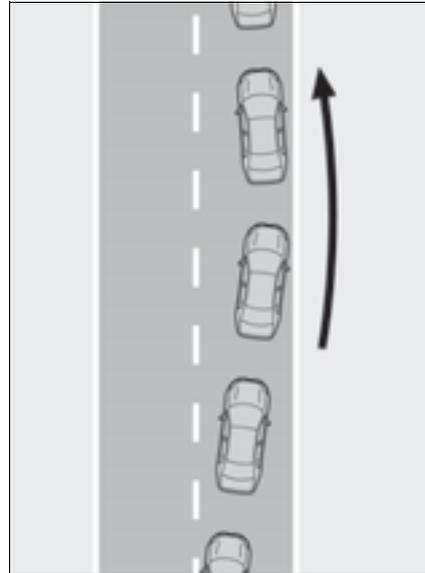


■ Steering assist function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course*, the system provides assistance as necessary by operating the steering wheel in small amounts for a short period of time to keep the vehicle in its lane.

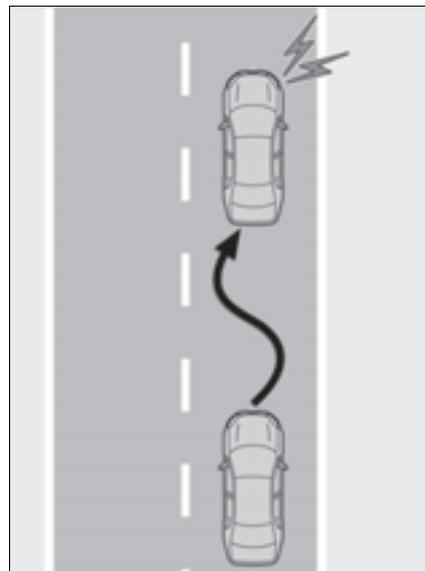
If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



■ Vehicle sway warning function

When the vehicle is swaying within a lane, the warning buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display to alert the driver.

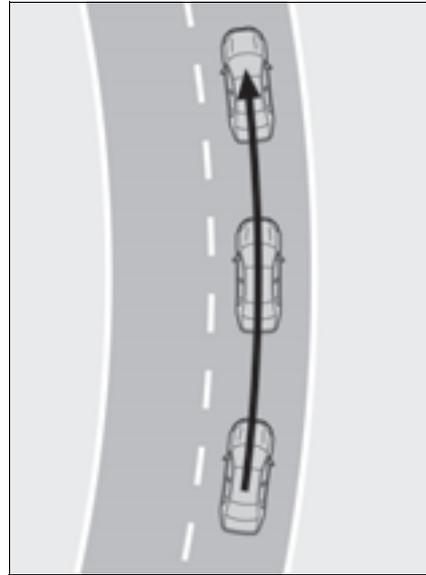


■ Lane centering function

This function is linked with dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range and provides the required assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its current lane. When dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is not operating, the lane centering function does not operate.

In situations where the white (yellow) lane lines are difficult to see or are not visible, such as when in a traffic jam, this function will operate to help follow a preceding vehicle by monitoring the position of the preceding vehicle.

If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.

**Turning LTA system on**

Press the LTA switch to turn the LTA system on.

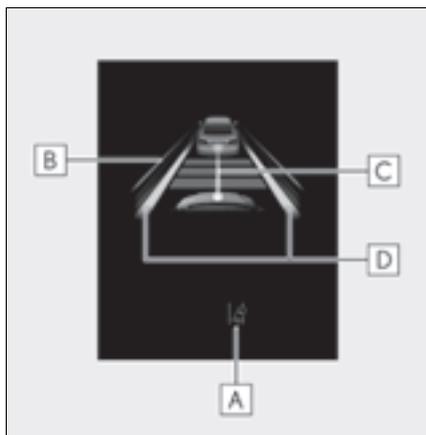
The LTA indicator illuminates and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the LTA switch again to turn the LTA system off.

When the LTA system is turned on or off, operation of the LTA system continues in the same condition the next time the engine is started.



Indications on multi-information display



A LTA indicator

The illumination condition of the indicator informs the driver of the system operation status.

Illuminated in white:

LTA system is operating.

Illuminated in green:

Steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating.

Flashing in orange:

Lane departure alert function is operating.

B Operation display of steering

wheel operation support

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

Indicates that steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating.

Both outer sides of the lane are displayed:

Indicates that steering wheel assist of the lane centering function is operating.

One outer side of the lane is displayed:

Indicates that steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating.

Both outer sides of the lane are flashing:

Alerts the driver that their input is necessary to stay in the center of the lane (lane centering function).

C Follow-up cruising display

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

Indicates that steering assist of the lane centering function is operating by monitoring the position of a preceding vehicle.

When the follow-up cruising display is displayed, if the preceding vehicle moves, your vehicle may move in the same way.

Always pay careful attention to your surroundings and operate the steering wheel as necessary to correct the path of the vehicle and ensure safety.

D Lane departure alert function display

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

► Inside of displayed lines is white



Indicates that the system is recognizing white (yellow) lines or a course*. When the vehicle departs from its lane, the white line displayed on the side the vehicle departs from flashes orange.

► Inside of displayed lines is black



Indicates that the system is not able to recognize white (yellow) lines or a course* or is temporarily canceled.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

■ Operation conditions of each function

● Lane departure alert function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LTA is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.*¹
- System recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course*². (When a white [yel-

low] line or course*² is recognized on only one side, the system will operate only for the recognized side.)

- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.240)

*¹: The function operates even if the vehicle speed is less than approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) when the lane centering function is operating.

*²: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

● Steering assist function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met in addition to the operation conditions for the lane departure alert function.

- Setting for "Steering Assist" in  of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.90)
- Vehicle is not accelerated or decelerated by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.239)

● Vehicle sway warning function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Setting for "Sway Warning" in  of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.90)
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- No system malfunctions are detected.

(→P.240)

● Lane centering function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LTA is turned on.
- Setting for “Steering Assist” and “Lane Center” in  of the multi-information display are set to “On”. (→P.90)
- This function recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or the position of a preceding vehicle (except when the preceding vehicle is small, such as a motorcycle).
- The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 to 4 m (10 to 13 ft).
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.240)
- Vehicle does not accelerate or decelerate by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.239)
- The vehicle is being driven in the center of a lane.
- Steering assist function is not operating.

■ Temporary cancelation of functions

- When operation conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function is automatically restored. (→P.238)
- If the operation conditions (→P.238) are no longer met while the lane centering function is operating, the steering wheel may vibrate and the buzzer may sound to indicate that the function has been temporarily canceled. However, if the “Alert”

customization setting is set to .

the system will notify the driver by vibrating the steering wheel instead of sounding the buzzer.

■ Steering assist function/lane centering function

- Depending on the vehicle speed, lane departure situation, road conditions, etc., the driver may not feel the function is operating or the function may not operate at all.
- The steering control of the function is overridden by the driver’s steering wheel operation.
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the steering assist function.

■ Lane departure alert function

- The warning buzzer may be difficult to hear due to external noise, audio playback, etc. Also, it may be difficult to feel steering wheel vibrations due to the road conditions, etc.
- If the edge of the course* is not clear or straight, the lane departure alert function may not operate.

- Do not attempt to test the operation of the lane departure alert function.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

■ Hands off steering wheel warning

In the following situations, a warning message urging the driver to hold the steering wheel and the symbol shown in the illustration are displayed on the multi-information display to warn the driver. The warning stops when the system determines that the driver holds the steering wheel. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel when using this system, regardless of warnings.



- When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the system is operating
If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, the buzzer sounds, the driver is warned and the function is temporarily canceled. This warning also operates in the same way when the driver continuously operates the steering wheel only a small amount.

The buzzer also sounds even if the alert type is set to .

- When the system determines that the vehicle may not turn and instead depart from its lane while driving around a curve

Depending on the vehicle condition and road conditions, the warning may not operate. Also, if the system determines that the vehicle is driving around a curve, warnings will occur earlier than during straight-lane driving.

- When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating.

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel and the steering wheel assist is operating, the buzzer sounds and the driver is warned. Each time the buzzer sounds, the continuing time of the buzzer becomes longer.

The buzzer also sounds even if the alert type is set to .

■ **Vehicle sway warning function**

When the system determines that the vehicle is swaying while the vehicle sway warning function is operating, a buzzer sounds and a warning message urging the driver to rest and the symbol shown in the illustration are simultaneously displayed on the multi-information display.



Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

■ **Warning message**

If the following warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the LTA indicator illuminates in orange, follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedure. Also, if a different warning message is displayed, follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

- “LTA Malfunction Visit Your Dealer”
The system may not be operating properly. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- “LTA Unavailable”
The system is temporarily canceled due to a malfunction in a sensor other than the front camera. Turn the LTA system off, wait for a little while, and then turn the LTA system back on.

- “LTA Unavailable at Current Speed”
The function cannot be used as the vehicle speed exceeds the LTA operation range. Drive slower.

■ **Customization**

Function settings can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.482)

LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)*

*: If equipped

When driving on highways and freeways with white (yellow) lane lines, this function alerts the driver when the vehicle might depart from its lane or course* and provides assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its lane or course*.

The LDA system recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course* using the front camera. Additionally, it detects preceding vehicles using the front camera and radar.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



⚠ WARNING

■ Before using LDA system

- Do not rely solely upon the LDA system. The LDA system does not automatically drive the vehicle or reduce the amount of attention that must be paid to the area in front of the vehicle. The driver must always assume full responsibility for driving safely by paying careful attention to the surrounding conditions and operating the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle. Also, the driver must take adequate breaks when fatigued, such as from driving for a long period of time.

- Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- When not using the LDA system, use the LDA switch to turn the system off.

■ Situations unsuitable for LDA system

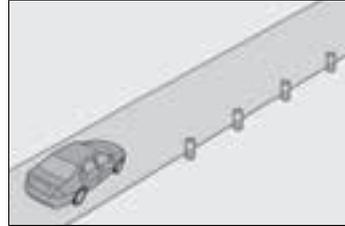
In the following situations, use the LDA switch to turn the system off. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Vehicle is driven on a road surface which is slippery due to rainy weather, fallen snow, freezing, etc.
- Vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road.
- White (yellow) lines are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dust, etc.
- A spare tire, tire chains, etc. are equipped.
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low.
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed.

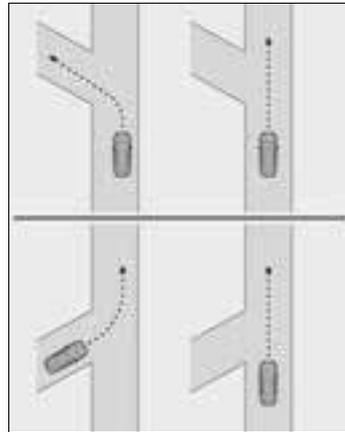
⚠ WARNING

- Vehicle is driven in traffic lanes other than that highways and freeways.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing.
- **Preventing LDA system malfunctions and operations performed by mistake**
- Do not modify the headlights or place stickers, etc. on the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension, etc. If the suspension, etc. needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact your Lexus dealer.
- **Conditions in which functions may not operate properly**
- In the following situations, the functions may not operate properly and the vehicle may depart from its lane. Drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings and operate the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle without relying solely on the functions.
- Vehicle is being driven around a sharp curve.

- Objects or patterns that could be mistaken for white (yellow) lines are present on the side of the road (guardrails, reflective poles, etc.).



- Vehicle is driven where the road diverges, merges, etc.



- Repair marks of asphalt, white (yellow) lines, etc. are present due to road repair.



- There are shadows on the road that run parallel with, or cover, the white (yellow) lines.

⚠ WARNING

- The vehicle is driven in an area without white (yellow) lines, such as in front of a tollgate or checkpoint, or at an intersection, etc.
- The white (yellow) lines are cracked, raised pavement marker or stones are present.
- The white (yellow) lines cannot be seen or are difficult to see due to sand, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a road surface that is wet due to rain, puddles, etc.
- The traffic lines are yellow (which may be more difficult to recognize than lines that are white).
- The white (yellow) lines cross over a curb, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a bright surface, such as concrete.
- If the edge of the road is not clear or straight.
- The vehicle is driven on a surface that is bright due to reflected light, etc.
- The vehicle is driven in an area where the brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of tunnels, etc.
- Light from the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc. enters the camera.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a road which tilts left or right, or a winding road.
- The vehicle is driven on an unpaved or rough road.
- The traffic lane is excessively narrow or wide.

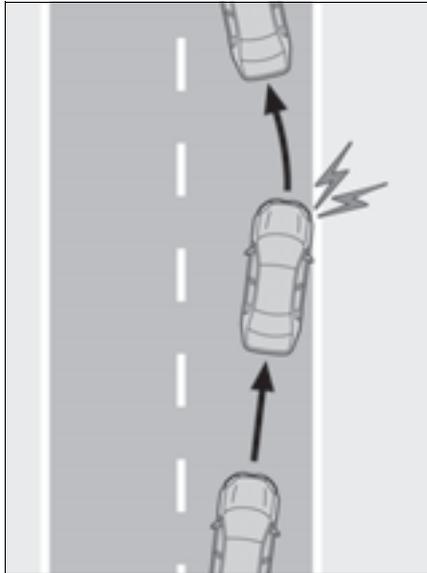
- The vehicle is extremely tilted due to carrying heavy luggage or having improper tire pressure.
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is extremely short.
- The vehicle is moving up and down a large amount due to road conditions during driving (poor roads or road seams).
- When driving in a tunnel or at night with the headlights off or when a headlight is dim due to its lens being dirty or it being misaligned.
- The vehicle is struck by a crosswind.
- The vehicle has just changed lanes or crossed an intersection.
- Tires which differ by structure, manufacturer, brand or tread pattern are used.
- Snow tires, etc. are equipped.

Functions included in LDA system**■ Lane departure alert function**

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course^{*}, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display, and either a warning buzzer will sound or the steering wheel will vibrate to alert the driver.

When the warning buzzer sounds or the steering wheel vibrates, check the area around your vehicle and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center of the lane.

^{*}: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

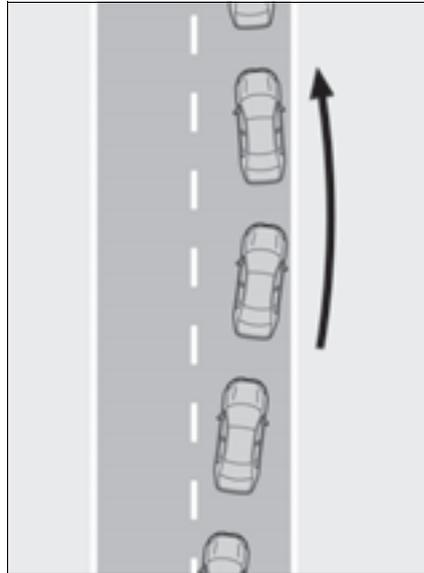


■ **Steering assist function**

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course^{*}, the system provides assistance as necessary by operating the steering wheel in small amounts for a short period of time to keep the vehicle in its lane.

If the system detects that the steering wheel has not been operated for a fixed amount of time or the steering wheel is not being firmly gripped, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display and the function is temporarily canceled.

^{*}: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



■ **Vehicle sway warning function**

When the vehicle is swaying within a lane, the warning buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display to alert the driver.



Turning LDA system on

Press the LDA switch to turn the LDA system on.

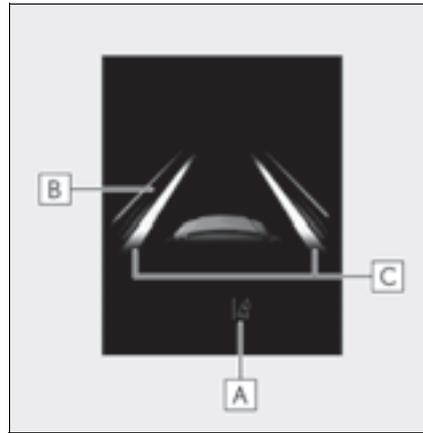
The LDA indicator illuminates and a message is displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the LDA switch again to turn the LDA system off.

When the LDA system is turned on or off, operation of the LDA system continues in the same condition the next time the engine is started.



Indications on multi-information display



A LDA indicator

The illumination condition of the indicator informs the driver of the system operation status.

Illuminated in white:

LDA system is operating.

Illuminated in green:

Steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function is operating.

Flashing in orange:

Lane departure alert function is operating.

B Operation display of steering

wheel operation support

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

Indicates that steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function is operating.

C Lane departure alert function display

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving assist system information screen.

- ▶ Inside of displayed lines is white



Indicates that the system is recognizing white (yellow) lines or a course*. When the vehicle departs from its lane, the white line displayed on the side the vehicle departs from flashes orange.

- ▶ Inside of displayed lines is black



Indicates that the system is not able to recognize white (yellow) lines or a course* or is temporarily canceled.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

■ **Operation conditions of each function**

● **Lane departure alert function**

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LDA is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- System recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course*. (When a white [yellow] line or course* is recognized on only one

side, the system will operate only for the recognized side.)

- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.248)

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

● **Steering assist function**

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met in addition to the operation conditions for the lane departure alert function.

- Setting for “Steering Assist” in  of the multi-information display is set to “On”. (→P.90)
- Vehicle is not accelerated or decelerated by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.247)

● **Vehicle sway warning function**

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Setting for “Sway Warning” in  of the multi-information display is set to “On”. (→P.90)
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.248)

■ **Temporary cancellation of functions**

When operation conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the

function is automatically restored.
(→P.246)

■ **Steering assist function**

- Depending on the vehicle speed, lane departure situation, road conditions, etc., the driver may not feel the function is operating or the function may not operate at all.
- The steering control of the function is overridden by the driver's steering wheel operation.
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the steering assist function.

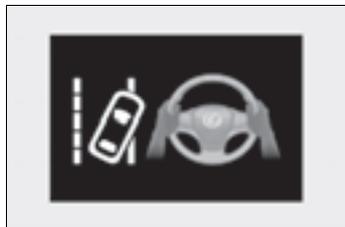
■ **Lane departure alert function**

- The warning buzzer may be difficult to hear due to external noise, audio playback, etc. Also, it may be difficult to feel steering wheel vibrations due to the road conditions, etc.
- If the edge of the course* is not clear or straight, the lane departure alert function may not operate.
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the lane departure alert function.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

■ **Hands off steering wheel warning**

In the following situations, a warning message urging the driver to hold the steering wheel and the symbol shown in the illustration are displayed on the multi-information display to warn the driver. The warning stops when the system determines that the driver holds the steering wheel. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel when using this system, regardless of warnings.



- When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steer-

ing wheel while the system is operating
If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, the buzzer sounds, the driver is warned and the function is temporarily canceled. This warning also operates in the same way when the driver continuously operates the steering wheel only a small amount.

The buzzer also sounds even if the alert type is set to .

- When the system determines that the vehicle may not turn and instead depart from its lane while driving around a curve
Depending on the vehicle condition and road conditions, the warning may not operate. Also, if the system determines that the vehicle is driving around a curve, warnings will occur earlier than during straight-lane driving.

● When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating
If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel and the steering wheel assist is operating, the buzzer sounds and the driver is warned. Each time the buzzer sounds, the continuing time of the buzzer becomes longer.

The buzzer also sounds even if the alert type is set to .

■ **Vehicle sway warning function**

When the system determines that the vehicle is swaying while the vehicle sway warning function is operating, a buzzer sounds and a warning message urging the driver to rest and the symbol shown in the illustration are simultaneously displayed on the multi-information display.



Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

■ Warning message

If the following warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the LDA indicator illuminates in orange, follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedure. Also, if a different warning message is displayed, follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

- “Lane Departure Alert Malfunction Visit Your Dealer”

The system may not be operating properly. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- “Lane Departure Alert Unavailable”

The system is temporarily canceled due to a malfunction in a sensor other than the front camera. Turn the LDA system off, wait for a little while, and then turn the LDA system back on.

- “Lane Departure Alert Unavailable at Current Speed”

The function cannot be used as the vehicle speed exceeds the LDA operation range. Drive slower.

- “Lane Departure Alert Unavailable Below Approx 50km/h”

The LDA system cannot be used as the vehicle speed is less than approximately 50 km/h (32 mph). Drive the vehicle at approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.

■ Customization

Function settings can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.482)

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*

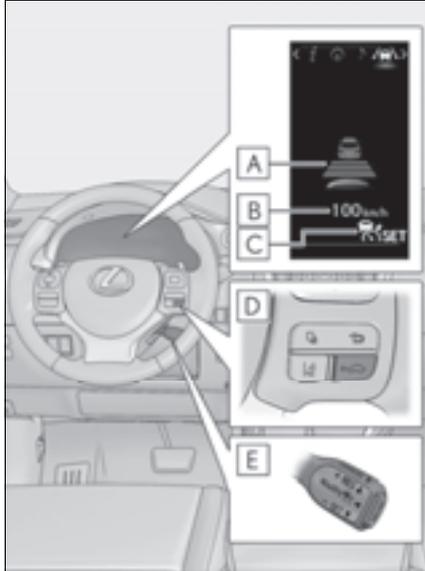
*: If equipped

In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates, decelerates and stops to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.251)
- Constant speed control mode (→P.255)

System Components



- A** Multi-information display
- B** Set speed
- C** Indicators
- D** Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch
- E** Cruise control switch

 **WARNING**
Before using dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

- Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.

- The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided.

Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.

- When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead: →P.257
- Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly: →P.258
- Set the speed appropriately depending on the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for checking the set speed.
- Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying solely on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Switch the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range setting to off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

**WARNING****■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems**

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system.

Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- **Assisting the driver to measure following distance**

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

- **Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance**

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.

- **Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle**

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range does not include functions which will prevent or avoid collisions with vehicles ahead of your vehicle. Therefore, if there is ever any possibility of danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

- **Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in any of the following situations.

Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow

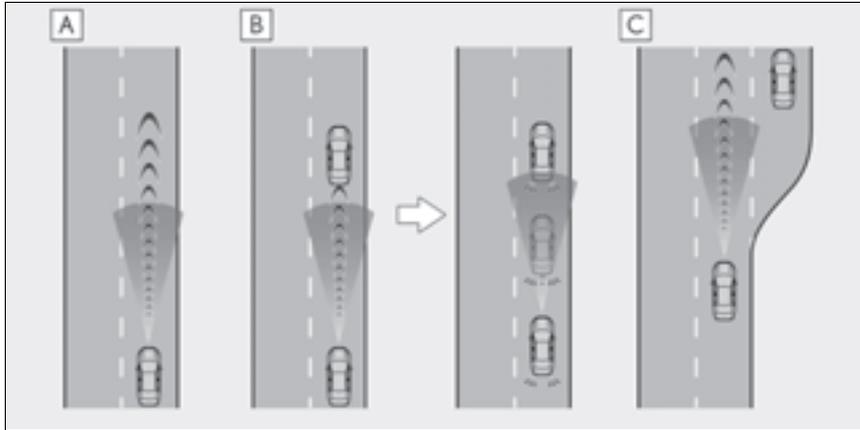
 **WARNING**

- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar or front camera
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 100 m (328 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

When driving on downhill slopes, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance may become shorter.



A Example of constant speed cruising

When there are no vehicles ahead
The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver.

B Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising

When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears
When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead. When the vehicle ahead of you stops, your vehicle will also stop (vehicle is stopped by system control). After the vehicle ahead starts off, pushing the cruise control lever up or depressing the accelerator pedal (start-off operation) will resume follow-up cruising. If the start-off operation is not performed, system control continues to keep your vehicle stopped.

When the turn signal lever is operated and your vehicle moves to a left lane (left-hand drive vehicles) or right lane (right-hand drive vehicles) while driving at 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the vehicle will quickly accelerate to help to overtake a passing vehicle.

C Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed
The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

- 1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

If the "ON/OFF" button is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P.255)

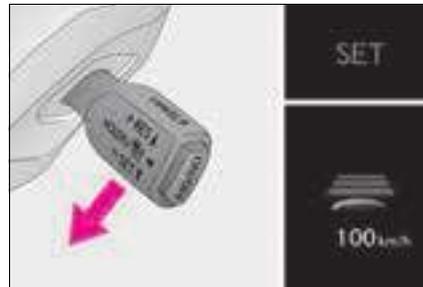


- 2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

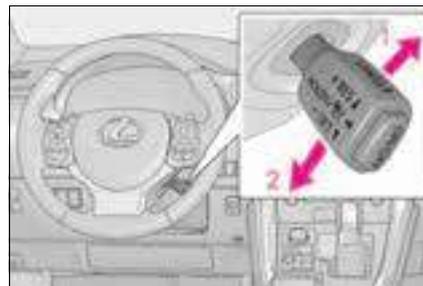
The vehicle speed at the moment the lever

is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



- 1 Increases the speed
(Except when the vehicle has been stopped by system control in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)
- 2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever up or down to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)^{*1} or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)^{*2} each time the lever is

operated

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)^{*1} or 5 mph (8 km/h)^{*2} increments for as long as the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P.255), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)^{*1} or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)^{*2} each time the lever is operated

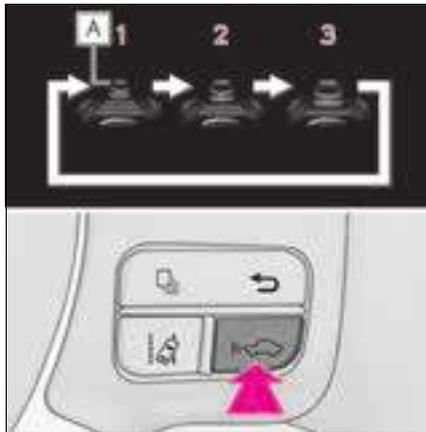
Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the lever is held.

^{*1}: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

^{*2}: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:



- 1 Long
- 2 Medium
- 3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set auto-

matically to long mode when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark **A** will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed. When the vehicle is stopped by system control, the vehicle stops at a certain vehicle-to-vehicle distance depending on the situation.

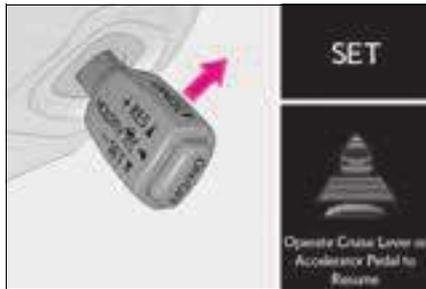
Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

Resuming follow-up cruising when the vehicle has been stopped by system control (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

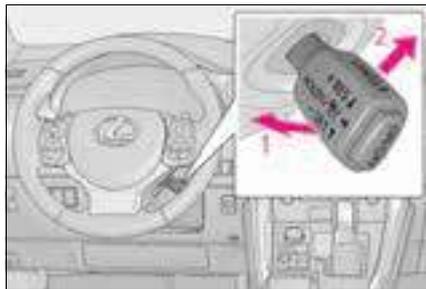
After the vehicle ahead of you starts off, push the lever up.

Your vehicle will also resume follow-up

cruising if the accelerator pedal is depressed after the vehicle ahead of you starts off.



Canceling and resuming the speed control



- 1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the speed control.

The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

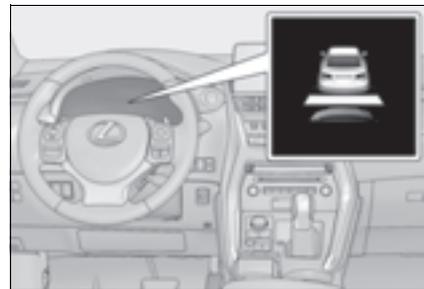
(When the vehicle has been stopped by system control, depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the setting.)

- 2 Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a

vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

Selecting constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehi-

cle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar, etc.

- 1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the "ON/OFF" button for 1.5 seconds or more.

Immediately after the "ON/OFF" button is pressed, the dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the lever with the cruise control off.



- 2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P.253

Canceling and resuming the speed setting:

→P.255



■ **Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range can be set when**

- The shift lever is in D.
- The desired set speed can be set when the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more. (However, when the vehicle speed is set while driving at below approximately 30 km/h [20 mph], the set speed will be set to approximately 30 km/h [20 mph].)

■ **Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed**

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

■ **When the vehicle stops while follow-up cruising**

- Pushing the lever up while the vehicle ahead stops will resume follow-up cruising if the vehicle ahead starts off within approximately 3 seconds after the lever is pushed up.
- If the vehicle ahead starts off within 3 seconds after your vehicle stops, follow-up cruising will be resumed.

■ **Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode**

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.
- The parking brake is operated.
- The vehicle is stopped by system control on a steep incline.
- The following are detected when the vehicle has been stopped by system control:
 - The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
 - The driver's door is opened.
 - The vehicle has been stopped for about 3 minutes

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Brake operation

A brake operation sound may be heard and the brake pedal response may change, but these are not malfunctions.

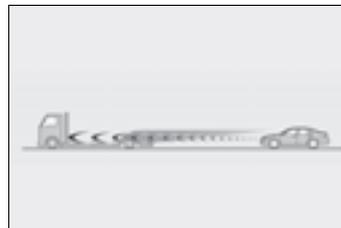
■ Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions. (→P.221, 433)

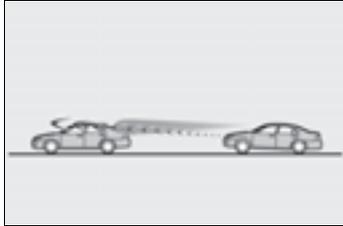
■ When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required. As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.255) may not be activated.

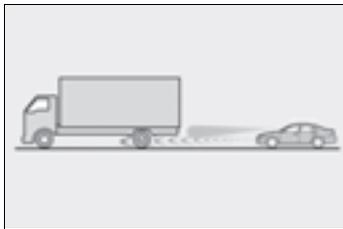
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)



- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)



- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance



■ **Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly**

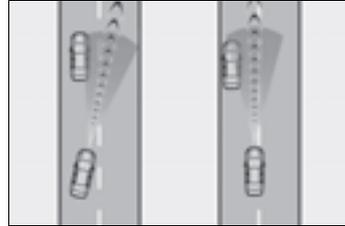
In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on a bridge
- While the vehicle speed is decreasing to the set speed after the vehicle accelerates by depressing the accelerator pedal

Dynamic radar cruise control*

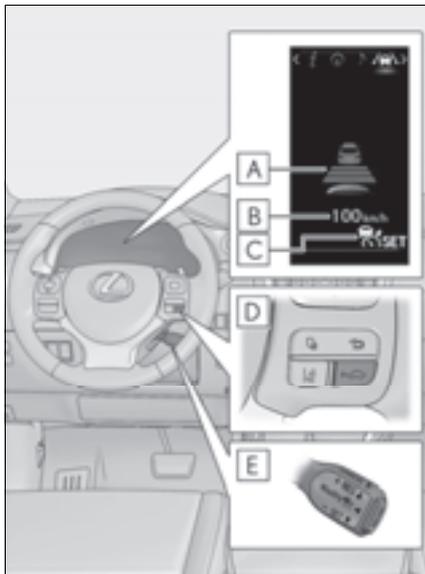
*: If equipped

In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates and decelerates to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.261)
- Constant speed control mode (→P.265)

System Components



- A** Multi-information display
- B** Set speed
- C** Indicators
- D** Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch
- E** Cruise control switch

⚠ WARNING

■ Before using dynamic radar cruise control

- Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.
- The dynamic radar cruise control provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided.

Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.

- When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead: →P.266
- Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly: →P.266
- Set the speed appropriately depending on the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for checking the set speed.
- Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying solely on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

**WARNING**

- Switch the dynamic radar cruise control setting to off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

■ **Cautions regarding the driving assist systems**

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system.

Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- **Assisting the driver to measure following distance**

The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

- **Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance**

The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.

- **Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle**

The dynamic radar cruise control does not include functions which will prevent or avoid collisions with vehicles ahead of your vehicle. Therefore, if there is ever any possibility of danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ **Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control**

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.

Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhill, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar or front camera
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration

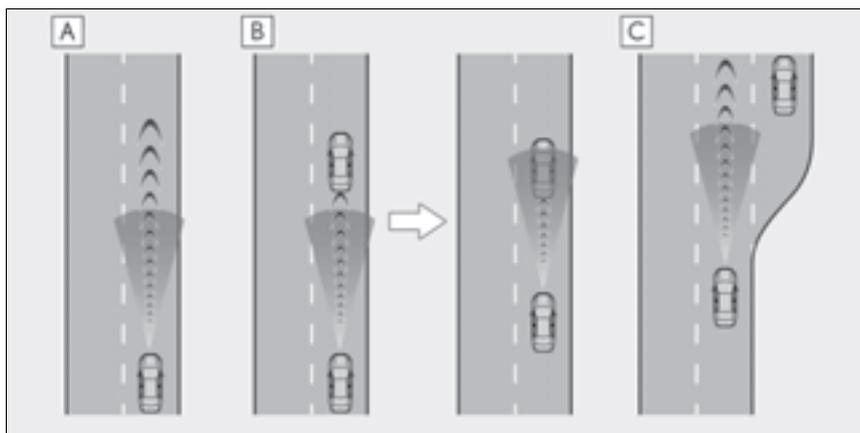
⚠ WARNING

- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 100 m (328 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

When driving on downhill slopes, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance may become shorter.

**A** Example of constant speed cruising

When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver.

B Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising

When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

When the turn signal lever is operated and your vehicle moves to a left lane (left-hand drive vehicles) or right lane (right-hand drive vehicles) while driving at 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the vehicle will quickly accelerate to help to overtake a passing vehicle.

C Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

- 1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.

If the "ON/OFF" button is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P.265)

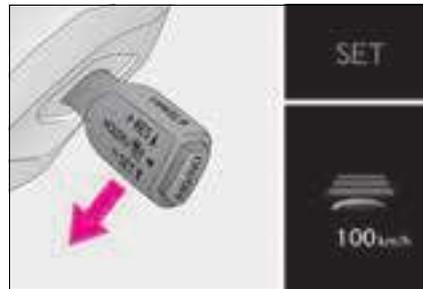


- 2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come

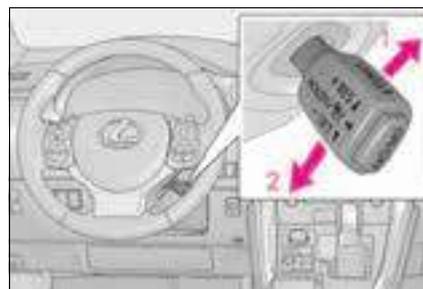
on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is displayed.



- 1 Increases the speed
- 2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever up or down to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)^{*1} or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)^{*2} each time the lever is operated

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)^{*1} or 5 mph (8 km/h)^{*2} increments for as long as the lever is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P.265), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)^{*1} or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)^{*2} each time the lever is operated

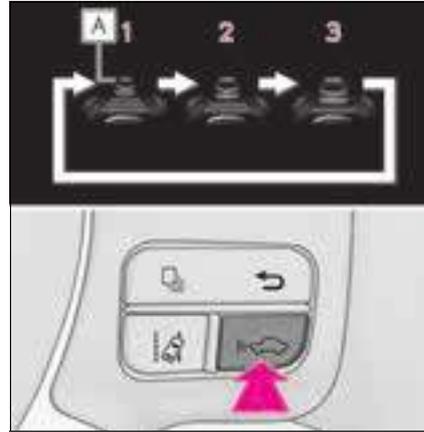
Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the lever is held.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:



- 1 Long
- 2 Medium
- 3 Short

The vehicle-to-vehicle distance is set automatically to long mode when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark **A** will also be displayed.

4

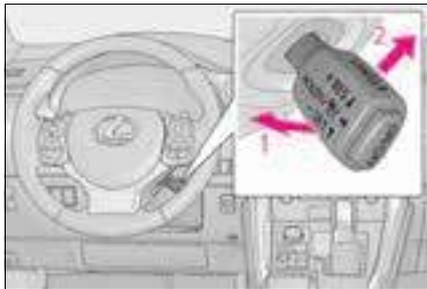
Driving

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

Canceling and resuming the speed control

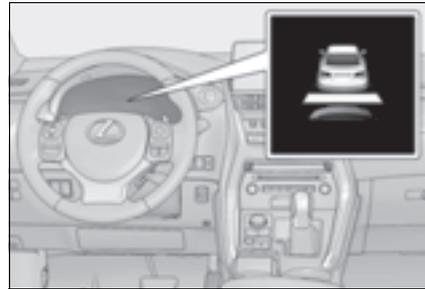


- 1** Pulling the lever toward you cancels the speed control.
The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.
- 2** Pushing the lever up resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

However, cruise control does not resume when the vehicle speed is approximately 25 km/h (16 mph) or less.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.



Warnings may not occur when

In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator

pedal

Selecting constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar, etc.

- 1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the "ON/OFF" button for 1.5 seconds or more.

Immediately after the "ON/OFF" button is pressed, the dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the lever with the cruise control off.



- 2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the lever is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P.262

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P.264



Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- Depending on the control mode, this item can be set at the following speeds.
 - Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode: Approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more
 - Constant speed control mode: Approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more

Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 km/h (16 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.

- Pre-collision braking is activated.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode**

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- Pre-collision braking is activated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Brake operation**

A brake operation sound may be heard and the brake pedal response may change, but these are not malfunctions.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control**

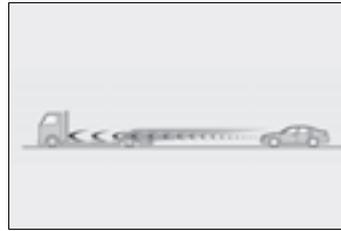
Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions. (→P.221, 433)

■ **When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead**

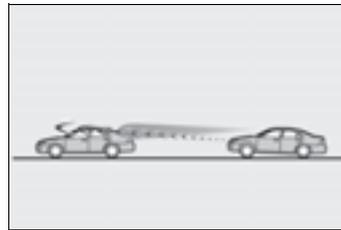
In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.264) may not be activated.

- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)



- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)



- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance



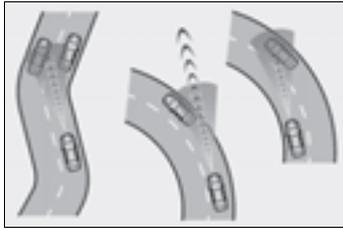
■ **Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly**

In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as nec-

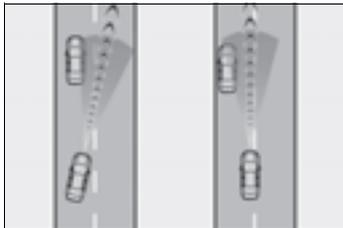
essary.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



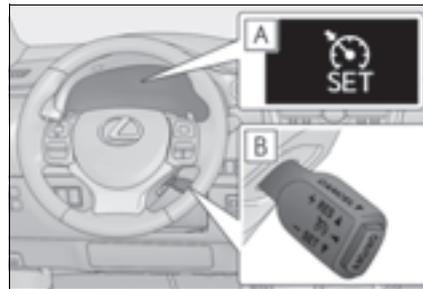
- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on a bridge
- While the vehicle speed is decreasing to the set speed after the vehicle accelerates by depressing the accelerator pedal

Cruise control*

*: If equipped

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal. Use the button to activate/deactivate the system and the lever to set the speed. Use the cruise control on freeways and highways.

System Components



A Indicators

B Cruise control switch

⚠ WARNING

■ To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake

Switch the cruise control off using the "ON/OFF" button when not in use.

■ Situations unsuitable for cruise control

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclers, etc.

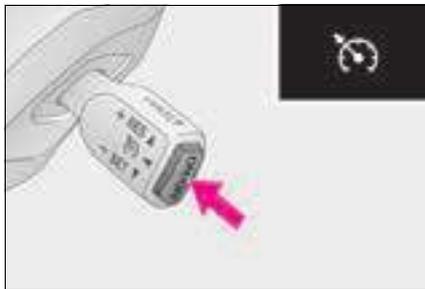
⚠ WARNING

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On sharp inclines or declines
Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- When your vehicle is towing a trailer or during emergency towing

Setting the vehicle speed

- 1 Press the "ON/OFF" button to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on. Press the button again to deactivate the cruise control.



- 2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (above approximately 40 km/h [25 mph]) and push the lever down to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.
The vehicle speed at the moment the lever

is released becomes the set speed.



■ Cruise control can be set when

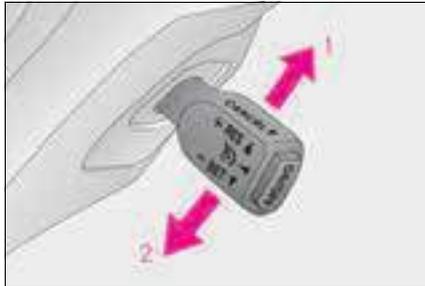
- The shift lever is in D.
- NX 300: Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift switch.
- Vehicle speed is above approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ If "Cruise Control Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display

Press the "ON/OFF" button once to deactivate the system, and then press the button again to reactivate the system. If the cruise control speed cannot be set or if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, operate the lever until the desired set speed is obtained.



- 1 Increases the speed
- 2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Momentarily move the lever in the desired direction.

Large adjustment: Hold the lever in the desired direction.

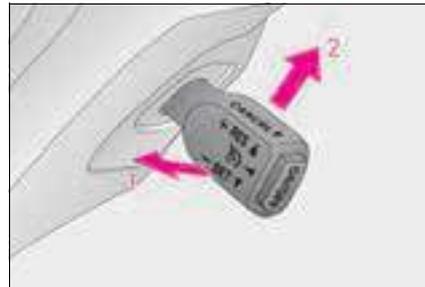
The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By approximately 1.6 km/h (1 mph) each time the lever is operated
 Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the lever is released.

■ Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

- The vehicle can be accelerated by operating accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pushing the lever down to set the new speed.

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



- 1 Pulling the lever toward you cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

- 2 Pushing the lever up resumes the constant speed control.

However, resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 40 km/h (25 mph).

■ Automatic cancelation of cruise control

Cruise control is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set speed.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 40km/h (25 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off by pressing the VSC off switch.

Stop & Start system *

* : If equipped

The Stop & Start system stops and restarts the engine according to the brake pedal operations.

■ Operating conditions

- The Stop & Start system is operational when all of the following conditions are met:
 - The engine is adequately warmed up.
 - The battery is sufficiently charged.
 - The driver's door is closed.
 - The driver's seat belt is fastened.
 - The hood is closed.
 - The accelerator pedal is not being depressed.
 - The shift lever is in D or M.
 - When the outside temperature is -5°C (23°F) or higher
 - When the steering wheel is not being operated
 - When the brake pedal is being depressed firmly
 - The brake pedal is being depressed firmly. (Except when the vehicle comes to a controlled stop while driving with the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode [if equipped])
 -  is off.
- In the following circumstances the engine may not be stopped by the Stop & Start system. This is not a malfunction of the Stop & Start system.
 - Engine coolant temperature or transmission fluid temperature is too low or too high.
 - The air conditioning system is being used when the vehicle interior temperature is extremely high, such as after the vehicle was parked under the hot sun.
 - The battery is undergoing a periodic recharge.
 - The battery is not sufficiently charged, such as if the vehicle has been parked for

a long time and the battery charge has decreased, the electric load is large, the battery fluid temperature is excessively low or the battery has deteriorated.

- Due to traffic or other circumstances the vehicle is stopped repeatedly, resulting in the amount of time the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system to become excessively high.
- The brake pedal is not depressed firmly.
- The vehicle is stopped on a steep hill.
- The brake booster vacuum is low.
- At high altitude.
- When the outside temperature is low
- When the steering wheel is being operated
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The driver's door is opened.
- The hood is opened.
- The battery fluid temperature is extremely low or high.
- For a while after the battery terminals have been disconnected and reconnected.
- For a while after the battery replacement.
- In the following situations, the engine may start even without the brake pedal being released.
 - The brake pedal is pumped or strongly depressed.
 - The air conditioning system is being used or turned on.
 - The battery is not sufficiently charged.
 -  is on.
 - The vehicle starts to roll on an incline.
 - The accelerator pedal is depressed.
 - The driver's door is opened.
 - The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
 - When the steering wheel is being operated.
 - The shift lever is shifted to a position other than D or M.
 - The Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed.

■ Automatic reactivation of the Stop & Start system

Even if the Stop & Start system is disabled by the Stop & Start cancel switch, it will be automatically re-enabled once the engine switch is turned off, and then the engine is started.

■ The Stop & Start system protection feature

- When an excessively loud sound is being projected by the audio system, the audio system may be automatically cut off in order to maintain power for the Stop & Start system function. If it occurs, turn the engine switch off, wait for 3 seconds or longer and then turn it to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode to re-enable the audio system.
- The audio system may not be activated when the battery terminals are disconnected and then reconnected. If it occurs, turn the engine switch off and then repeat the following operation twice to activate the audio system normally.
 - Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and then to OFF.

■ Hood

- If the hood is opened while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine cannot be restarted by the Stop & Start system or by the automatic engine start function. Restart the engine with the engine switch operation. (→P.174)
- Even if the hood is closed after the engine is started with the hood open, the Stop & Start system will not operate. Close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait 30 seconds or more, and then start the engine.

■ Hill-start assist control

- On a steep uphill grade, the vehicle may roll backward after hill-start assist control is released. In this situation, apply the parking brake and operate the brake pedal when putting the vehicle in motion.
- This system operates on flat surfaces as well as steep grades.
- Sound may be generated from the brakes, but this is not a malfunction.
- When the engine is stopped due to Stop & Start system operation, the force required to depress the brake pedal may change, but this is not a malfunction.

■ When to use the Stop & Start system

- Use the Stop & Start system when stopping the vehicle temporarily at red lights, intersections, etc. When stopping the vehicle for a longer period of time, turn off the engine completely.
- If the engine switch is pressed when the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will stall and will not be able to be restarted by the automatic engine start function. In this case, restart the engine using the normal engine starting procedure. (→P.174)
- When the engine is restarted by the Stop & Start system, the power outlets may be temporarily unusable, but this is not a malfunction.
- Installation and removal of electrical components and wireless devices may affect the Stop & Start system. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

■ Stop & Start system warning buzzer/warning messages

If the Stop & Start system is disabled, canceled, or it has any abnormality; a warning message or buzzer will call a driver's attention.

■ If the windshield is fogged up while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system

Turn  on.

If the windshield fogs up frequently, press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the system.

■ Air conditioning system while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system

While the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the air conditioning system (cooling, heating and dehumidifying functions) is canceled and will only blow air or will stop blowing air. In order to prevent the air conditioning system from being canceled, disable the Stop & Start system by pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch.

■ **When a smell is emitted from the air conditioning ventilation opening while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system**

Press the Stop & Start cancel switch and suspend the Stop & Start System operation.

■ **Displaying the Stop & Start system status**

→P.93

■ **Replacing the battery**

→P.463

■ **Multi-information display messages**

If the following situations,  and a message may be displayed on the multi-information display.

- When the engine cannot be stopped by the Stop & Start system

Message	Details
“Depress Brake Firmly to Activate”	The brake pedal is not depressed enough. If the brake pedal is depressed further, the system will operate.
“For Climate Control”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The air conditioning system is being used when the ambient temperature is high or low. If the difference between the set temperature and cabin temperature is small, the system will be enabled. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> •  is ON.

Message	Details
“Battery Charging”	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The battery charge amount may be low. Engine stop is temporarily prohibited to prioritize charging of the battery, but if the engine is operated for a short while, engine stop is allowed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A refresh charge may be occurring, such as when the battery is undergoing a periodic recharge, for a while after the battery terminals have been disconnected and reconnected, for a while after the battery has been replaced, etc. After a refresh charge of approximately 5 to 60 minutes completes, the system can be operated.
	If continuously displayed after long time has passed (more than 60 minutes), the battery may have deteriorated. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Message	Details
"For Brake System"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The vehicle is being driven in a high altitude area. The brake booster vacuum is low. <p>When the brake booster vacuum reaches a predetermined level, the system will be enabled.</p>
"Driver Seat Belt Unbuckled"	The driver seat belt is not fastened.
"Stop & Start Unavailable"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The Stop & Start system is temporarily disabled. <p>Operate the engine for a short while.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The engine may have been started with the hood open. <p>Close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait for 30 seconds or more, and then start the engine.</p>
"Non-Dedicated Battery"	<p>A non-dedicated battery for the Stop & Start system may have been installed.</p> <p>The Stop & Start system does not operate. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.</p>

- When the engine automatically restarts while stopped by the Stop & Start system

Message	Details
"For Climate Control"	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The air conditioning system has been turned on or is being used.  has been turned on.
"For Brake System"	<p>The brake pedal has been depressed further or pumped.</p> <p>The system will be enabled after the engine runs and the brake booster vacuum reaches a predetermined level.</p>
"Battery Charging"	<p>The battery charge may have become low.</p> <p>The engine is restarted to prioritize battery charging.</p> <p>Operating the engine for a short while allows the system to recover.</p>
"Steering Wheel Turned"	The steering wheel was operated.
"Driver Seat Belt Unbuckled"	The driver seat belt has been unfastened.

- If "Stop & Start System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- If the Stop & Start cancel indicator continues to flash

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Idling stop time adjustment when the air conditioner is ON

Engine stop time can be adjusted through Stop & Start system when the A/C is ON from each screen of the  (Stop & Start System Information) (→P.93) of the multi-information display or  ("Vehicle Settings") (→P.93). (The length of the engine stop time can not be changed through the Stop & Start system when the A/C is OFF.)

▶ Settings from the  (Stop & Start system information) screen

- 1 When the  screen is displayed, press the meter control switch  (→P.93), press  or  of the meter control switch, select , and then press the meter control switch .
- 2 Press  or  of the meter control switch, select "Standard" or "Extended", press the meter operation switch .

▶ Settings from the  ("Vehicle Settings") screen

- 1 When the  ("Vehicle Settings") screen is displayed, press  or  of the meter control switch (→P.93), select  and then press the meter control switch .
- 2 Press  or  of the meter control switch, select "Standard" or "Extended", press the meter control switch .

WARNING

■ When the Stop & Start system is operating

- Depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake when necessary while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on). (Except when the brake hold system is operating or when the vehicle comes to a controlled stop while driving with the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode [if equipped])
- Do not allow anyone to leave the vehicle while the engine is stopped due to the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on). Unexpected accidents may occur due to the automatic engine start function.
- Ensure that the engine is not stopped by the Stop & Start system while the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area. The engine may restart due to the automatic engine start function, causing exhaust gases to collect and enter the vehicle and resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ When the Stop & Start system is not operating properly

If any one of the following situations occurs, the Stop & Start system may not be operating correctly, thus, please have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

- While the driver's seat belt is fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light flashes.
- Even when the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light remains off.

 NOTICE

- Even when the driver's door is closed, the open door warning is displayed on the multi-information display, or the interior light comes on when the door position setting for interior lights is off.
- Even when the driver's door is opened, the open door warning is not displayed on the multi-information display, or the interior light does not come on when the door position setting for interior lights is on.

**When idling stop is operating
(When brake hold system is not operating)**

■ **Stopping the engine**

While driving in D or M, depress the brake pedal, and stop the vehicle.

The engine will stop and the Stop & Start indicator will come on.



■ **Restarting the engine**

Release the brake pedal.

The engine will restart. The Stop & Start indicator will go off.

**When idling stop is operating
(When brake hold system is operating)**

When the Brake Hold system is operating (→P.189), the Stop & Start system operates.

■ **Stopping the engine**

While driving in D or M, depress the brake pedal, and stop the vehicle.

The engine will stop and the Stop & Start indicator will come on.

While the brake hold system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator (yellow) comes on.

NX300: Even if the brake pedal is released at this time, the engine remains stopped by the Stop & Start system.

NX200: When the foot is released from the brake pedal, the brake hold continues and the engine restarts.



■ **Restarting the engine**

Depress the accelerator pedal.

The engine will restart. The brake hold operated indicator (yellow) and the Stop & Start indicator will go off.

■ **Stop & Start system operation when the brake hold system is operating**

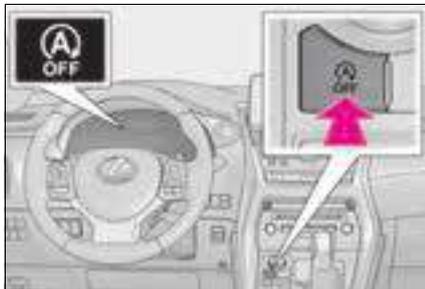
- If the engine is restarted automatically by the Stop & Start system when the brake hold system is operating, the brake hold system will continue to apply the brakes.
- If the operation conditions of the brake hold system are no longer met while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the brake hold system will stop operating. At this time, the parking brake will be applied automatically and the engine will be restarted automatically.

Disabling the Stop & Start system

Press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the Stop & Start system.

The Stop & Start cancel indicator will come on.

Pressing the switch again to re-enable the Stop & Start system.



■ **If the Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed while the vehicle is stopped**

- When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch will restart the engine. From the next time the vehicle is stopped (after Stop & Start system has been turned

off), the engine will not be stopped.

- With the Stop & Start system disabled, pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch will re-enable the system but not stop the engine. From the next time the vehicle is stopped (after Stop & Start system has been turned on), the engine will be stopped.

PKSA (Parking Support Alert)*

*: If equipped

The Parking Support Alert system consists of the following functions that operate when driving at a low speed or backing up, such as when parking. When the system determines that a collision with a detected object, such as a wall is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action.

PKSA (Parking Support Alert) system

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)

Ultrasonic sensors are used to detect static objects in the detection area when driving at a low speed or backing up. (→P.278)

Setting the buzzer volume

■ Adjusting the buzzer volume

The buzzer volume can be adjusted on the multi-information display. Use the meter control switches to change settings. (→P.90)

- 1 Press  or  to select .
- 2 Press  or  to select "PKSA" and then press .

- 3 Press  or  to select  and then press .

Each time the switch is pressed, the volume level change between 1, 2, and 3.

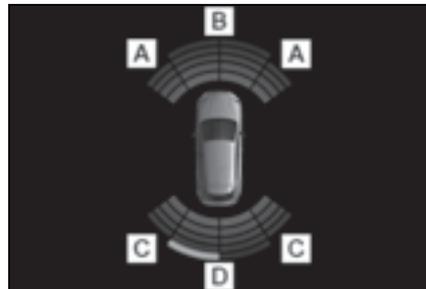
■ Muting buzzer

→P.279

Lexus parking assist-sensor*

*: If equipped

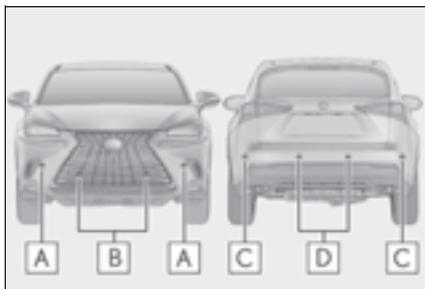
The distance from your vehicle to nearby obstacles when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the displays and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.



- A** Front corner sensor operation
- B** Front center sensor operation
- C** Rear corner sensor operation
- D** Rear center sensor operation

System components

■ Types of sensors



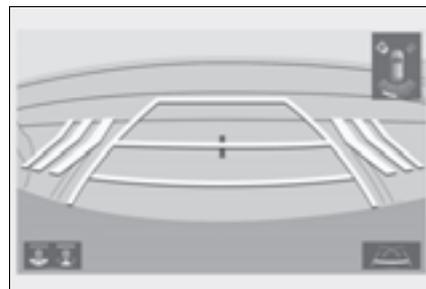
- A** Front corner sensors
- B** Front center sensors
- C** Rear corner sensors
- D** Rear center sensors

■ Display

When the sensors detect an obstacle, the following displays inform the driver of the position and distance to the obstacle.

- Multi-information display

- Navigation or multimedia system
- ▶ Lexus parking assist monitor



- ▶ Panoramic view monitor



Turning Lexus parking assist-sensor on/off

Lexus parking assist-sensor can be enabled/disabled on the multi-information display as following:

- 1 Press **<** or **>** of meter control switches and select .
- 2 Press **▲** or **▼** of meter control switches and select "PKSA".
- 3 Press **▲** or **▼** of meter control switches, select , and then press **●** to select the desired setting (on/off).

If the system is enabled, the Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator light will turn on.

When ON (enable) is selected, the Lexus parking assist-sensor indicator comes on.

When switched to OFF (disable) and the Lexus parking assist-sensor is deactivated, the system will not reactivate if it is not switched to ON again from the  screen of the multi-information display (Will not reactivate via engine switch operations).



■ The Lexus parking assist-sensor can be operated when

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- Lexus parking assist-sensor function is on.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).
- A shift position other than P is selected.

■ Setting the buzzer volume

The buzzer volume can be adjusted on the multi-information display. (→P.277)

■ Muting the buzzer sound

- To mute the buzzer sound
The buzzer can be temporarily muted by pressing **●** of the meter control switches while an obstacle detection display is shown on the multi-information display.
- To cancel the mute
Mute will be automatically canceled in the following situations.
 - When the shift position is changed
 - When the vehicle speed has reached or exceeded approximately 10km/h (6 mph) with the shift lever in D
 - When the Lexus parking assist is turned off once and turned on again
 - When the engine switch is turned off once and turned to IGNITION ON mode again
 - When a sensor is malfunctioning

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor display

When an obstacle is detected while the rear

view monitor system or Lexus parking assist monitor is in use, the warning indicator will appear in the upper corner of the screen even if the display setting has been set to off.

■ **If “Parking Assist Unavailable” or “Parking Assist Unavailable Clean Parking Assist Sensor” is displayed on the multi-information display**

A sensor may be dirty or covered with snow or ice. In such cases, if it is removed from the sensor, the system should return to normal.

Also, due to the sensor being frozen at low temperatures, a malfunction display may appear or an obstacle may not be detected. If the sensor thaws out, the system should return to normal.

■ **If “Parking Assist Malfunction Visit Your Dealer” is displayed on the multi-information display**

Depending on the malfunction of the sensor, the device may not be working normally. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Sensor detection information**

- The sensor’s detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle’s bumper.
- Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect an obstacle. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.
 - There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensor. (Wiping the sensors will resolve this problem.)
 - The sensor is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.)
In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the screen may show an abnormal display, or obstacles may not be detected.
 - The sensor is covered in any way.
 - The vehicle is leaning considerably to one side.
 - On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
 - The vicinity of the vehicle is noisy due to vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud

noises producing ultrasonic waves.

- There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors in the vicinity.
- The sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- The vehicle is equipped with a fender pole or wireless antenna.
- Towing eyelets are installed.
- The bumper or sensor receives a strong impact.
- A backlit license plate, license plate holder, etc., are installed.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
- In harsh sunlight or intense cold weather.
- The area directly under the bumpers is not detected.
- If obstacles draw too close to the sensor.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.
- People may not be detected if they are wearing certain types of clothing.

In addition to the examples above, there are instances in which, because of their shape, signs and other objects may be judged by a sensor to be closer than they are.

- The shape of the obstacle may prevent a sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following obstacles:
 - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
 - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
 - Sharply-angled objects
 - Low obstacles
 - Tall obstacles with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle
- The following situations may occur during use.
 - Depending on the shape of the obstacle and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
 - Obstacles may not be detected if they are too close to the sensor.
 - There will be a short delay between obstacle detection and display. Even at slow speeds, there is a possibility that the obstacle will come within the sensor’s detection areas before the display is shown and the buzzer sounds.

- Thin posts or objects lower than the sensor may not be detected when approached, even if they have been detected once.
- It might be difficult to hear beeps due to the volume of audio system or air flow noise of the air conditioning system.

■ Customization

Some functions can be customized.
(Customizable features: →P.482)

⚠ WARNING

■ When using the Lexus parking assist-sensor

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not use the sensor at speeds in excess of 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The sensors' detection areas and reaction times are limited. When moving forward or reversing, check the areas surrounding the vehicle (especially the sides of the vehicle) for safety, and drive slowly, using the brake to control the vehicle's speed.
- Do not install accessories within the sensors' detection areas.

⚠ NOTICE

■ When using Lexus parking assist-sensor

In the following situations, the system may not function correctly due to a sensor malfunction, etc. Have the vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

- The Lexus parking assist-sensor operation display flashes, and a buzzer sounds when no obstacles are detected.
- If the area around a sensor collides with something, or is subjected to strong impact.

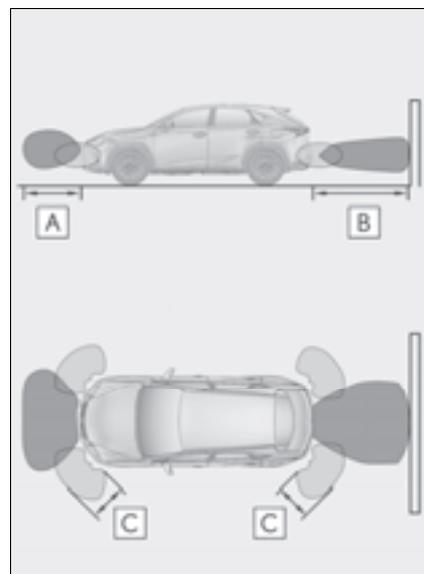
- If the bumper collides with something.
- If the display shows continuously without beeping, except when the buzzer mute switch has been turned on.
- If a display error occurs, first check the sensor.
If the error occurs even if there is no ice, snow or mud on the sensor, it is likely that the sensor is malfunctioning.

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area.
Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

Sensor detection display, obstacle distance

■ Detection range of the sensors



A Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

B Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

C Approximately 65 cm (1.9 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object, etc.

■ **Distance display**

Sensors that detect an obstacle will illuminate continuously or blink. (As the distance to the object becomes less than 30 cm (1.0 ft.), the distance segments may blink.)

Approximate distance to obstacle	Display ^{*1}
Rear center sensor: 150 cm (4.9 ft.) to 65 cm (1.9 ft.) ^{*2}	
Front center sensor: 100 cm (3.3 ft.) to 65 cm (1.9 ft.) ^{*2}	
65 cm (1.9 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.) ^{*2}	
45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.) ^{*2}	
30 cm (1.0 ft.) to 15 cm (0.5 ft.) ^{*3}	
Less than 15 cm (0.5 ft.) ^{*3}	

^{*1}: The images may differ from that shown in the illustrations. (→P.278)

^{*2}: Automatic buzzer mute function is enabled. (→P.282)

^{*3}: The distance segments will blink slowly.

■ **Buzzer operation and distance to an obstacle**

A buzzer sounds when the sensors are operating.

- The buzzer sounds faster as the vehicle approaches an obstacle. When the vehicle comes within the approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.) of the obstacle, the buzzer sounds continuously.
- When 2 or more obstacles are detected simultaneously, the buzzer system responds to the nearest obstacle. If one or both come within the above distances, the beep will repeat a long tone, followed by fast beeps.
- **Automatic buzzer mute function:**
After a buzzer begins sounding, if the distance between the vehicle and the detected object does not become shorter, the buzzer will be muted automatically. (However, if the distance between the vehicle and object is 30 cm (1.0 ft.) or less, this function will not operate.)

Parking Support Brake function (for static objects)*

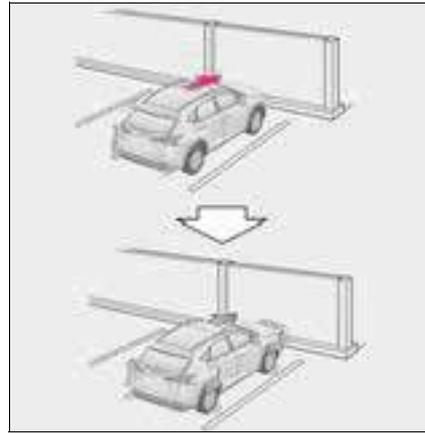
*: If equipped

When a collision may occur with a static object while parking or traveling at low speeds, when the vehicle suddenly moves forward due to mistaken accelerator pedal operation, or when the vehicle moves due to the shift lever being in the wrong position, the sensors detect static objects to the front or rear in the traveling direction of the vehicle, and the system operates to lessen impact with static objects such as walls, and reduce resulting damage.

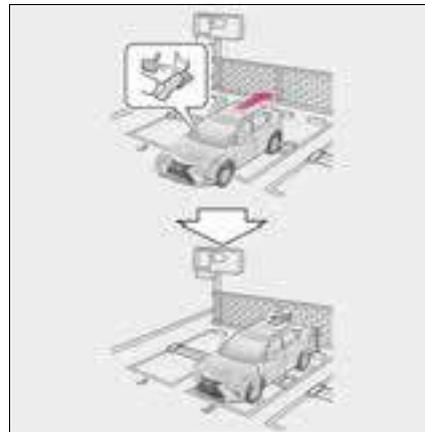
Examples of system operation

The system operates in the following situations when a static object is detected in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

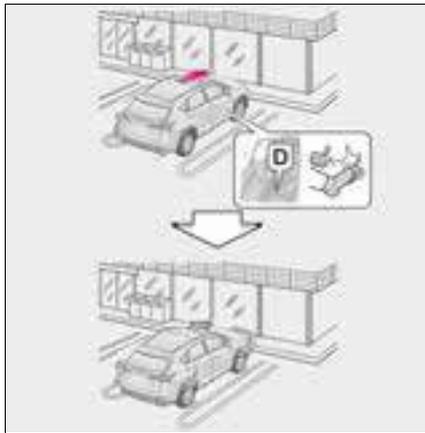
- The vehicle is driven at low speeds and the brake pedal is not depressed, or is depressed too late



- The accelerator pedal is depressed too far



■ When the shift lever is mistakenly in D and the vehicle moves forward



⚠ WARNING

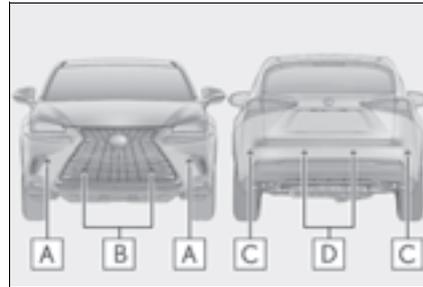
■ For safe use

Do not rely solely upon the system. Relying solely upon the system may lead to an unexpected accident.

- Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Pay careful attention to the surrounding conditions in order to ensure safe driving. The Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) can provide support to lessen the severity of collisions. However, it may not operate depending on the situation.
- The Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) is not a system designed to completely stop the vehicle. Furthermore, even if the Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) is able to stop the vehicle, brake control is canceled after approximately 2 seconds, so depress the brake pedal immediately.

Sensor positions and types

■ Sensor positions and types



- A** Front corner sensors
- B** Front center sensors
- C** Rear corner sensors
- D** Rear center sensors

⚠ NOTICE

■ Preventing sensor malfunctions

- If the area around a sensor is subjected to an impact, equipment may not operate properly due to a sensor malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- When using a high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, do not spray water directly on the sensors. The sensors may not function properly if subjected to an impact from strong water pressure.
- When using steam to wash the vehicle, do not direct steam too close to the sensors. The sensors may not function properly if subjected to steam.

Changing settings of the Parking Support Brake function (for static objects)

This system can be enabled/disabled

on the multi-information display.

- 1 Press “<” or “>” of the meter control switches and select .
- 2 Press “^” or “v” of the meter control switches and select .
- 3 Press  on the meter control switches to enable/disable the system.

The PKSB OFF indicator comes on when the Parking Support Brake function is OFF (not operating).

When the Parking Support Brake func-

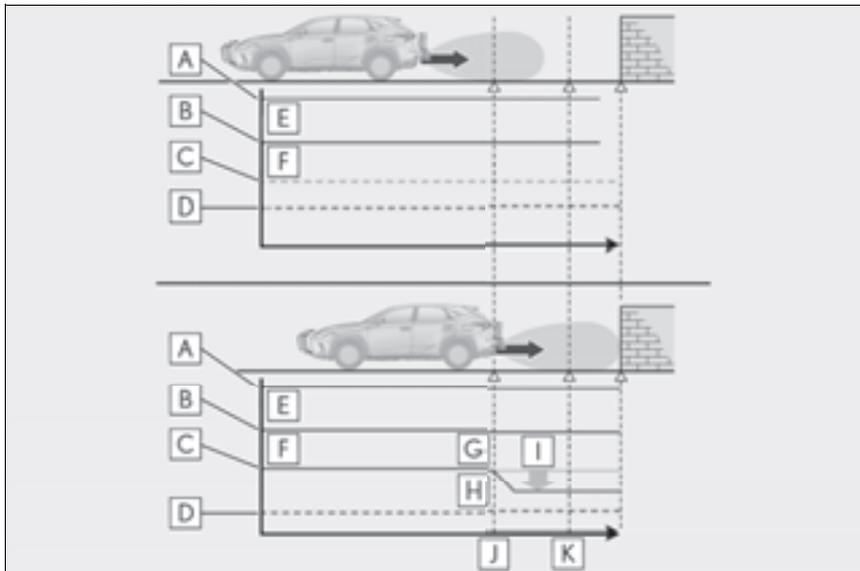
tion is switched OFF, system operation does not resume until the function is switched back ON through the settings screen on the multi-information display. (System operation does not resume by operating the engine switch.)



Operation

■ Engine output restraint control

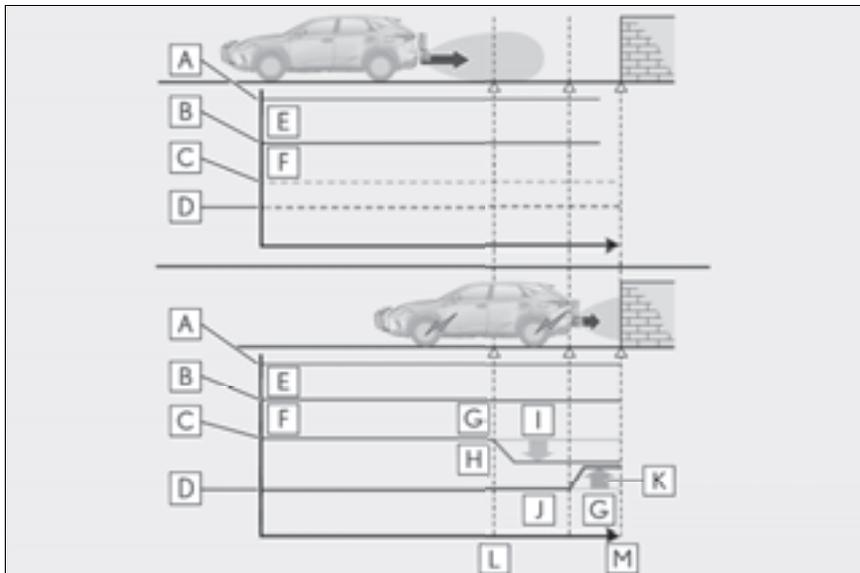
When there is a static object, where a potential collision may occur, is detected, the increase of the vehicle speed is restrained due to engine output being controlled.



- A** Accelerator pedal
- B** Brake pedal
- C** Engine output
- D** Braking force
- E** ON
- F** OFF
- G** Control starts
- H** Collision is likely
- I** DOWN
- J** "BRAKE!" is displayed in the multi-information display
- K** "Switch to Brake" is displayed in the multi-information display

■ **Brake Control**

If the accelerator is continuously depressed even after the engine output is being controlled, the brakes are engaged and the vehicle decelerates.



- A** Accelerator pedal
- B** Brake pedal

- C** Engine output
- D** Braking force
- E** ON
- F** OFF
- G** Control starts
- H** Collision is likely
- I** DOWN
- J** Collision possibility is very high
- K** UP
- L** "BRAKE!" is displayed in the multi-information display
- M** "Switch to Brake" is displayed in the multi-information display

■ Operation starting conditions

When the PKSB OFF indicator is not illuminated or flashing (→P.284, 426) and all of the following conditions are met, the system operates.

- Engine output restriction control
 - The Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) is on.
 - The vehicle speed is 15 km/h (10 mph) or less.
 - There is a static object in the traveling direction of the vehicle (2 to 4 m [6 to 13 ft.] ahead).
 - The system determined that a stronger than-normal brake operation was necessary to avoid a collision.
- Brake control
 - Engine output restriction control is being performed.
 - The system determined that an emergency brake operation was necessary to avoid a collision.

■ Operation ending conditions

In any of the following situations, the system stops operating.

- Engine output restriction control
 - The Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) has been turned off

(stopped).

- The collision became avoidable with normal brake operation.
- The static object is no longer in the traveling direction of the vehicle (2 to 4 m [6 to 13 ft.] ahead).
- Brake control
 - The Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) has been turned off (stopped).
 - Approximately 2 seconds elapsed after the vehicle was stopped by brake control.
 - The brake pedal was depressed after the vehicle was stopped by brake control.
 - The static object is no longer in the traveling direction of the vehicle (2 to 4 m [6 to 13 ft.] ahead).

■ Sensor detection range

The detection range of the Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) differs from the detection range of the clearance sonar (→P.281).

Therefore, even if the clearance sonar detects a static object and provides a warning, the Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) may not start operating.

■ **Static objects not detected by the sensors**

The following static objects may not be detected by the sensors.

- Objects such as people, cloth and snow, that are difficult for sonic waves to reflect off of. (In particular, people may also not be detected depending on the type of clothing they are wearing.)
- Objects not perpendicular with the ground, objects not at a right angle to the traveling direction of the vehicle, uneven objects or waving objects
- Low objects
- Thin objects such as wires, fences, ropes and signposts
- Objects that are extremely close to the bumper

■ **Situations in which the Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) may not operate**

When driving with the shift lever in N

■ **Situations when the system may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision**

In the following situations, the system may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- Environmental influence
 - The vehicle is driven on a narrow road



- The vehicle is driven on a gravel road or in an area with tall grass

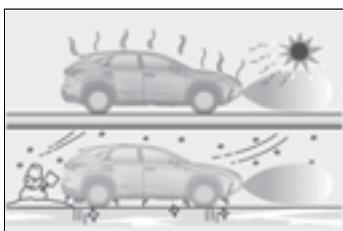


- The vehicle is driven toward a banner or flag, a low-hanging branch or a boom barrier (such as those used at railroad crossings, toll gates and parking lots).
- There is a static object on the shoulder of the road (when the vehicle is driven in a narrow tunnel, on a narrow bridge or on a narrow road)
- The vehicle is being parallel parked
- There is a rut or hole in the surface of the road
- When the vehicle is driven on a metal cover (grating), such as those used for drainage ditches
- The vehicle is driven on a steep slope
- The sensor is covered by water on a flooded road
- Influence from the weather
 - Ice, snow, dirt, etc., has adhered to the sensor (if removed, the system returns to normal)
 - Heavy rain or water strikes the vehicle
 - In severe weather such as fog, snow or a sand storm
- Influence from other sonic waves
 - An ultrasonic wave source is nearby, such as the horn or clearance sonar of another vehicle, a vehicle detector, a motorcycle engine or the air brake of a large vehicle
 - Electronic components (such as a backlit license plate (especially fluorescent types), fog lights, a fender pole or a wireless antenna) are installed near the sensors
- Changes in the vehicle
 - The vehicle is tilted a large amount
 - The height of the vehicle has drastically changed due to the carried load (the nose tilts up or down)
 - The direction of the sensor has deviated due to a collision or other impact

■ Situations in which the system may not operate normally

In the following situations, the system may not operate normally.

- Environmental influence
 - There is a static object that cannot be detected between the vehicle and another static object that can be detected
 - A static object such as another vehicle, a motorcycle, a bicycle or a pedestrian cuts in front of the vehicle or jumps out from the side.
- Influence from the weather
 - The area around the sensor is extremely hot or cold



- The wind is strong



- Ice, snow, dirt, etc., has adhered to the sensor (if removed, the system returns to normal)
- Heavy rain or water strikes the vehicle
- In severe weather such as fog, snow or a sand storm
- Influence from other sonic waves
 - An ultrasonic wave source is nearby, such as the horn or clearance sonar of another vehicle, a vehicle detector, a motorcycle engine or the air brake of a large vehicle
 - Electronic components (such as a backlit license plate (especially fluorescent types), fog lights, a fender pole or a wireless antenna) are installed near the sen-

sors

- Changes in the vehicle
 - The vehicle is tilted a large amount
 - The height of the vehicle has drastically changed due to the carried load (the nose tilts up or down)
- The direction of the sensor has deviated due to a collision or other impact

■ When “Parking Support Brake Unavailable” is displayed on the multi-information display and the PKSB OFF indicator flashes

- Ice, snow, dirt, etc., may have adhered to the sensor. If this occurs, remove the ice, snow, dirt, etc., from the sensor to return the system to normal. Also, a warning message may be displayed at low temperatures due to ice forming on the sensor, and the sensor may not detect static objects. Once the ice melts, the system will return to normal.
- If this message is shown even after removing dirt from the sensor, or shown when the sensor was not dirty to begin with, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- System initialization may not have been performed after removal and installation of the battery. Perform system initialization.

■ When removing and installing the battery

The system needs to be initialized.

The system can be initialized by driving the vehicle straight ahead for 5 seconds or more at a speed of approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or higher.

■ When “Parking Support Brake Malfunction Visit Your Dealer” is displayed on the multi-information display, the PKSB OFF indicator flashes and the buzzer sounds

The system may not be operating properly. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ **In order for the system to operate properly**

Make sure to observe the following precautions regarding the sensors (→P.284). Failure to observe these precautions may cause the sensors not to operate properly, and may result in an unexpected accident.

- Do not perform work such as modification, disassembly or painting
- Only perform replacements using genuine parts
- Do not subject the area around the sensors to any impacts
- Do not damage the sensors, and always keep them clean

■ **Handling the suspension**

Do not modify the suspension, as changes to the height or incline of the vehicle may prevent the sensors from correctly detecting static objects, may cause the system not operate, or may cause the system to operate unnecessarily.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **Preventing unnecessary operation**

In the following situations, turn the Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) OFF. The system may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- A chassis roller, chassis dynamo, free roller or similar equipment is being used for an inspection, etc.
- The vehicle is being loaded onto a ship, truck or other transport vessel
- The suspension has been lowered or tires that have a different size than the genuine tires are equipped

- The height of the vehicle has drastically changed due to the carried load (the nose tilts up or down).
- A towing hook is installed
- When using an automatic car wash

Display and buzzer for engine output restriction control and brake control

When the engine output restriction control or brake control operates, the buzzer sounds and a message is displayed on the multi-information display, head-up display and navigation/multimedia system screen to alert the driver.

Depending on the situation, output restriction control operates to either limit acceleration or restrict output as much as possible.

■ **Engine output restriction control is operating (acceleration limitation control)**

Situation	Acceleration at a certain speed or higher is not possible.
Multi-information display/Head-up display	“Object Detected Acceleration Reduced”
Navigation/multimedia system screen	—

PKSB OFF Indicator	Not illuminated
Buzzer	–

■ **Engine output restriction control is operating (control to restrict output as much as possible)**

Situation	A stronger than normal brake operation is necessary
Multi-information display/Head-up display	"BRAKE!"
Navigation/multimedia system screen	
PKSB OFF Indicator	Not illuminated
Buzzer	Short beep

■ **Brake control is operating**

Situation	Emergency braking is necessary
Multi-information display/Head-up display	"BRAKE!"
Navigation/multimedia system screen	
PKSB OFF Indicator	Not illuminated
Buzzer	Short beep

■ **The vehicle is stopped by system operation**

Situation	The vehicle is stopped after brake control operation
Multi-information display/Head-up display	"Switch to Brake"*
Navigation/multimedia system screen	"Press Brake Pedal"
PKSB OFF Indicator	Illuminated
Buzzer	Short beep

*: If the accelerator pedal is not depressed, "Press Brake Pedal" will be displayed.

■ **System operation**

When the vehicle is stopped by system operation, the Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) stops and the PKSB OFF indicator illuminates.

■ **System recovery**

When the Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) is stopped by system operation and you would like to resume operation, either turn the Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) ON again (→P.284), or turn the engine switch off and then back on. Furthermore, when the vehicle moves with a static object no longer in the traveling direction of the vehicle, or when the traveling direction of the vehicle changes (such as when switching from moving forward to backing up, and vice versa), system operation automatically resumes.

■ **Clearance sonar buzzer**

Regardless of whether the clearance sonar is on or off, if the Parking Support Brake

function (for static objects) is not stopped (→P.284), when the front or rear sensors detect a static object and brake control is performed, the clearance sonar buzzer also sounds and a notification of the approximate distance to the static object is provided.

■ **In the unlikely event that the Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) mistakenly operates at a crossing or elsewhere**

Even in the unlikely event that the Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) mistakenly operates at a crossing or elsewhere, brake control is canceled after approximately 2 seconds, allowing you to proceed forward and leave the area. Furthermore, brake control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed. Depressing the accelerator pedal again allows you to proceed forward and leave the area.

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)*

*: If equipped

The Blind Spot Monitor uses the sensors installed behind the rear bumper. The system is intended to assist the driver check areas that are not easily visible. The system has the following two functions:

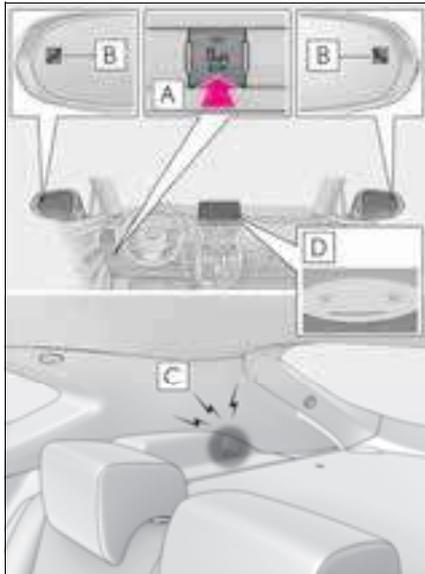
- The Blind Spot Monitor function
Assists the driver in making the decision when changing lanes
- The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function

Assists the driver when backing up

These functions use the same sensors.

System components

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



A BSM main switch

Pressing the switch turns the system on or off. When the switch is set to on, the switch's indicator illuminates and the buzzer sounds (vehicles with Rear Cross Traffic Alert function). This switch is for both Blind Spot Monitor function and Rear Cross Traffic Alert function.

B BSM outside rear view mirror indicators

Blind Spot Monitor function:
When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator on the detected side will illuminate. If the turn signal lever is operated toward the detected side, the outside rear view mirror indicator will flash.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert function:

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, both outside rear view mirror indicators will flash.

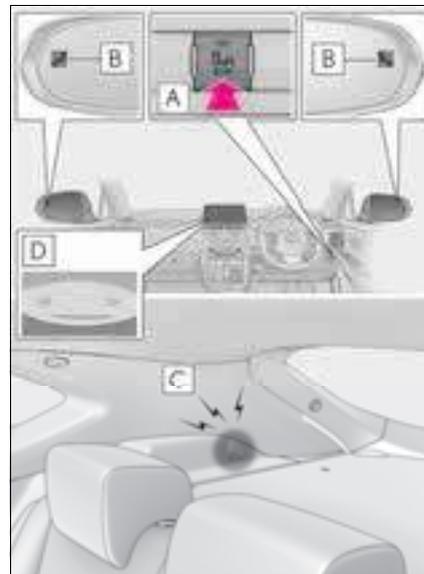
C Rear Cross Traffic Alert buzzer (Rear Cross Traffic Alert function only)

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left rear of the vehicle is detected, a buzzer sounds from behind the right-hand rear seat.

D Navigation/multimedia system screen (Rear Cross Traffic Alert function only)

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the Rear Cross Traffic Alert icon (→P.301) for the detected side will be displayed.

▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



A BSM main switch

Pressing the switch turns the system on or

off. When the switch is set to on, the switch's indicator illuminates and the buzzer sounds (vehicles with Rear Cross Traffic Alert function). This switch is for both Blind Spot Monitor function and Rear Cross Traffic Alert function.

B BSM outside rear view mirror indicators

Blind Spot Monitor function:

When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator on the detected side will illuminate. If the turn signal lever is operated toward the detected side, the outside rear view mirror indicator will flash.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert function:

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, both outside rear view mirror indicators will flash.

C Rear Cross Traffic Alert buzzer
(Rear Cross Traffic Alert function only)

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left rear of the vehicle is detected, a buzzer sounds from behind the right-hand rear seat.

D Navigation/multimedia system screen (Rear Cross Traffic Alert function only)

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the Rear Cross Traffic Alert icon (→P.301) for the detected side will be displayed.

■ **The BSM outside rear view mirror indicators visibility**

When under strong sunlight, the BSM out-

side rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ **Hearing the Rear Cross Traffic Alert buzzer**

Rear Cross Traffic Alert function may be difficult to hear over loud noises such as high audio volume.

■ **When "Blind Spot Monitor Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display**

Water, snow, mud, etc., may be built up in the vicinity of the sensor area of bumper. (→P.299)

Removing the water, snow, mud, etc., from the vicinity of the sensor area bumper should return it to normal.

Also, the sensor may not function normally when used in extremely hot or cold weather.

■ **When "Blind Spot Monitor System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is shown on the multi-information display**

There may be a sensor malfunction or voltage abnormality. Have the vehicle inspected at a Lexus dealer.

- Certification for the Blind Spot Monitor
- ▶ For vehicles sold in South Africa



- ▶ For vehicles sold in the United Arab Emirates



- ▶ For vehicles sold in Bahrain

The Equipment Identified hereon is approved for use under the following rules

- 1- This equipment must not cause harmful interference to other service.
- 2- This equipment is subject to harmful interference, and the owner of this equipment must not claim for protection.

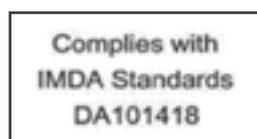
- ▶ For vehicles sold in Qatar



- ▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

TRC's type approval certificate number: TRC/LPD/2014/254

- ▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore



- ▶ For vehicles sold in Indonesia



- ▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam



- ▶ For vehicles sold in Philippines



► For vehicles sold in El Salvador

FCC ID : QAYSRR3A

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Warning
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

► For vehicles sold in Taiwan

第十二條
經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

第十四條
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

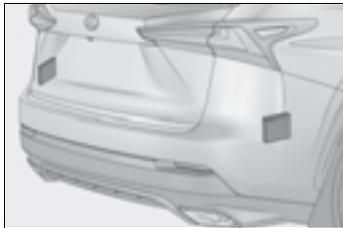
► For vehicles sold in Lebanon

From the Lebanese Telecommunications Ministry:
Type Approval Number : 12421/O&M/2014

⚠ WARNING**■ Handling the radar sensor**

One Blind Spot Monitor sensor is installed inside the left and right side of the vehicle rear bumper respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor can function correctly.

- Keep the sensor and its surrounding area on the bumper clean at all times.



- Do not subject the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper to a strong impact. If the sensor moves even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles that enter the detection area may not be detected. If the sensor or surrounding area is subject to a strong impact, always have the area inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.
- Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the bumper.
- Do not paint the rear bumper any color other than an official Lexus color.
- If the radar sensor needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.

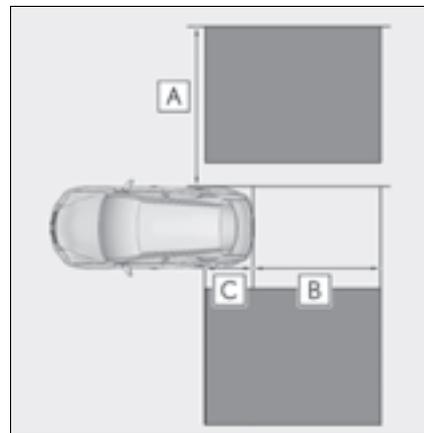
The Blind Spot Monitor function

The Blind Spot Monitor function uses radar sensors to detect vehicles that are traveling in an adjacent lane in the

area that is not reflected in the outside rear view mirror (the blind spot), and advises the driver of the vehicles existence via the BSM outside rear view mirror indicator.

■ The Blind Spot Monitor function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The range of the detection area extends to:

- A** Approximately 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) from the side of the vehicle
The first 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) from the side of the vehicle is not in the detection area
- B** Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) from the rear bumper
- C** Approximately 1 m (3.3 ft.) forward of the rear bumper

■ The Blind Spot Monitor function is operational when

- The BSM main switch is set to on
- Vehicle speed is greater than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph).

■ **The Blind Spot Monitor function will detect a vehicle when**

- A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.
- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.
- You overtake a vehicle in adjacent lane slowly.

■ **Conditions under which the Blind Spot Monitor function will not detect a vehicle**

The Blind Spot Monitor function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles driving 2 lanes across from your vehicle*
- Vehicles which are being overtaken rapidly by your vehicle*

*: Depending on conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

■ **Conditions under which the Blind Spot Monitor function may not function correctly**

- The Blind Spot Monitor function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:
 - When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
 - When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc. is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
 - When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
 - When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle

- When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
- When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- When the difference in speed between your vehicle and another vehicle is changing
- When a vehicle enters a detection area traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
- As your vehicle starts from a stop, a vehicle remains in the detection area
- When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
- When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
- When vehicle lanes are wide, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and the vehicle in an adjacent lane is far away from your vehicle
- When towing a trailer (vehicles with towing package)
- When items such as a bicycle carrier are installed on the rear of the vehicle
- When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- Immediately after the Blind Spot Monitor function is turned on
- Instances of the Blind Spot Monitor function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:
 - When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
 - When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc. that enters the detection area is short
 - When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
 - When vehicle lanes are narrow, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and a vehicle traveling in a lane other than the adjacent lanes enters the detection area
 - When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
 - When the tires are slipping or spinning

- When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
- When a bicycle carrier or other accessory is installed to the rear of the vehicle
- When towing a trailer (vehicles with towing package)

⚠ WARNING

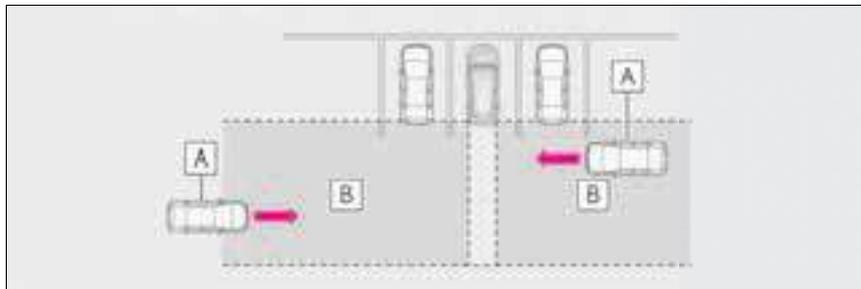
■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The Blind Spot Monitor function is a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is present in the blind spot. Do not overly rely on the Blind Spot Monitor function. The function cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, therefore over reliance could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury. According to conditions, the system may not function correctly. Therefore the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function (if equipped)

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function operates when your vehicle is in reverse. It can detect other vehicles approaching from the right or left rear of the vehicle. It uses radar sensors to alert the driver of the other vehicle's existence through flashing the BSM outside rear view mirror indicators and sounding a buzzer.



A Approaching vehicles

B Detection areas

■ Rear Cross Traffic Alert icon display (if equipped)

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the following will be dis-

played on the navigation/multimedia system screen.

▶ Lexus parking assist monitor

A vehicle is approaching from the left or right at the rear of the vehicle



▶ Panoramic view monitor

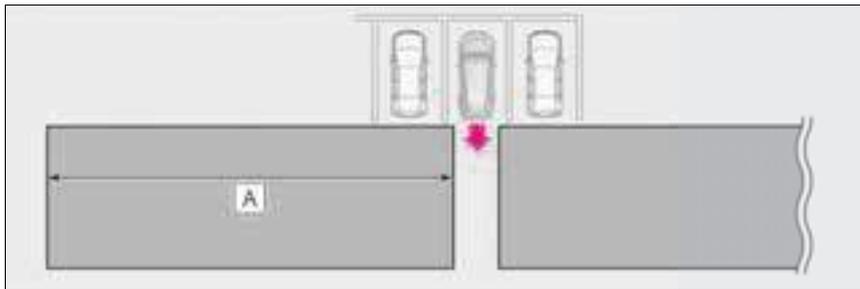
A vehicle is approaching from the left

or right at the rear of the vehicle



■ The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



To give the driver a more consistent time to react, the buzzer can alert for faster vehicles from farther away.

Example:

Approaching vehicle	Speed	A Approximate alert distance
Fast	28 km/h (18 mph)	20 m (65 ft.)
Slow	8 km/h (5 mph)	5.5 m (18 ft.)

■ The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function is operational when

- The BSM main switch is set to on.

- The shift lever is in R.
- Vehicle speed is less than approximately 8 km/h (5 mph).
- Approaching vehicle speed is between approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) and 28 km/h (18 mph).

■ Conditions under which the Rear Cross Traffic Alert function will not detect a vehicle

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects.

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles approaching from directly behind*
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*

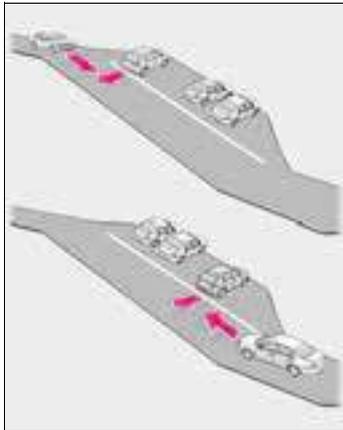
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle*
- Vehicles backing up in the parking space next to your vehicle*

* : Depending on conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

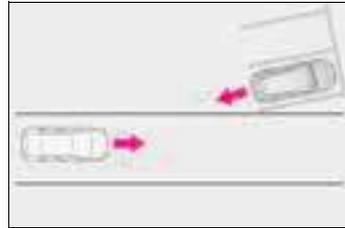
■ Conditions under which the Rear Cross Traffic Alert function may not function correctly

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following conditions:

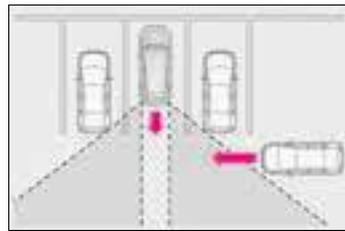
- During bad weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow, etc.
- When ice or mud, etc., is attached to the rear bumper
- When multiple vehicles approach continuously
- Shallow angle parking
- When a vehicle is approaching at high speed
- When backing up on a slope with a sharp change in grade



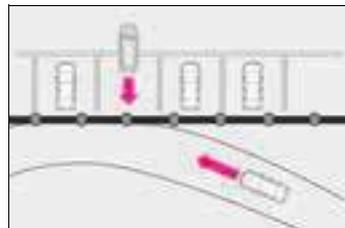
- When backing out of a sharp angle parking spot



- When parking on a steep incline, such as hills, a dip in the road, etc.
- Directly after the BSM main switch is set to on
- Directly after the engine is started with the BSM main switch on
- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect because of obstacles



- Instances of the Rear Cross Traffic Alert function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:
 - When a vehicle passes by the side of your vehicle
 - When the parking space faces a street and vehicles are being driven on the street



- When the distance between your vehicle and metal objects, such as a guardrail, wall, sign, or parked vehicle, which may reflect electrical waves toward the rear of the vehicle, is short

⚠ WARNING

■ **Cautions regarding the use of the system**

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings.

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert function is only an assist and is not a replacement for careful driving. Driver must be careful when backing up, even when using Rear Cross Traffic Alert function. The driver's own visual confirmation of behind you and your vehicle is necessary and be sure there are no pedestrians, other vehicles, etc., before backing up. Failure to do so could cause death or serious injury.

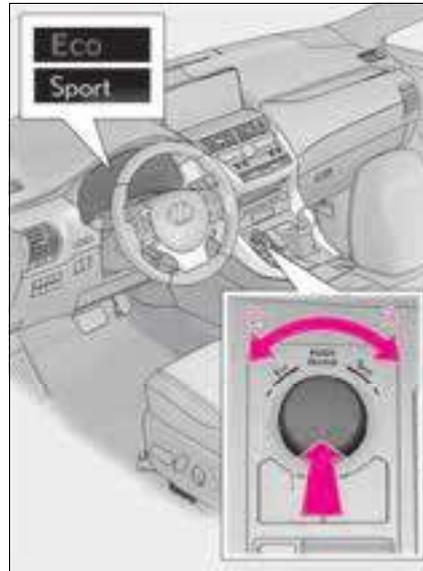
According to conditions, the system may not function correctly. Therefore the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

Driving mode select switch

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving conditions.

Selecting a driving mode

- ▶ Vehicles without Adaptive Variable Suspension system



1 Normal

For normal driving.

Press the switch to change the driving mode to Normal mode when selected to Eco mode or Sport mode.

2 Eco mode

In contrast to Normal mode when stepping on the accelerator pedal, torque generation becomes slower, air conditioning operations (heating/cooling) are restrained, and driving is suited for improved fuel consumption.

When not in Eco mode and the driving

mode select switch is turned to the left, "Eco" indicator will be shown on the multi-information display.

3 Sport mode

Assists acceleration response by controlling the engine, transmission and steering.

When not in Sport mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, "Sport" indicator will be shown on the multi-information display.

- ▶ Vehicles with Adaptive Variable Suspension system



1 Normal/Custom mode

Press the switch and select Normal mode or Custom mode. Each time the switch is pressed, the system changes between Normal mode and Custom mode.

When Custom mode is selected, the "Custom" indicator comes on.

When in Eco mode or Sport mode, when the switch is pressed, the system returns to Normal mode. Press the switch to change

the driving mode to Normal mode when selected to Eco mode or Sport mode. Custom mode can be setup on the navigation system or multimedia system screen.

- Normal mode

Suitable when driving in the city, for good fuel consumption efficiency, silence, and drive-ability.

- Custom mode

Driving is possible by setting the desired function for power train control, chassis control or air conditioning operations.

2 Eco mode

In contrast to Normal mode when stepping on the accelerator pedal, torque generation becomes slower, air conditioning operations (heating/cooling) are restrained, and driving is suited for improved fuel consumption.

When not in Eco mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the left, "Eco" indicator will be shown on the multi-information display.

3 Sport mode

- Sport S mode

Assists acceleration response by controlling the engine and transmission. Suitable for when powerful acceleration is desirable.

When not in Sport S mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the right, "Sport S" indicator will be shown on the multi-information display.

- Sport S+ mode

Helps to ensure superior vehicle stability by simultaneously controlling the steering and suspension in addition to the engine and transmission. Suitable for sporty driving.

When in Sport S mode and the driving mode select switch is turned to the right,

"Sport S+" indicator will be shown on the multi-information display.

■ Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco mode

Eco mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. To improve air conditioning performance, adjust the fan speed or turn off Eco mode.

■ When canceling Eco mode/ Sport mode

- Select another driving mode. Also, Sport mode will be canceled automatically when the engine switch is turned off.
- Normal mode and Eco mode will not be canceled automatically until another driving mode is selected, even if the engine switch is turned off.

■ Operating the ASC (Active Sound Control)

If the ASC is ON, an electronic sound plays when the Sport S+ mode is selected.

GPF (Gasoline Particulate Filter) system*

*: If equipped

The GPF system collects particulate matter in the exhaust gas by using an exhaust gas filter. The system will operate to regenerate the filter automatically, depending on the vehicle conditions.

■ If "Exhaust Filter Full See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display

- The message may be displayed while high load driving with particulate matter accumulating.
- Engine output is restricted while the message is displayed, however, it is possible to drive the vehicle unless the malfunction indicator lamp comes on.
- Particulate matter can accumulate more quickly if the vehicle is frequently driven short trips or at low speeds, or if the engine is regularly started in an extremely cold environment. Excessive accumulation of particulate matter can be prevented by periodically driving long distances continuously with intermittent releasing of the accelerator pedal, such as when driving on highways and freeways.

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on or "Engine Maintenance Required Visit Your Dealer" is shown on the multi-information display

The amount of accumulated particulate matter has exceeded a certain level. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

**NOTICE**

- To prevent the GPF system from not operating properly
- Do not use fuel other than the specified type
- Do not modify the exhaust pipe

Driving assist systems

To keep driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

Summary of the driving assist systems

- **ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)**

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

- **Brake assist**

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

- **VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)**

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces.

Provides cooperative control of the ABS, TRC, VSC and EPS.

Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance.

- **Trailer Sway Control**

Helps the driver to control trailer sway

by selectively applying brake pressure for individual wheels and reducing driving torque when trailer sway is detected.

■ **TRC (Traction Control)**

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

■ **Active Cornering Assist (ACA)**

Helps to prevent the vehicle from drifting to the outer side by performing inner wheel brake control when attempting to accelerate while turning

■ **Hill-start assist control**

Helps to reduce the backward movement of the vehicle when starting on an uphill

■ **EPS (Electric Power Steering)**

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

■ **Dynamic Torque Control AWD system (if equipped)**

Automatically switches from front-wheel drive to all-wheel drive (AWD) according to the driving conditions, helping to ensure reliable handling and stability. Examples of conditions where the system will switch to AWD are when cornering, going uphill, starting off or accelerating, and when the road surface is slippery due to snow, rain, etc.

■ **AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension system) (if equipped)**

By independently controlling the damping force of the shock absorbers for each of the 4 wheels according to the road and driving conditions, this system helps riding comfort with superior vehicle stability, and helps good vehicle posture.

If Sport S+ mode is selected using the driving mode select switch, the damping force will become more suitable for sporty driving. (→P.304)

■ **PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)**

→P.223

■ **Emergency brake signal**

When the brakes are applied suddenly, the stop lights automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind.

■ **BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (if equipped)**

→P.292

■ **When the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are operating.**

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are operating.



■ Disabling the TRC system

If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the TRC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. Pressing  to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it. To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release .

The “Traction Control Turned Off” will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press  again to turn the system back on.



■ Turning off both TRC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control systems

To turn the TRC, VSC and Trailer Sway Control systems off, press and hold  for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped. The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the “Traction Control Turned Off” will be shown on the multi-information display.* Press  again to turn the system back on.

*: On vehicles with pre-collision system, pre-collision brake assist and pre-collision braking will also be disabled. The PCS warning light will come on and the message will be shown on the multi-information display. (→P.231)

■ When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if has not been pressed

TRC is temporary deactivated. If the information continues to show, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC, Trailer Sway Control, TRC and hill-start assist control systems

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
 - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
 - A motor sound may be heard also after the vehicle comes to a stop.
 - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
 - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ Active Cornering Assist operation sounds and vibrations

When the Active Cornering Assist is operated, operation sounds and vibrations may be generated from the brake system, but this is not a malfunction.

■ EPS operation sound

When the steering wheel is operated, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

■ Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result.

Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ **Automatic reactivation of TRC, Trailer Sway Control and VSC systems**

After turning the TRC, Trailer Sway Control and VSC systems off, the systems will be automatically re-enabled in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned off
- If only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC will turn on when vehicle speed increases
If both the TRC and VSC systems are turned off, automatic re-enabling will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Operating conditions of Active Cornering Assist**

The system operates when the following occurs.

- TRC/VSC can operate
- The driver is attempting to accelerate while turning
- The system detects that the vehicle is drifting to the outer side
- The brake pedal is released

■ **Operating conditions of hill-start assist control**

When the following four conditions are met, the hill-start assist control will operate:

- The shift lever is in a position other than P or N (when starting off forward/backward on an upward incline)
- The vehicle is stopped
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed
- The parking brake is not engaged

■ **Automatic system cancelation of hill-start assist control**

The hill-start assist control will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The shift lever is shifted to P or N
- The accelerator pedal is depressed
- The parking brake is engaged

- 2 seconds at maximum elapsed after the brake pedal is released

■ **Operating conditions of emergency brake signal**

When the following conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

- The emergency flashers are off.
- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph).
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that it is a sudden braking operation.

■ **Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal**

The emergency brake signal will be canceled in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that is not a sudden braking operation.

 **WARNING**

■ **The ABS does not operate effectively when**

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ **Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions**

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road

⚠ WARNING

- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

- **TRC/VSC may not operate effectively when**

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC/VSC system is operating.

Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

- **Active Cornering Assist does not operate effectively when**

- Do not overly rely on Active Cornering Assist. Active Cornering Assist may not operate effectively when accelerating down slopes or driving on slippery road surfaces.

- When Active Cornering Assist frequently operates, Active Cornering Assist may temporarily stop operating to ensure proper operation of the brakes, TRC and VSC.

- **Hill-start assist control does not operate effectively when**

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

- **When the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control is activated**

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

- **When the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems are turned off**

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC/Trailer Sway Control systems off unless necessary.

Trailer Sway Control is part of the VSC system and will not operate if VSC is turned off or experiences a malfunction.

- **Replacing tires**

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level. The ABS, TRC, Trailer Sway Control and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle. Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

- **Handling of tires and the suspension**

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

- **Trailer Sway Control precaution**

The Trailer Sway Control system is not able to reduce trailer sway in all situations. Depending on many factors such as the conditions of the vehicle, trailer, road surface and driving environment, the Trailer Sway Control system may not be effective. Refer to your trailer owner's manual for information on how to tow your trailer properly.

- **If trailer sway occurs**

Observe the following precautions. Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

- Firmly grip the steering wheel. Steer straight ahead. Do not try to control trailer sway by turning the steering wheel.

⚠ WARNING

- Begin releasing the accelerator pedal immediately but very gradually to reduce speed. Do not increase speed. Do not apply vehicle brakes.

If you make no extreme correction with the steering or brakes, your vehicle and trailer should stabilize. (→P.168)

All-wheel drive lock switch (AWD models)

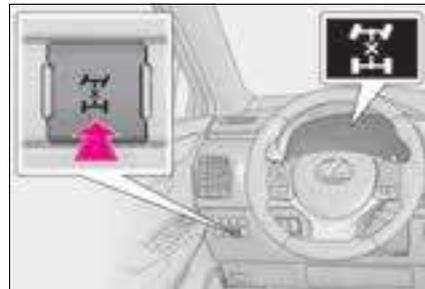
All-wheel drive lock mode can be used when a large amount of drive power needs to be applied to all the wheels, such as when the vehicle gets stuck in mud and you need to free it.

Using All-wheel drive lock mode

Press the switch.

The torque of the engine is distributed to the rear wheels to the maximum extent possible in accordance with driving conditions.

Pressing the switch again cancels all-wheel drive lock mode and returns the Dynamic Torque Control AWD system to normal mode. (→P.308)



■ **All-wheel drive lock mode can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Automatic release for the All-wheel drive lock mode**

- All-wheel drive lock mode is canceled when the brakes are applied to ensure the ABS and VSC systems operate effectively.

- All-wheel drive lock mode is canceled when the vehicle speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph).

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Pre-winter preparations

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
 - Engine oil
 - Engine coolant
 - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires*.

Ensure that all tires are the same size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

*: Tire chains cannot be mounted on the 225/60R18 tires.

WARNING

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.

- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.

- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ Driving with tire chains

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
- Do not use LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped).
- Do not use LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped).

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from your Lexus dealer or legitimate tire retailers.

This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

- Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If the vehicle is parked

without setting the parking brake, make sure to block the wheels.

Failure to do so may be dangerous because it may cause the vehicle to move unexpectedly, possibly leading to an accident.

When the parking brake is in automatic mode, release the parking brake after shifting the shift lever to P. (→P.186)

- If the vehicle is left parked with the brakes damp in cold temperatures, there is a possibility of the brakes freezing.
- If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, confirm that the shift lever cannot be moved out of P*.

*: The shift lever will be locked if it is attempted to be shifted from P to any other position without depressing the brake pedal. If the shift lever can be shifted from P, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

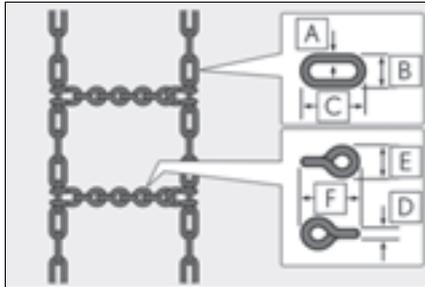
⚠ WARNING**■ When parking the vehicle**

When parking the vehicle without applying the parking brake, make sure to chock the wheels. If you do not chock the wheels, the vehicle may move unexpectedly, possibly resulting in an accident.

Selecting tire chains

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains. Chain size is regulated for each tire size.

- ▶ Vehicles with 225/65R17 and 235/55R18 tires



Side chain:

- A** 3 mm (0.12 in.) in diameter
- B** 10 mm (0.39 in.) in width
- C** 25 mm (0.98 in.) in length

Cross chain:

- D** 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter
- E** 14 mm (0.55 in.) in width
- F** 25 mm (0.98 in.) in length

- ▶ Vehicles with 225/60R18 tires

Tire chains cannot be mounted on the 225/60R18 tires.

Snow tires should be used instead.

Regulations on the use of tire chains

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

■ Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe

location.

- Install tire chains on the front tires only. Do not install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains on front tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5 - 1.0 km (1/4 - 1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Fitting tire chains (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

Eco-friendly driving tips

For improved fuel economy and reduced CO₂ emissions, pay attention to the following points:

Using Eco mode

When using Eco mode, the torque corresponding to the accelerator pedal depression amount can be generated more smoothly than it is in normal conditions. In addition, the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) will be minimized, improving the fuel economy. (→P.304)

Use of Eco Driving Indicator

The Eco-friendly driving is possible by keeping the bar display of the Eco Driving Indicator shown in the multi-information display within the Zone of Eco driving. (→P.85)

Accelerator pedal/brake pedal operation

Drive your vehicle smoothly. Avoid abrupt acceleration and deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will help reduce excessive fuel consumption.

When braking

Observe conditions in front of and around the vehicle, and estimate your stopping position. Release the accel-

erator pedal entry and continue coasting. Use the brake pedal to adjust your stopping position. Make sure to operate the brake pedal gently.

Delays

Repeated acceleration and deceleration, as well as long waits at traffic lights, will lead to bad fuel economy. Check traffic reports before leaving and avoid delays as much as possible.

Highway driving

Control and maintain the vehicle at a constant speed. Before stopping at a toll booth or similar, allow plenty of time to release the accelerator pedal and gently apply the brakes.

Air conditioning

Use the air conditioning only when necessary. Doing so can help reduce excessive fuel consumption.

In summer: When the ambient temperature is high, use the recirculated air mode. Doing so will help to reduce the burden on the air conditioning system and reduce fuel consumption as well.

In winter: Turn the A/C switch on only when both heating and dehumidifying are needed, and if only heating is needed, turn the A/C switch off. Turning the A/C switch on when unnecessary leads to excessive fuel consumption.

Performing idling stops

- Avoid unnecessary idling. Stop the engine when parking the vehicle to reduce excessive fuel consumption, even it is only for a short period of time.
- Except in severe environment, such as when the outside temperature is extremely low, warming up the engine before driving is unnecessary. Rather than idling, it is more efficient to drive the vehicle gently to warm up each part while avoiding increasing the engine revolutions unnecessarily and accelerating or decelerating suddenly.
- Using the Stop & Start system will help improve fuel economy. (→P.270)
- Idling before stopping the engine with turbocharger is performed to maintain functionality, and it is not unnecessary idling. (→P.161)

Luggage

Carrying heavy luggage will lead to poor fuel economy. Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage. Installing a large roof rack will also cause poor fuel economy.

Regular maintenance

- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure frequently. Improper tire inflation pressure can cause poor

fuel economy. Also, as snow tires can cause large amounts of friction, their use on dry roads can lead to poor fuel economy. Use tires that are appropriate for the season and road conditions.

- Use oil and fluid of the recommended quality, which affect fuel consumption and the life of the vehicle. Also, check oil and fluid periodically. (→P.368)

Utility vehicle precautions

This vehicle belongs to the utility vehicle class, which has higher ground clearance and narrower tread in relation to the height of its center of gravity.

Utility vehicle feature

- Specific design characteristics give it a higher center of gravity than ordinary passenger cars. This vehicle design feature causes this type of vehicle to be more likely to rollover. And, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.
- It is not designed for cornering at the same speeds as ordinary passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Therefore, sharp turns at excessive speeds may cause rollover.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Utility vehicle precautions**

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death or serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. Therefore, the driver and all passengers should always fasten their seat belts.

- Avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers, if at all possible. Failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on the roof luggage carrier (if equipped) will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate this vehicle correctly.
- Always slow down in gusty crosswinds. Because of its profile and higher center of gravity, your vehicle is more sensitive to side winds than an ordinary passenger car. Slowing down will allow you to have better control.
- Do not drive horizontally across steep slopes. Driving straight up or straight down is preferred. Your vehicle (or any similar off-road vehicle) can tip over sideways much more easily than forward or backward.

Off-road driving

Your vehicle is not designed to be driven off-road. However, in the event that off-road driving cannot be avoided, please observe the following precautions to help avoid the areas prohibited to vehicles.

- Drive your vehicle only in areas where off-road vehicles are permitted to travel.
- Respect private property. Get owner's permission before entering private property.
- Do not enter areas that are closed.

Honor gates, barriers and signs that restrict travel.

- Stay on established roads. When conditions are wet, driving techniques should be changed or travel delayed to prevent damage to roads.

WARNING

■ Off-road driving precautions

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of death or serious injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Drive carefully when off the road. Do not take unnecessary risks by driving in dangerous places.
- Do not grip the steering wheel spokes when driving off-road. A bad bump could jerk the wheel and injure your hands. Keep both hands and especially your thumbs on the outside of the rim.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving in sand, mud, water or snow.
- After driving through tall grass, mud, rock, sand, water, etc., check that there is no grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering or trapped to the underbody. Clear off any such matter from the underbody. If the vehicle is used with these materials trapped or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off-road or in rugged terrain, do not drive at excessive speeds, jump, make sharp turns, strike objects, etc. This may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover causing death or serious injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

NOTICE

■ To prevent water damage

Take all necessary safety measures to ensure that water damage to the engine or other components does not occur.

- Water entering the engine air intake will cause severe engine damage.
- Water entering the transmission will cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage.
- Water can wash the grease from wheel bearings, causing rusting and premature failure, and may also enter the differentials, transmission and transfer case, reducing the gear oil's lubricating qualities.

■ When you drive through water

If driving through water, such as when crossing shallow streams, first check the depth of the water and the bottom of the riverbed for firmness. Drive slowly and avoid deep water.

■ Inspection after off-road driving

- Sand and mud that has accumulated around brake discs may affect braking efficiency and may damage brake system components.
- Always perform a maintenance inspection after each day of off-road driving that has taken you through rough terrain, sand, mud, or water.

Interior features

5

- 5-1. Remote Touch
 - Remote Touch..... 322
- 5-2. Using the air conditioning system and defogger
 - Automatic air conditioning system 327
 - Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators..... 335
- 5-3. Using the interior lights
 - Interior lights list..... 338
- 5-4. Using the storage features
 - List of storage features 341
 - Luggage compartment features 345
- 5-5. Using the other interior features
 - Other interior features 349

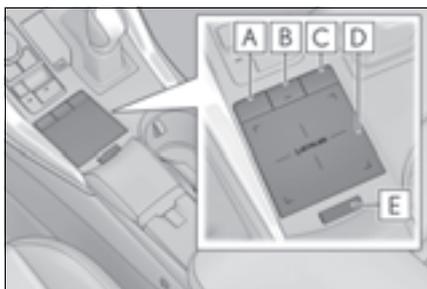
Remote Touch

The Remote Touch can be used to operate the navigation/multimedia system display.

Owners of models equipped with a navigation system should refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

Remote Touch operation

Switches



▶ 10.3-inch display model

A "MAP" button

Press this button to display the vehicle's current position.

▶ 8-inch display model

A "HOME" button

Press this button to display the home screen.

B "MENU" button

Press this button to display the menu screen.

C Back button

Press this button to display the previous screen.

D Touchpad

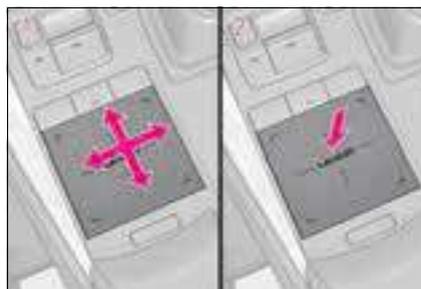
Slide your finger on the touchpad and move the pointer to select a function, letter and screen button.

Press the touchpad to enter the selected function, letter or screen button. Certain finger movements on the touchpad can perform functions, such as changing map scalings and scrolling list screens.

E Sub function button

When  is displayed on the screen, a function screen assigned to the screen can be displayed.

Using the touchpad



- 1 Select: Touch the touchpad to select the desired button on the screen.
- 2 Enter: The buttons on the screen can be selected by either depressing or double tapping on the touchpad. Once a button has been selected, the screen will change.

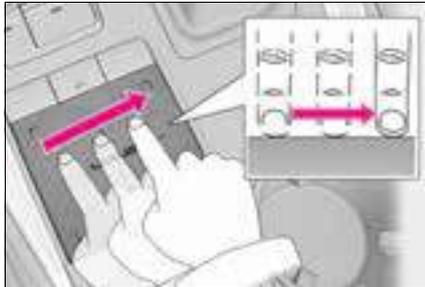
Touch operation

Operations are performed by touching the touchpad with your finger.

● Trace

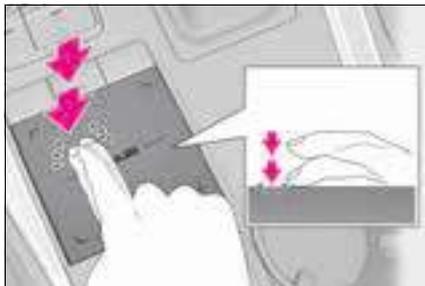
Trace the pad surface while maintaining contact with the touch pad. Moving the

cursor and the pointer.



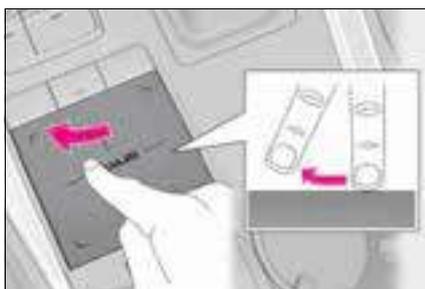
● Double tap

Tap the touchpad twice, quickly. Select the button on the screen.



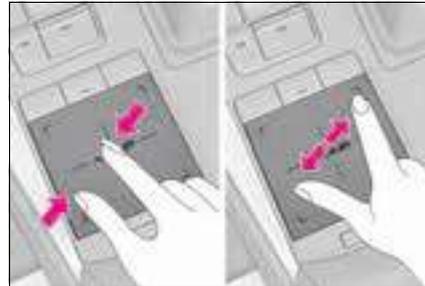
● Flick

Quick and long movement along the touchpad with your finger. Move the list screen or map screen.



● Pinch in/Pinch out

Slide fingers toward each other or apart on the touchpad. Change the scale of the map.



■ Apple CarPlay

The Apple CarPlay Maps app is not compatible with pinch multi-touch gestures.

 NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the Remote Touch

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the Remote Touch.

- Do not allow the Remote Touch to come into contact with food, liquid, stickers or lit cigarettes.
- Do not subject the Remote Touch to excessive pressure or strong impact.
- Do not push the touchpad with a strong force or use a sharp pointed object to operate the pad.

Menu screen

Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch to display the menu screen.

The display may differ depending on the type of the system.

▶ 8-inch display model



▶ 10.3-inch display model



Switch	Function
	Select to display the "Destination" screen. ^{*1}
	Select to display the radio control screen. ^{*1,2}
	Select to display the media control screen. ^{*1}
	Select to display the hands-free control screen. ^{*1}
	Select to display the "Apps" screen. ^{*1,2}

Switch	Function
	When an Apple CarPlay connection is established and this button is displayed, select to display the home screen of Apple CarPlay. ^{*1,2}
	When an Android Auto connection is established and this button is displayed, select to display the home screen of Android Auto. ^{*1,2}
	Select to display the information screen. ^{*1} (→P.101)
	Select to display the "Setup" screen. ^{*1}
	Select to display the air conditioning control screen. (→P.330)
	Select to adjust the contrast and brightness of the screens, turn the screen off, etc. ^{*1,3}

^{*1}: Refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

^{*2}: This function is not made available in some countries or areas.

^{*3}: This function is not made available on some models.

Display overview

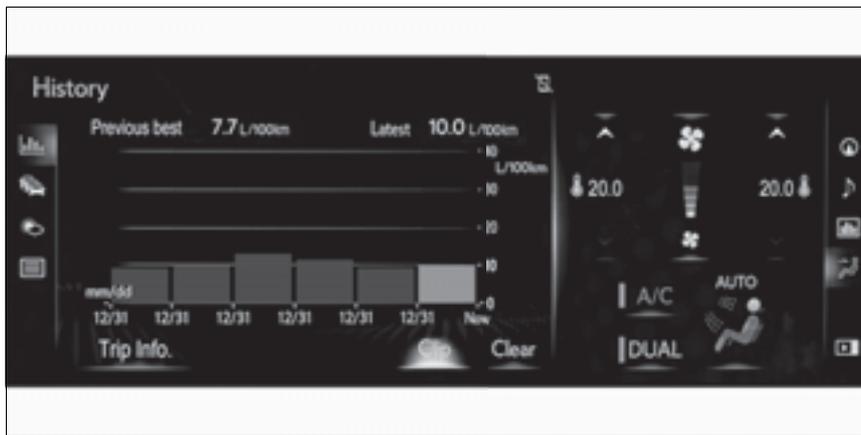
▶ 8-inch display models

The home screen can be display multiple information screens. For details about the functions and operation of the display, refer to the respective section and “Navigation and Multimedia System Owner’s Manual”

▶ 10.3-inch display models

● Split-screen display

Different information can be displayed on the left and right of the screen. For example, air conditioning system screen can be displayed and operated while the fuel consumption information screen is being displayed. The large screen on the left of the display is called the main display, and the small screen to the right is called the side display.



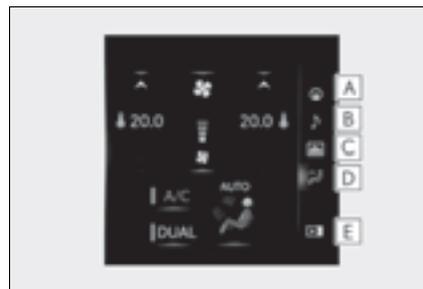
● Main display

For details about the functions and operation of the main display, refer to the respective section and “Navigation and Multimedia System Owner’s Manual”.

● Side display

The following functions can be displayed and operated on the side display.

Select ◀ or ▶ to display the desired screen.



A Navigation system *

B Audio *

C Vehicle information

D Air conditioning system (→P.332)

E Show/hide the side display.*

* : Refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

■ Screen display during low temperatures

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, screen response may be delayed even if the Remote Touch is operated.

Automatic air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

Press the “MENU” button on the Remote Touch, then select  to display the air conditioning control screen.

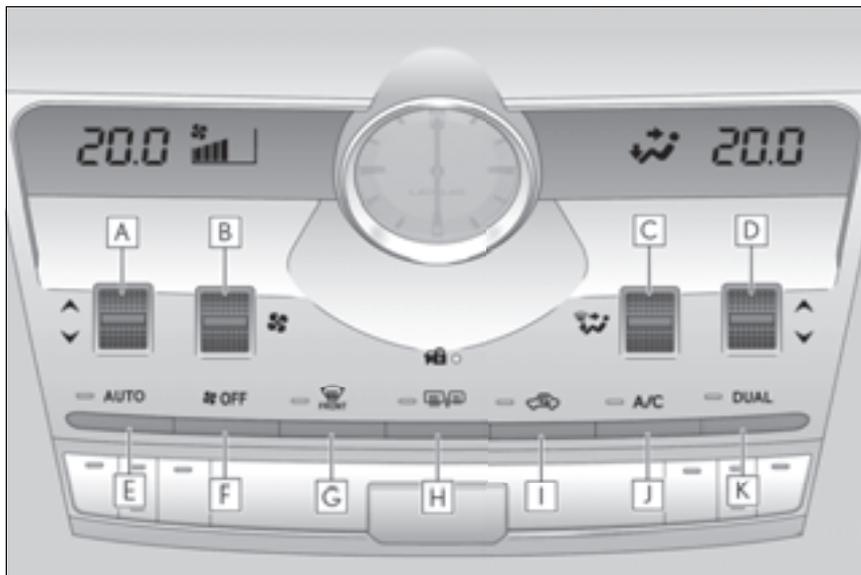
The air conditioning system can be displayed and operated on the side display.

The illustrations below are for left-hand drive vehicles.

The button positions and shapes will differ for right-hand drive vehicles.

Also, the display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

Air conditioning controls



- A** Left-hand side temperature control switch
- B** Fan speed control switch
- C** Airflow mode control switch
- D** Right-hand side temperature control switch

- E** Automatic mode switch
- F** Off switch
- G** Windshield defogger switch
- H** Rear windshield and outside rear view mirror defogger switch
- I** Outside/recirculated air mode switch
- J** "A/C" switch
- K** "DUAL" switch

■ **Adjusting the temperature setting**

Operate the temperature control switch upwards to increase the temperature and downwards to decrease the temperature.

If "A/C" switch is not pressed, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

■ **Adjusting the fan speed setting**

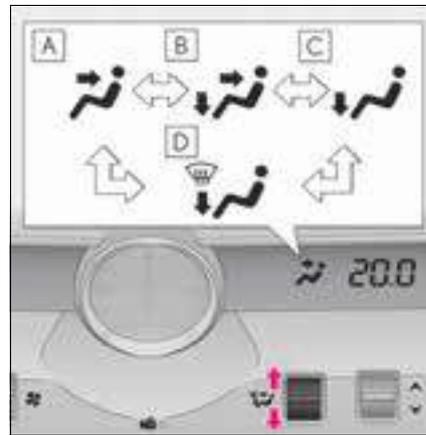
Operate the fan speed control switch upwards to increase the fan speed and downwards to decrease the fan speed.

Press the off switch to turn the fan off.

■ **Change the airflow mode**

Operate the airflow mode control switch upwards or downwards.

The mode changes as follows each time the switch is operated.



- A** Air flows to the upper body.
- B** Air flows to the upper body and feet.
- C** Air flows to the feet.
- D** Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates.

■ **Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes**

Press the outside/recirculated air mode switch.

The mode switches between outside air mode (the indicator is off) and recirculated air mode (the indicator is on) each time the button is pressed.

■ Defogging the windshield

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and front side windows.

Press the windshield defogger switch.

Set the outside/recirculated air mode switch to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press the windshield defogger switch again when the windshield is defogged.

■ Defogging the rear window (if equipped)

Press the rear windshield defogger switch to defog the rear window.

The defoggers will automatically turn off after a period of time.

■ Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors (if equipped)

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press the rear windshield and outside rear view mirror defogger switch.

The defoggers will automatically turn off after a period of time.

■ Windshield wiper de-icer (if equipped)

→P.332

■ Fogging up of the windows

- The windows will easily fog up when the

humidity in the vehicle is high. Pressing "A/C" button or selecting "A/C" will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.

- If you turn "A/C" off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ When driving on dusty roads

Close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake mode be set to outside air mode and the fan speed to any setting except off.

■ Outside/recirculated air mode

- Setting to the recirculated air mode temporarily is recommended in preventing dirty air from entering the vehicle interior and helping to cool the vehicle when the outside air temperature is high.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch depending on the temperature setting or the inside temperature.

■ Registering air conditioning settings to electronic keys (vehicles with driving position memory)

- Unlocking the vehicle using an electronic key and turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode will recall that key's registered air conditioning settings.
- When the engine switch is turned off, the current air conditioning settings will automatically be registered to the electronic key that was used to unlock the vehicle.
- The system may not operate correctly if more than one electronic key is in the vicinity or if the smart entry & start system is used to unlock a passenger door.
- The doors that can recall the air conditioning setting when unlocked using the smart entry & start system can be changed.* For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

*: The doors that can recall the driving position memory are changed at the same

time.

■ **Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco mode**

- In the Eco mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency
 - Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
 - Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected
- To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations
 - Adjust the fan speed
 - Adjust the temperature setting
 - Turn off Eco mode
- Even when the driving mode is set to Eco mode, the air conditioning eco mode can be turned off by selecting the



■ **When the outside temperature is low**

The dehumidification function may not operate even when "A/C" is pressed or "A/C" is selected.

■ **Ventilation and air conditioning odors**

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
 - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
 - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.

■ **Air conditioning filter**

→P.405

■ **Customization**

Settings (e.g. A/C automatic mode switch

operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.482)

WARNING

■ **To prevent the windshield from fogging up**

Do not use the windshield defogger switch during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

■ **To prevent burns**

- Vehicles with outside rear view mirror defoggers: Do not touch the rear view mirror surfaces when the outside rear view mirror defoggers are on.
- Vehicles with windshield wiper de-icer: Do not touch the glass at lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars when the windshield wiper de-icer is on.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Air conditioning control screen

■ **Main control screen**

Using the touchpad of the Remote Touch (→P.322), select the button on the screen.

B to **E** can be adjusted by performing the following operations.

Flick operation: Move the pointer to the desired item and flick the touchpad

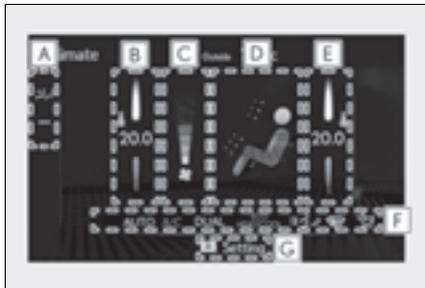
up or down.

The item can be adjusted by one level.

Trace operation: After selecting the desired item, slide your finger up or down.

The item can be adjusted by the amount that you trace.

Trace operation cannot be used while driving.



A Sub menu

Selecting the sub menu item to switch the main screen.

: Display the air conditioning control screen

: Display the option control screen

B Adjust the left-hand side temperature setting

C Adjust the fan speed setting

D Select the air flow mode

: Air flows to the upper body

: Air flows to the upper body and feet

: Air flows to the feet

: Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates

E Adjust the right-hand side temperature setting

F Function on/off indicators

When the function is on, the indicator illuminates on the control screen.

G Sub function menu

When the button on the Remote Touch is pressed, the following functions can be switched on and off.

“AUTO”: Set automatic mode on/off (→P.333)

“OFF”: Turn the fan off

“A/C”: Set cooling and dehumidification function

“DUAL”: Adjust the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately (“DUAL” mode) (→P.333)

: Set eco air conditioning mode

Option control screen

Select on the sub menu to display the option control screen.

The functions can be switched on and off. When the function is on, the indicator illuminates on the screen.



A Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately (“DUAL” mode) (→P.333)

B Set eco air conditioning mode
Air conditioning and heater output is limited to prioritize fuel economy.

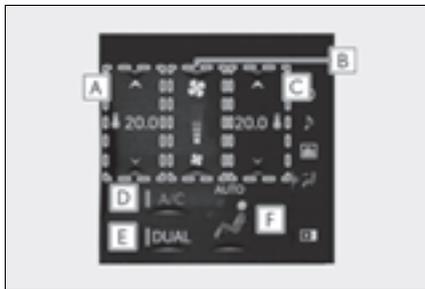
C Cooling and dehumidification function

D Select S-FLOW mode (→P.332)

E Prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades (Windshield wiper de-icer) (if equipped)

F Removing pollen from the air (Pollen removal mode)

■ Side display (10.3-inch display model only)



A Adjust the left-hand side temperature setting

B Adjust the fan speed setting

C Adjust the right-hand side temperature setting

D Set cooling and dehumidification function on/off

E Adjust the temperature for the driver's and front passenger's seats separately (“DUAL” mode) (→P.333)

F Select the air flow mode

■ Fogging up of the windows

● The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Pressing “A/C” button or selecting “A/C” will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.

● If you turn “A/C” off, the windows may fog up more easily.

● The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

■ Windshield wiper de-icer (if equipped)

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

Select  on the option control screen.

When the windshield wiper de-icer is on,  is displayed on the air conditioning control screen.

The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after a period of time.

■ Eco air conditioning mode

When Eco mode is selected using the driving mode select switch, eco air conditioning mode turns on.

When a driving mode other than Eco mode is selected, eco air conditioning mode may turn off.

■ S-FLOW mode

Priority for airflow is given to the front seats, and the airflow and air conditioning for the rear seats is effectively controlled.

Select  on the option control screen.

The indicator comes on when S-FLOW mode is on.

Select  again to return to the previ-

ous mode.

■ Pollen removal mode

Pollen is removed from the air and the air flows to the upper part of the body.

Select  on the option control screen.

When the pollen removal mode is on,  is displayed on the air conditioning control screen.

In order to prevent the windshield from fogging up when the outside air is cold, the dehumidification function may operate. The pollens are filtered out even if the pollen removal mode is turned off.

WARNING

■ To prevent burns (vehicles with windshield wiper de-icer)

Do not touch the glass at lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars when the windshield wiper de-icer is on.

Using automatic mode

- 1 Press the "AUTO" button.
- 2 Adjust the temperature setting.
- 3 To stop the operation, press the "OFF" button.

On some models: When in automatic mode, the air outlet modes and fan speed levels are not displayed in the air conditioning control panel display.

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

■ Using automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.

Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after the "AUTO" button is pressed or "AUTO" is selected.

■ Air conditioning filter

→P.405

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. A/C automatic mode switch operation) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.482)

Adjusting the temperature for driver and passenger seats separately ("DUAL" mode)

To turn on the "DUAL" mode, perform any of the following procedures:

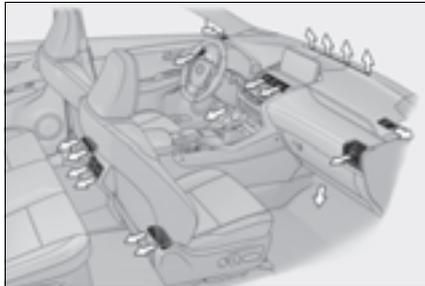
- Press the "DUAL" button.
- Select "DUAL" on the option control screen.
- Adjust the temperature setting of the passenger side with the passenger side temperature adjustment button.

The indicator comes on when the "DUAL" mode is on.

Air outlet layout and operations

■ Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume changes according to the selected air flow mode.



■ Adjusting the position of and opening and closing the air outlets

► Front



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

► Rear



- 1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down
- 2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

! WARNING

■ To not interrupt the windshield defogger from operating

Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



Heated steering wheel* /seat heaters* /seat ventilators*

* : If equipped

- Heated steering wheel

Warm up the grip of the steering wheel

- Seat heaters

Warm up the seat upholstery

- Seat ventilators

Maintain good airflow on the seat upholstery by blowing air from the seats

WARNING

■ To prevent minor burn injuries

Care should be taken if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel or seats when the heater is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters and seat ventilators

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

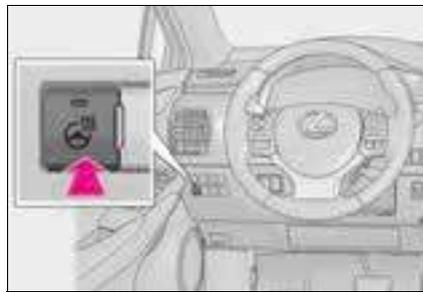
■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the functions when the engine is off.

Heated steering wheel

Turns the heated steering wheel on/off

The indicator light comes on when the heated steering wheel is operating.



■ Operation condition

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Timer function

The heated steering wheel will automatically turn off after about 30 minutes.

Seat heaters

■ Front

- ▶ Vehicles with out seat ventilators

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The level indicator (amber)  light up during operation.

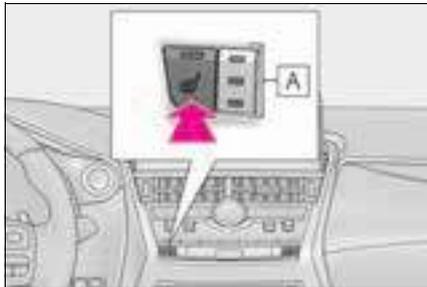


► Vehicles with seat ventilators

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The indicator (amber) and level indicator (green) **A** light up during operation.

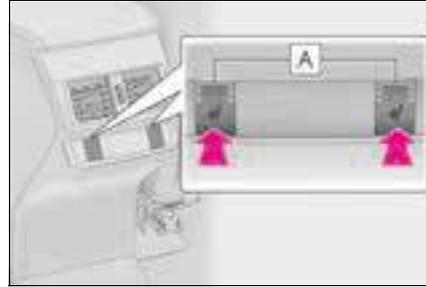


■ Rear

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The level indicator (amber) **A** lights up during operation.



■ Operation condition

The seat heaters can be used when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

⚠ WARNING

■ To prevent causes of overheating and minor burn injuries

Observe the following precautions when using a seat heater:

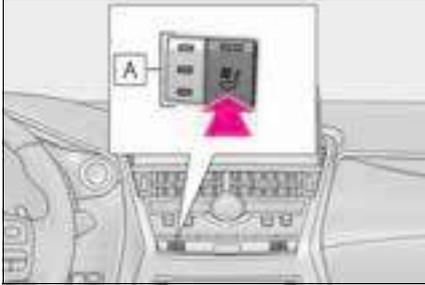
- Do not cover the seat with a blanket or cushion when using the seat heater.
- Do not use seat heater more than necessary.

Seat ventilators (front)

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

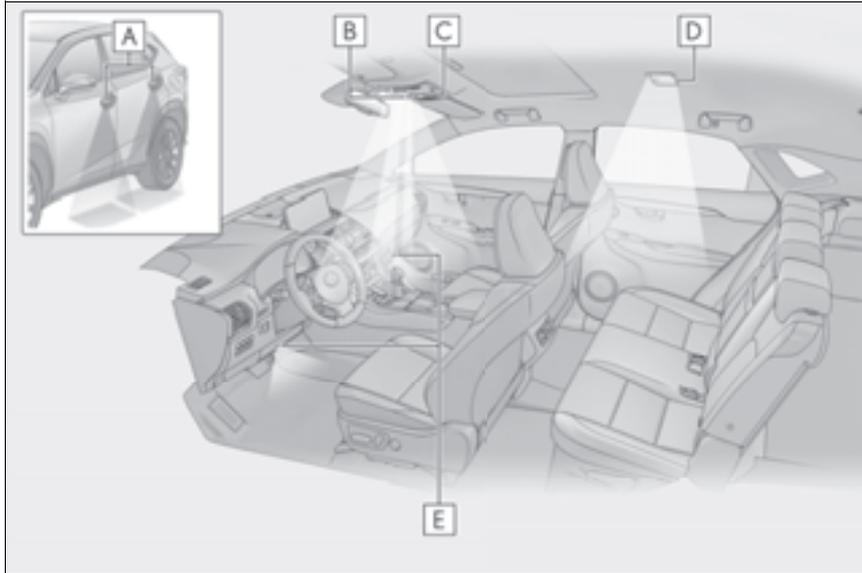
The indicator (green) and level indicator (green) **A** light up during operation.

**■ Operation condition**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

Interior lights list

Location of the interior lights



A Outer foot lights (vehicles with smart entry & start system)

B Personal lights (→P.339)

C Front interior light (→P.339)

D Rear interior light (→P.339)

E Footwell lights

- When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the footwell lights will turn on. However, if the instrument panel light control switch is turned to minimum, the footwell lights will turn off. (→P.89)
- When the shift lever is in a position other than P, the brightness of the footwell light will reduce intensity.

■ Personal lights automatic on/off

- Illuminated entry system: The lights automatically turn on/off according to engine switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed.

- If the interior lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

■ When front interior lights and personal lights do not respond as normal

- When water, dirt, etc., have adhered to the lens surface

- When operated with a wet hand
- When wearing gloves, etc.

■ **Customization**

Setting (e.g. the time elapsed before the lights turn off) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.482)

 **NOTICE**

■ **Removing light lenses**
Never remove the lens for the front interior light and personal lights. Otherwise, the lights will be damaged. If the lens need to remove, contact your Lexus dealer.

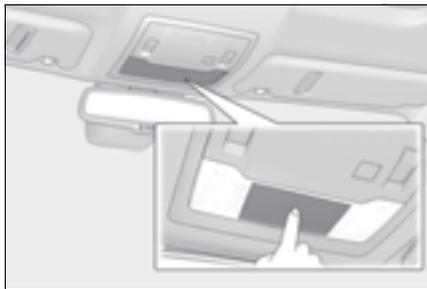
■ **To prevent battery discharge**
Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Operating interior lights

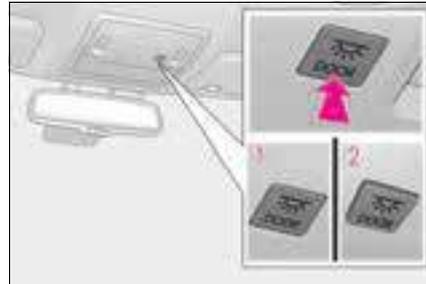
■ **Front interior light**

Turns the light on/off (touch the light)

The rear interior light also turns on/off. However, when the rear interior light has already been turned on, it will not be controlled by front interior light operations.



Turns the door position on/off



1 On

The front and rear interior lights turn on/off when a door is opened/closed.

2 Off

■ **Rear interior light**

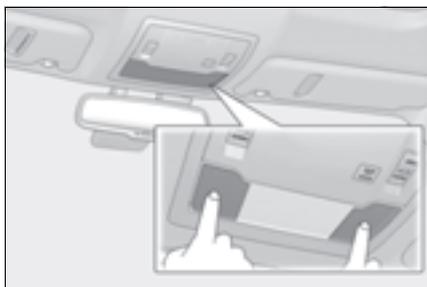
Turns the light on/off

The rear interior light is also turned on/off by the front interior light operations. If the light is turned on by front interior light operation, the rear interior light cannot turn off by pressing the switch.



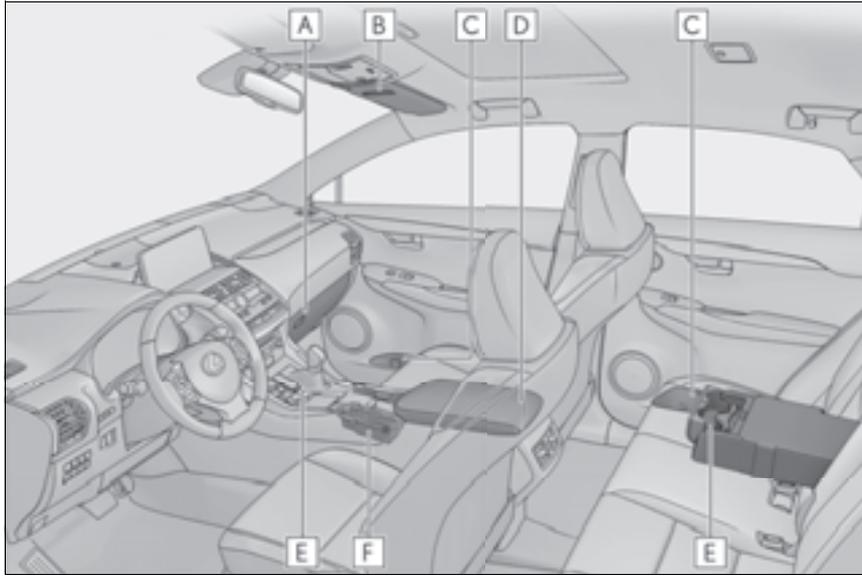
Operating personal lights

Turns the lights on/off (touch the lights)



List of storage features

Location of the storage features



- A** Glove box (→P.342)
- B** Card holders (→P.344)
- C** Bottle holders (→P.343)
- D** Console box (→P.342)
- E** Cup holders (→P.343)
- F** Auxiliary box (→P.343)

⚠ WARNING

■ Items that should not be left in the vehicle

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.

- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

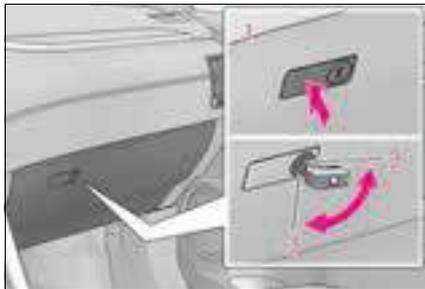
⚠ WARNING

■ **When storage compartments are not in use**

When driving or when the glove box and the console box are not in use, keep it closed.

In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open lid or the items stored inside.

Glove box



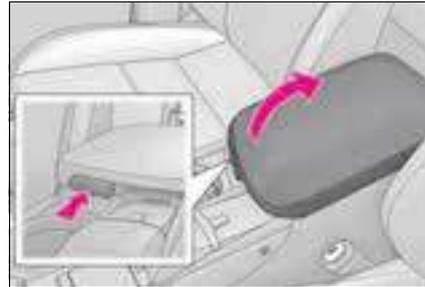
- 1 Open (press the button)
- 2 Unlock with the mechanical key
- 3 Lock with the mechanical key

■ **Glove box light**

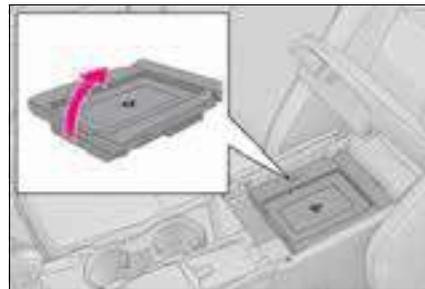
The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

Console box

- 1 Lift the lid while pushing the button to release the lock.



- 2 Vehicles with wireless charger: Lift the wireless charger.



■ **Console box tray (vehicles without wireless charger)**

The tray slides forward/backward and can be removed.



■ **Console box light**

The console box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

Cup holders/bottle holders

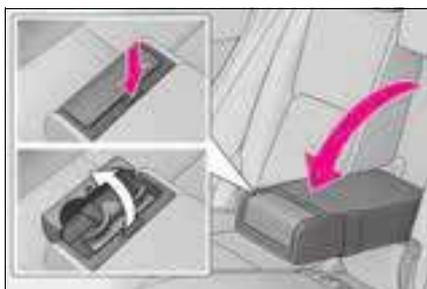
■ Cup holders

► Front



► Rear

Pull down the armrest and push the release button.

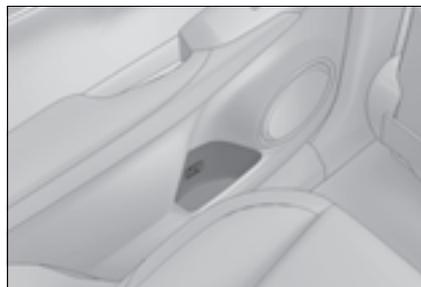


■ Bottle holders

► Front



► Rear



■ Cup holders/bottle holders

- When storing a bottle, close the cap.
- The bottle may not be stored depending on its size or shape.

⚠ WARNING

■ Items unsuitable for the cup holders/bottle holders

Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holders. Other items may be thrown out of the holders in the event of an accident or sudden braking, causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the rear cup holder

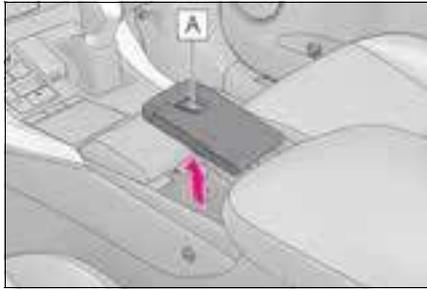
Stow the cup holder before stowing the armrest.

■ Items that should not be stowed in the bottle holders

Do not place open bottles or glass and paper cups containing liquid in the bottle holders. The contents may spill and glasses may break.

Auxiliary box

Remove the lid using the strap **A**.



■ Auxiliary box lid

- The removed auxiliary box lid can be stored on the tray in the console box.



- The back side of the auxiliary box lid can be used as a vanity mirror. (→P.349)

■ Card holders

- ▶ Inside the glove box (right-hand drive vehicles only)

Open the glove box.



- ▶ On the sun visor



Luggage compartment features

Cargo hooks

Raise the hook to use.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.



⚠ WARNING

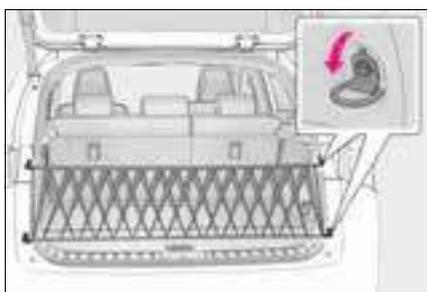
■ When cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the hooks to their stowed positions when not in use.

Cargo net hooks

Raise the hook to use.

The cargo net can be hunged, using the hook.

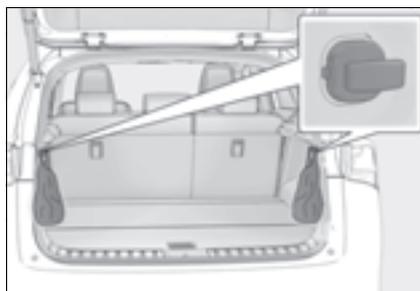


⚠ WARNING

■ When cargo net hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the hooks to their stowed positions when not in use.

Grocery bag hooks



⚠ NOTICE

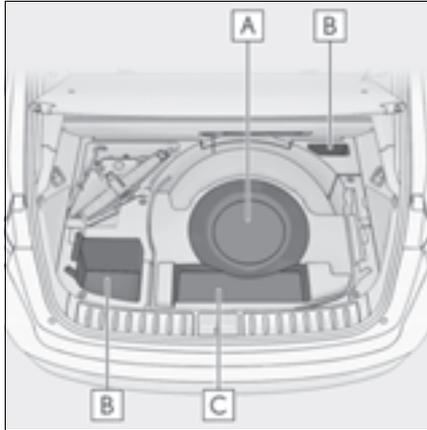
■ To prevent damage to the grocery bag hooks

Do not hang any object heavier than 5 kg (11 lb.) on the grocery bag hooks.

Deck under tray

Lift the deck board and attach the hook. (→P.346) The following item can be stowed.

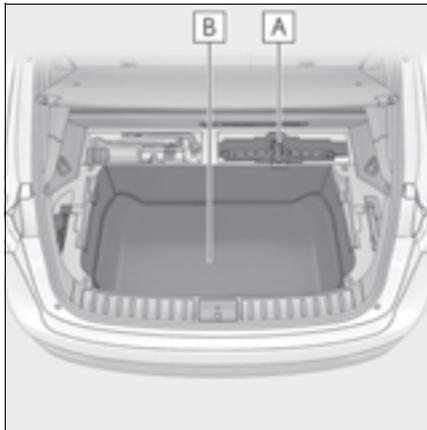
- ▶ Vehicles with compact spare tire



- A** First-aid kit and other items
- B** Accessories
- C** Warning reflector *

*: The warning reflector itself is not included as an original equipment.

- ▶ Vehicles with emergency tire puncture repair kit



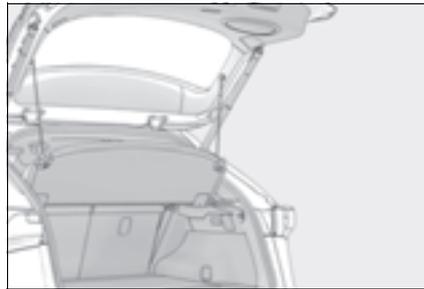
- A** Warning reflector * and other items
- B** First-aid kit and other items

*: The warning reflector itself is not

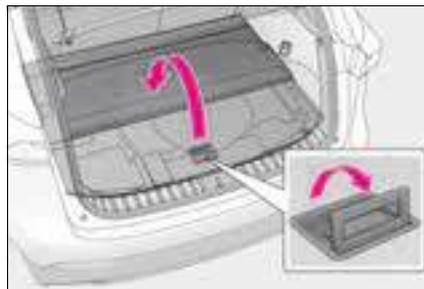
included as an original equipment.

Deck board

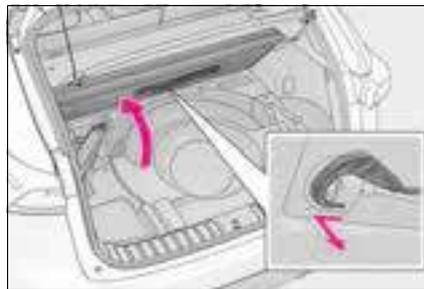
- 1 Open the back door.



- 2 Pull the lever upwards and open the deck board.



- 3 Lift the deck board and remove the hook on the backside of the deck board.



- 4 Attach the hook to the upper edge of the back door opening as shown.



■ **When attaching the side deck board**

Attach it so that the “↑ FRONT” mark points to the front side of the vehicle.



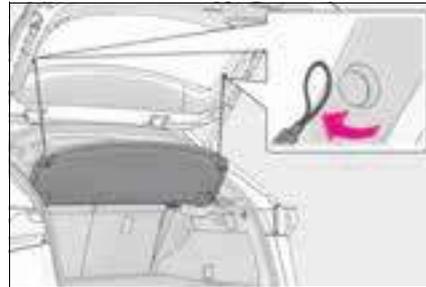
⚠ WARNING

■ **If the deck boards are opened or removed**

Return them to their original positions before driving. In the event of sudden braking, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by the deck boards or the items stored in the deck under tray.

Stowing the luggage cover

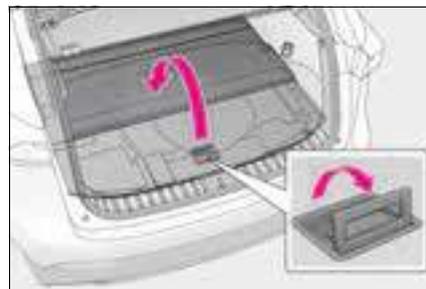
- 1 Unhook the cords.



- 2 Fold up the luggage cover.



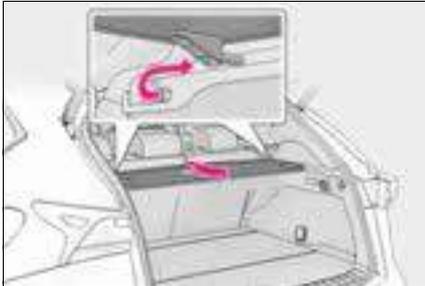
- 3 Pull the lever upwards and open the deck board.



- 4 Remove the luggage cover.

When the seatback for the rear seat is collapsed to the rear, remove the cover after

the cover most upright position. (→P.136)



- 5** Stow the luggage cover in the deck under tray while lifting the deck board.



⚠ WARNING

■ **Luggage cover**

- Do not place anything on the luggage cover. In the event of sudden braking or turning, the item may go flying and strike an occupant. This could lead to an unexpected accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not allow children to climb on the luggage cover. Climbing on the luggage cover could result in damage to the luggage cover, possibly causing death or serious injury to the child.

Other interior features

Sun visors



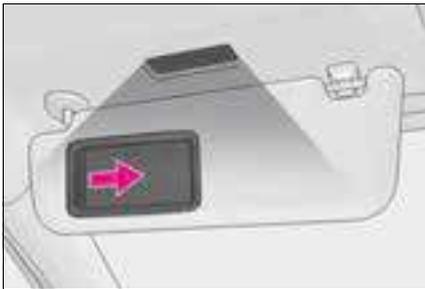
- 1 To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.
- 2 To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

Vanity mirrors

■ Sun visors

Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.

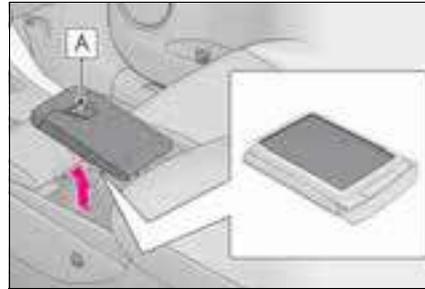


■ Auxiliary box

Remove the lid of auxiliary box using the strap **A**. (→P.343)

There is a vanity mirror on the back side of

the lid.



■ Automatic light off to prevent battery discharge

If the vanity lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the vanity mirror

When the lid of auxiliary box is removed, do not subject it to strong impacts or set heavy objects on top of it.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the vanity lights on for extended periods while the engine is off.

Clock

The GPS clock's time is automatically adjusted by utilizing GPS time information.

For details, refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".



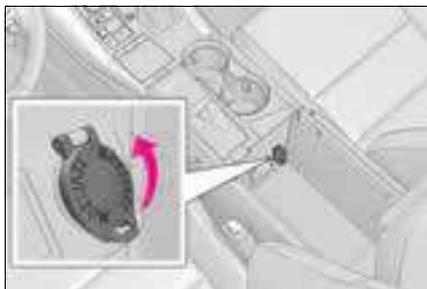
Power outlet

Please use a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC /10 A (power consumption of 120 W).

When using electronic goods, make sure that the power consumption of all the connected power outlets is less than 120 W.

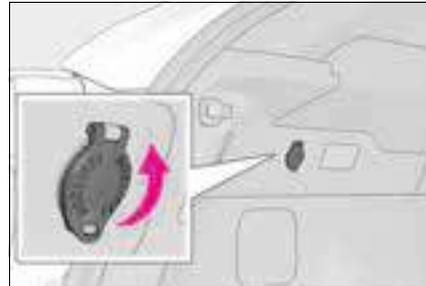
■ **Console box**

Open the lid.



■ **Luggage compartment**

Open the lid.



■ **The power outlet can be used when**

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When turning the engine switch off**

Disconnect electrical devices with charging functions, such as mobile battery packs. If such devices are left connected, the engine switch may not be turned off normally.

■ **Using power outlet**

The notch in console box allows power cables to be passed through even when the console box is closed.



 **NOTICE**

■ **When power outlet is not in use**

To avoid damaging the power outlet, close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use.

Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Wireless charger (if equipped)

A portable device can be charged by just placing Qi standard wireless charge compatible portable devices according to the Wireless Power Consortium, such as smart phones and mobile batteries, etc., on the charge area.

This function cannot be used with portable devices that are larger than the charging area. Also, depending on the portable device, it may not operate as normal. Please read the operation manual for portable devices to be used.

■ The “Qi” symbol

The “Qi” symbol is a trademark of the Wireless Power Consortium.



■ Name for all parts



- A** Power supply switch
- B** Operation indicator light
- C** Charge area

■ Using the wireless charger

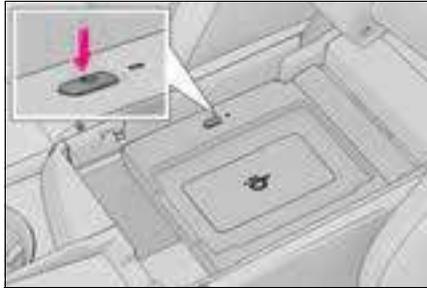
- 1 Open the console box. (→P.342)
- 2 Press the power supply switch of the wireless charger.

Switches on and off with each press of the power supply switch.

When turned on, the operation indicator light (green) comes on.

Even with the engine off, the on/off state of

the power supply switch is memorized.



- 3 Place the charging side of the portable device down.

When charging, the operation indicator light (orange) comes on.

If charging is not occurring, try placing the portable device as close to the center of the charging area as possible.

When charging is complete, the operation indicator light (green) comes on.



■ Recharging function

- When charging is complete and after a fixed time in the charge suspension state, charging restarts.
- When the portable device is moved, charging is stopped for a moment and then it restarts.

■ Lighting conditions of operation indicator light

Operation indicator light	Conditions
Turning off	When the Wireless charger power supply is off
Green (comes on)	On Standby (charging possible state)
	When charging is complete*
Orange (comes on)	When placing the portable device on the charging area (detecting the portable device)
	Charging

*: Depending on the portable device, there are cases where the operation indicator light will continue being lit up orange even after the charging is complete.

- When the operation indicator light flashes

When an error occurs, the operation indicator light flashes an orange color. Handle the error based on the following tables.

- Flashing repeatedly once every second (Orange)

Suspected causes	Handling method
Vehicle to charger communication failure.	Contact your Lexus dealer.

- Repeatedly flashes 3 times continuously (Orange)

Suspected causes	Handling method
A foreign substance is between the portable device and charge area.	Remove the foreign substance from between portable device and the charge area.
The portable device is out of sync due to the device being shifted from the center of the charge area.	Place the portable device near the center of the charge area.

- Repeatedly flashes 4 times continuously (Orange)

Suspected causes	Handling method
Temperature rising within the wireless charger.	Stop charging at once and start charging again after for a while.

■ **The wireless charger can be operated when**

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Usable portable devices**

Qi standard wireless charge standard can be used on compatible devices. However, not all Qi standard devices and compatibility are guaranteed.

Starting with mobile phones and smart phones, it is aimed for low power electrically supplied portable devices of no more than 5W.

■ **When covers and accessories are attached to portable devices**

Do not charge in situations where cover and accessories not able to handle Qi are attached to the portable device. Depending

on the type of cover and accessory, it may not be possible to charge. When charging is not performed even with the portable device placed on the charge area, remove the cover and accessories.

■ **While charging, noise enters the AM radio**

Turn off the wireless charger and confirm that the noise has decreased. If the noise decreases, continuously pushing the power supply switch of the wireless charger for 2 seconds, the frequency of the charger can be changed and the noise can be reduced. Also, on that occasion, the operation indicator light will flash orange 2 times.

■ **Important points of the wireless charger**

- If the electronic key cannot be detected within the vehicle interior, charging cannot be done. When the door is opened and closed, charging may be temporarily suspended.
- When charging, the wireless charging device and portable device will get warmer, however this is not a malfunction. When a portable device gets warm while charging, charging may stop due to the protection function on the portable device side. In this case, when the temperature of the portable device drops significantly, charge again.

■ **Operation sounds**

When the power supply is turned on, while searching for the portable device a sound will be produced, however this is not a malfunction.

354 5-5. Using the other interior features

■ Certification for the wireless charger

► For vehicles sold in Taiwan

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

► For vehicles sold in the Republic of Guatemala

FCC Provided Information:

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with Part 18 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. Any changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment.

This device complies with Part 18 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Declaration of Conformity

Trade Name:	Panasonic
Model Numbers:	AT1701 contains CA-QS03J1AJ
Responsible Party:	Panasonic Corporation of North America Two Riverfront Plaza, Newark, NJ 07102-5490
Support Contact:	http://shop.panasonic.com/support

Panasonic

PRODUCT SAFETY AND COMPLIANCE INFORMATION: PANASONIC CORPORATION OF NORTH AMERICA, 3700 RIVERSTONE PLAZA, NEWARK, NEW JERSEY 07102

FCC Declaration of Conformity Summary

Product Name	In-Vehicle Wireless Charger										
Model Number	AT1301										
Brand Name	Panasonic										
Size and Mass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 225mm (w) x 130mm (h) and 48mm (th) and mass is 513 grams 										
Priority Updated Doc	Added compliance section model AT1301 contains CA-Q9001A1										
Compliance Information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 47 CFR, FCC Part 15, Subpart C for ISM Equipment FCC's KDB 1001016-001 RF Exposure Wireless Charging Apps v02 Industry Canada RSS-210, Issue 1, dated August 2014 For Wireless Power Transfer Device (Wireless Chargers) 										
Responsible Applicant	<p>Panasonic Corporation Automotive & Industrial Systems Company Automotive Information Systems Business Division 4-2-1, Honcho-cho, Toyooka-ku, Yokohama-shi, 224-8520 Japan</p>										
Responsible Facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Panasonic Corporation, Automotive & Industrial Systems Company, Automotive Information Systems Business Division, Global Manufacturing Innovation Center, Matsuyama Factory, 7652 Sawa, Matsuyama-city, Nagano 399-8704 Japan Panasonic Automotive Systems Czech, s.r.o. U Panasonicu 206, 550 06 Paudovice-Stará Cvekva, Czech Republic Panasonic Automotive Systems Asia Pacific (Thailand) Co., Ltd. 101 Moo 2 Terasak Road, T Bangsuebsong Grog A, Bangsuebsong Samsoekarn 10540 Thailand Panasonic Automotive Systems (India) Co., Ltd. No. 90, HongGang Road, Gangdongji District, Dalian, Liaoning Province, 116033 China 										
Responsible Sales Company	<p>Panasonic Consumer Electronics Company Division of Panasonic Corporation of North America Two Riverstone Plaza, Newark, NJ 07102-5490 General Contact: info@panasonic.com/customer</p>										
Special Conditions For Compliance	In-Vehicle Wireless Charger will be installed and used exclusively within transportation vehicle and as such, it is exempt from the following requirements: (1) Part 15 digital device technical rules in accordance with §15.105(a); and (2) §15.105(b) full test information to user to appear in User Manual in accordance with §15.213.										
EMI Test Report	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>ECB</td> <td>UL, Japan</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Test Report</td> <td>01020164-B2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Model Tested</td> <td>AT1301 contains CA-Q9001A1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Date Tested</td> <td>12/14/2015</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Methodology</td> <td>FCC OET MP-4</td> </tr> </table>	ECB	UL, Japan	Test Report	01020164-B2	Model Tested	AT1301 contains CA-Q9001A1	Date Tested	12/14/2015	Methodology	FCC OET MP-4
ECB	UL, Japan										
Test Report	01020164-B2										
Model Tested	AT1301 contains CA-Q9001A1										
Date Tested	12/14/2015										
Methodology	FCC OET MP-4										

PRODUCT SAFETY AND COMPLIANCE INFORMATION: PANASONIC CORPORATION OF NORTH AMERICA, 3700 RIVERSTONE PLAZA, NEWARK, NEW JERSEY 07102



FRONT LEFT AND COMPLIANCE DEPARTMENT, ADDRESS: CORPORATION CENTER BLDG., 1-1-1 HONDA BLDG. 1/F, 4-1-8 NISHIKI, KYOTO, JAPAN

FCC Declaration of Conformity

Summary

RF Exposure Evaluation:	TCB	UK, Japan
	MPE	100% (SIN4-R1)
	Test Report	
	Model Tested	AT1501 contains CA-Q9601A1
	Date Issued	12/14/2015
	Methodology	KDB 100106 D01 RF Exposure Wireless Charging App v02
Importation:	This subject In-Vehicle Wireless Charger can be imported on behalf of Panasonic affiliated sales companies by DPA's Logistics Import Clients, or their authorized brokers, by electronically filing FCC Form 730 while declaring Part 2 with no reference to any FCC ID.	

This DoC is granted for the subject In-Vehicle Wireless Charger on the basis of the manufacturer's attested compliance with the above described conditions and in accordance with FCC Part 15 and FCC's KDB 100106 D01 RF-Exposure Wireless Charging App v02.

Certificate Number: DoC 2014-0001
 Applicant Ref No.: PAS-16-1001

Richard Mullen
 Issued By: Richard Mullen
 Issue Date: January 14, 2016

FRONT LEFT AND COMPLIANCE DEPARTMENT, ADDRESS: CORPORATION CENTER BLDG., 1-1-1 HONDA BLDG. 1/F, 4-1-8 NISHIKI, KYOTO, JAPAN

⚠ WARNING**■ Caution while driving**

When charging a portable device, for safety reasons, the driver should not operate the main part of the portable device while driving.

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators, as well as any other electrical medical device, should consult their physician about the usage of the wireless charger. The operations of the wireless charger may have an affect on medical devices.

■ To prevent damage or burns

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in a possibility of equipment failure and damage, catch fire, burns due to overheat.

- Do not insert any metallic objects between the charging area and the portable device while charging
- Do not attach stickers, metallic objects, etc., to the charger area or portable device
- Do not cover with cloth, etc., and charge
- Do not charge portable devices other than designated
- Do not attempt to dismantle for disassembly or modifications
- Do not hit or apply a strong force

⚠ NOTICE**■ Conditions in which the function may not operate correctly**

In the following conditions, it may not operate correctly

- The portable device is fully charged
- There is foreign matter between the charge area and portable device
- The temperature of the portable device gets higher from charging
- The charging surface of the portable device is facing up
- The placement of the portable device is out of alignment with the charge area
- Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
 - Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
 - Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
 - Metallic wallets or bags
 - Coins
 - Hand warmers made of metal
 - Media such as CDs and DVDs
- When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby

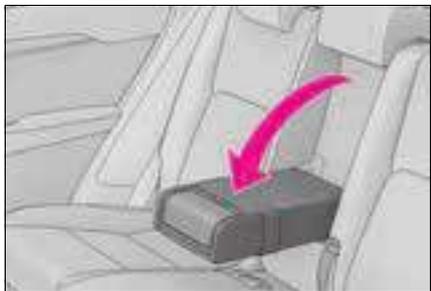
In addition, excluding the above-mentioned, when the charger does not perform normally or the operation display lamp is flashing continuously, it is considered that the wireless charger is malfunctioning. Contact your Lexus dealer.

 **NOTICE**

- **To prevent failure or damage to data**
 - Do not bring magnetic cards, such as credit cards, or magnetic recording media, etc., close to the charger while charging, otherwise, data may disappear under the influence of magnetism. Also, do not bring precision instruments such as wrist watches, etc., close to the charger, as such objects may break.
 - Do not leave portable devices in the cabin. The temperature inside the cabin may become high, when under the sun, and cause damage to the device.
- **To prevent battery discharge**
When the engine is stopped, do not use the wireless charger for a long time.

Armrest

Fold down the armrest for use.



 **NOTICE**

- **To prevent damage to the armrest**
Do not apply too much load on the armrest.

Assist grips

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body

while sitting on the seat.



 **WARNING**

- **Assist grips**
Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

 **NOTICE**

- **To prevent damage to the assist grip**
Do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

Maintenance and care

6

6-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior **360**

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior **363**

6-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements.. **366**

Scheduled maintenance **368**

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions **380**

Hood **381**

Positioning a floor jack..... **382**

Engine compartment..... **383**

Tires **392**

Tire inflation pressure..... **402**

Wheels **403**

Air conditioning filter..... **405**

Electronic key battery **406**

Checking and replacing fuses **408**

Light bulbs..... **411**

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Cleaning instructions

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

■ Self-restoring coat

The vehicle body has a self-restoring coating that is resistant to small surface scratches caused in a car wash, etc.

- The coating lasts for 5 to 8 years from when the vehicle is delivered from the plant.
- The restoration time differs depending on the depth of the scratch and outside temperature. The restoration time may become shorter when the coating is warmed by applying warm water.
- Deep scratches caused by keys, coins, etc. cannot be restored.

- Do not use wax that contain abrasives.

■ Automatic car washes

- Before washing the vehicle:
 - Fold the mirrors
 - Turn off the power back door (if equipped)

Start washing from the front of the vehicle.

Extend the mirrors before driving.

- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface and harm your vehicle's paint.
- Rear spoiler may not be washable in some automatic car washes. There may also be an increased risk of damage to vehicle.

■ High pressure car washes

As water may enter the cabin, do not bring the nozzle tip near the gaps around the doors or perimeter of the windows, or spray these areas continuously.

■ Note for a smart entry & start system

- If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:
 - Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6.0 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
 - Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.128)

■ Aluminum wheels

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent.
- Wash detergent off with water immediately after use.
- To protect the paint from damage, make sure to observe the following precautions.
 - Do not use acidic, alkaline or abrasive detergent.
 - Do not use hard brushes.
 - Do not use detergent on the wheels when they are hot, such as after driving or park-

ing in hot weather.

■ Bumpers

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners. (vehicles with water-repellent coating)

■ Front side windows water-repellent coating

- The following precautions can extend the effectiveness of the water-repellent coating.
 - Remove any dirt, etc., from the front side windows regularly.
 - Do not allow dirt and dust to accumulate on the windows for a long period. Clean the windows with a soft, damp cloth as soon as possible.
 - Do not use wax or glass cleaners that contain abrasives when cleaning the windows.
 - Do not use any metallic objects to remove condensation build up.
- When the water-repellent performance has become insufficient, the coating can be repaired. Contact your Lexus dealer.



WARNING

■ When washing the vehicle

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components, etc. to catch fire.

■ When cleaning the windshield (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

Set the wiper switch to off. If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



A Off

B AUTO

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

■ Precautions regarding the exhaust pipe

Exhaust gasses cause the exhaust pipe to become quite hot.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the pipe and the muffler cutter until it has cooled sufficiently, as touching a hot exhaust pipe can cause burns.



WARNING

■ **Precaution regarding the rear bumper with Blind Spot Monitor (if equipped)**

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, the system may malfunction. If this occurs, consult your Lexus dealer.



NOTICE

■ **To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels, etc.)**

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
 - After driving near the sea coast
 - After driving on salted roads
 - If coal tar or tree sap is present on the paint surface
 - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
 - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
 - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
 - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ **Cleaning the exterior lights**

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.

- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights.
Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ **To prevent damage to the windshield wiper arms**

When lifting the wiper arms away from the windshield, pull the driver side wiper arm upward first, and repeat for the passenger side. When returning the wipers to their original position, do so from the passenger side first.

■ **When using an automatic car wash (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

Set the wiper switch to the off position. If the wiper switch is in "AUTO", the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ **When using a high pressure car wash**

- When washing the vehicle, do not let water of the high pressure washer hit directly or the vicinity of the camera. Due to the shock from the high pressure water, it is possible the device may not operate as normal.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or resin manufactured cover), or connectors or the following parts.
The parts may be damaged if they come into contact with high-pressure water.
 - Traction related parts
 - Steering parts
 - Suspension parts
 - Brake parts
- Keep the cleaning nozzle at least 30 cm (11.9 in.) away from the vehicle body. Otherwise resin section, such as moldings and bumpers, may be deformed and damaged. Also, do not continuously hold the nozzle in the same place.

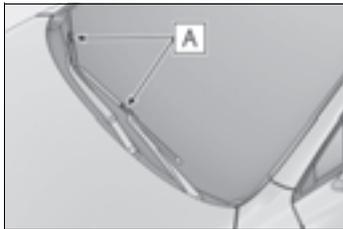
 NOTICE

- Do not spray the lower part of the windshield continuously. If water enters the air conditioning system intake located near the lower part of the windshield, the air conditioning system may not operate correctly.

■ **When raising the windshield wiper arms (except for Taiwan and Hong Kong)**

Make sure to hold the hook parts **A** of the wiper arms to raise them.

Do not hold only the wiper blades when raising them, or it may cause deformation of the wiper blades.



Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Protecting the vehicle interior

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.
- If dirt cannot be removed, wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

■ Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

■ Handling the seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

■ Front side windows with UV protective coating

The front side windows have UV protective coating. To prevent any damage to the UV protective coating, observe the following:

- If the windows are dirty, gently wipe them

with a cloth soaked in water or lukewarm water as soon as possible.

- If the windows are very dirty, do not open and close them repeatedly.

 **WARNING**

■ **Water in the vehicle**

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle. Doing so may cause electrical components, etc., to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P.42)
An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)**

Do not use a polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

 **NOTICE**

■ **Cleaning detergents**

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
 - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
 - Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Do not use a polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ **Preventing damage to leather surfaces**

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ **Water on the floor**

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water. Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ **When cleaning the inside of the windshield (vehicles with Lexus Safety System+)**

Do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens. Also, do not touch the lens. (→P.217)

■ **Cleaning the inside of the windshield glass and rear window**

- Do not use a glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

**NOTICE****■ Cleaning the front side windows**

Do not use any compound or abrasive product (e.g., glass cleaner, detergent, wax) to clean the windows. It may damage the coating.

Cleaning the areas with satin-finish metal accents

- Remove dirt using a water-dampened soft cloth or synthetic chamois.
- Wipe the surface with a dry soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.

■ Cleaning the areas with satin-finish metal accents

The metal areas use a layer of real metal for the surface. It is necessary to clean them regularly. If dirty areas are left uncleaned for long periods of time, they may be difficult to clean.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.

- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in

a shaded and ventilated area.

■ Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends the following maintenance:

WARNING

■ If your vehicle is not properly maintained

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible death or serious injury.

■ Handling of the battery

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P.389)

Scheduled maintenance

- Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.
The interval for scheduled maintenance is determined by the odometer reading or the time interval, whichever comes first, shown in the schedule.
Maintenance beyond the last period should be performed at the same intervals.
- Where to go for the maintenance service?
It makes good sense to take your vehicle to your local Lexus dealer for the maintenance service as well

as other inspections and repairs. Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists receiving the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips and in-dealership training programs. They learn to work on Lexus before they work on your vehicle, rather than while they are working on it. Doesn't that seem like the best way?

Your Lexus dealer has invested a lot of money in special Lexus tools and service equipment. It helps them to do the job better and at less cost. Your Lexus dealer's service department will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically.

Rubber hoses (for cooling and heater system, brake system and fuel system) should be inspected by a qualified technician according to the Lexus maintenance schedule. Rubber hoses are particularly important maintenance items. Have any deteriorated or damaged hoses replaced immediately. Note that rubber hoses will deteriorate with age, resulting in swelling, chafing or cracking.

Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools. Simple instructions for how to perform

them are presented in this section.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that repairs and maintenance be conducted by your Lexus dealer who will keep a record of maintenance on your vehicle. This record could be helpful should you ever require Warranty Service.

■ Does your vehicle need repairs?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine misfire (or misses), stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driven straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal (→P.424)

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

Scheduled maintenance

Perform maintenance by the schedule as follows:

Maintenance schedule requirements

Your vehicle needs to be serviced according to the normal maintenance schedule. (See "Maintenance schedule".)

If you mainly operate your vehicle under one or more of the special operating conditions below, some of the maintenance schedule items need to be serviced more frequently in order to keep your vehicle in good condition. (See "Additional maintenance schedule".)

<p>A. Road Conditions</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow 2. Operating on dusty roads (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry) 3. Operating on road which has road salt applied 	<p>B. Driving Conditions</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Except for South Africa: Heavily loaded vehicle (Example: Using a car top carrier, etc.) For South Africa: Heavily loaded vehicle (Example: Towing a trailer, using a car top carrier, etc.) 2. Repeated short trips less than 8 km (5 miles) and outside temperatures remain below freezing (Engine temperature will not reach to normal temperature) 3. Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use 4. Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours
--	---

Maintenance schedule (except for South Africa)

Maintenance operations:

I = Inspect, correct or replace as necessary

R = Replace, change or lubricate

T = Tighten to specified torque

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING								MONTHS	
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70		80
		x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
BASIC ENGINE COMPONENTS											
1	Drive belts		I			I			I		24
2	Engine oil	NX 200	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. << See note 1.>>								
		NX 300 (except for Hong Kong and Macao)	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. << See note 1.>>								
		NX 300 (for Hong Kong and Macao)	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12
3	Engine oil filter	NX 200	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. << See note 1.>>								
		NX 300 (except for Hong Kong and Macao)	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. << See note 1.>>								
		NX 300 (for Hong Kong and Macao)	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12
4	Cooling and heater system <<See note 2.>>				I				I	24	
5	Engine coolant (NX300 only: Include intercooler coolant) <<See note 3.>>				I				I	-	

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING								MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)	x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
	x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
6	Exhaust pipes and mountings		I		I		I		I	12
IGNITION SYSTEM										
7	Spark plugs	NX 200	Replace at every 100000 km (60000 miles)							
		NX 300						R		
8	Battery	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	12
FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS										
9	Fuel filter <<See note 4.>>								R	96
10	Air cleaner filter		I		R		I		R	I: 24 R: 48
11	Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, connections and fuel vapor control valve <<See note 2.>>				I				I	24
12	Charcoal canister				I				I	24
13	Fuel injection system (NX 300) <<See note 5.>>	Add injector cleaner to the fuel tank every 10000 km (6000 miles) <<See note 6.>>								
CHASSIS AND BODY										
14	Brake pedal <<See note 7.>>	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
15	Brake pads and discs	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
16	Brake fluid	I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I: 6 R: 24
17	Brake pipes and hoses		I		I		I		I	12
18	Vacuum pump for brake booster	Inspect at every 200000 km (120000 miles)								
19	Steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box		I		I		I		I	12
20	Drive shaft boots		I		I		I		I	24
21	Suspension ball joints and dust covers		I		I		I		I	12

SERVICE INTERVAL: (Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)	ODOMETER READING									MONTHS
	x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
	x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
22	Automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)				I				I	24
23	Transfer oil (AWD models)		I		R		I		R	I: 12 R: 48
24	Rear differential oil (AWD models)		I		R		I		R	I: 12 R: 48
25	Propeller shaft (AWD models)		T		T		T		T	T: 12
26	Front and rear suspension		I		I		I		I	12
27	Tires and inflation pressure	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
28	Lights, horns, wipers and washers	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
29	Air conditioner filter	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12
	Refrigerant amount for air conditioner		I		I		I		I	12

NOTE:

1. Replace both the engine oil and oil filter, even when the maintenance reminder does not appear, after 12 months have passed, or when driven over 10000 km (6000 miles) since the last oil change.
This may cause the maintenance reminder appear even when driven less than 10000 km (6000 miles).
Replace both engine oil and oil filter every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months, in which the vehicle is mainly driven in dirt or dusty roads, when the maintenance reminder does not appear.
2. After 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months inspection, inspect at every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 12 months.
3. First replace at 160000 km (100000 miles), then replace at every 80000 km (50000 miles).
4. Including the filter in fuel tank.
5. Toyota genuine fuel injector cleaner or equivalent.
6. For Costa Rica, Dominican Republic, Guatemala, Honduras, Nicaragua, Panama, El Salvador, Peru, Bolivia, Philippines, Macao, Aruba, Mongolia, Egypt, Bahrain, and Saudi Arabia only.

7. Parking brake inspection is not necessary.

Additional maintenance schedule (except for South Africa)

Refer to the following table for normal maintenance schedule items requiring more frequent service specific to the type of severe conditions. (For outline, see “Maintenance schedule requirements”.)

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow	
Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection * of brake pipes and hoses	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
Inspection * of steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection * of drive shaft boots	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 12 months
Inspection * of suspension ball joints and dust covers	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
Tightening of propeller shaft (AWD models)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
Inspection * of front and rear suspension	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note 1.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

* : Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

A-2: Operating on dusty roads (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry)	
Replacement of engine oil <<See note 2.>>	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
Replacement of engine oil filter <<See note 2.>>	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
Inspection * or replacement of air cleaner filter	I: Every 2500 km (1500 miles) or 3 months R: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 48 months
Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months

A-2: Operating on dusty roads (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry)	
Tightening of propeller shaft (AWD models)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
Replacement of air conditioner filter <<See note 3.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 12 months

* : Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

A-3: Operating on road which has road salt applied	
Tightening of propeller shaft (AWD models)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle (Example: Using a car top carrier, etc.)	
Replacement of engine oil <<See note 2.>>	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
Replacement of engine oil filter <<See note 2.>>	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection * or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months
Replacement of transfer oil (AWD models)	Every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 24 months
Replacement of rear differential oil (AWD models)	Every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 24 months
Tightening of propeller shaft (AWD models)	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
Inspection * of front and rear suspension	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note 1.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

* : Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-2: Repeated short trips less than 8 km (5 miles) and outside temperatures remain below freezing (Engine temperature will not reach to normal temperature)	
Replacement of engine oil <<See note 2.>>	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
Replacement of engine oil filter <<See note 2.>>	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months

* : Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use	
Replacement of engine oil <<See note 2.>>	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
Replacement of engine oil filter <<See note 2.>>	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
Inspection * or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months

* : Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-4: Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours	
Inspection * or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months
Replacement of transfer oil (AWD models)	Every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 24 months
Replacement of rear differential oil (AWD models)	Every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 24 months

* : Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

NOTE:

1. For seat mounting bolts, front and rear suspension member retaining bolts.
2. NX 300 (for Hong Kong and Macao)

3. Except for Taiwan

Maintenance schedule (for South Africa)

Maintenance operations:

I = Inspect, correct or replace as necessary

R = Replace, change or lubricate

T = Tighten to specified torque

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING						MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)	x1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	
	x1000 miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	
BASIC ENGINE COMPONENTS								
1	Drive belts	I	I	I	I	I	I	12
2	Engine oil	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. << See note 1.>>						
3	Engine oil filter	Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. << See note 1.>>						
4	Cooling and heater system		I		I		I	24
5	Engine coolant (Include intercooler coolant) <<See note 2.>>		I		I		I	-
6	Exhaust pipes and mountings	I	I	I	I	I	I	12
IGNITION SYSTEM								
7	Spark plugs				R			-
8	Battery	I	I	I	I	I	I	12
FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS								
9	Fuel filter <<See note 3.>>					R		96
10	Air cleaner filter	I	I	I	R	I	I	I: 24 R: 48
11	Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, connections and fuel vapor control valve		I		I		I	24
12	Charcoal canister			I			I	24
CHASSIS AND BODY								

SERVICE INTERVAL: (Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)	ODOMETER READING							MONTHS
	x1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	
	x1000 miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	
13 Brake pedal <<See note 4.>>		I		I		I		24
14 Brake pads and discs		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
15 Brake fluid		I	R	I	R	I	R	I: 12 R: 24
16 Brake pipes and hoses		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
17 Vacuum pump for brake booster	Inspect at every 200000 km (120000 miles)							
18 Steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
19 Propeller shaft (AWD models)		T	T	T	T	T	T	6
20 Drive shaft boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	24
21 Suspension ball joints and dust covers		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
22 Automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)				I			I	36
23 Transfer oil (AWD models)		I	R	I	R	I	R	I: 12 R: 48
24 Rear differential oil (AWD models)		I	R	I	R	I	R	I: 12 R: 48
25 Front and rear suspension		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
26 Tires and inflation pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
27 Lights, horns, wipers and washers		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
28 Air conditioner filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	12
Refrigerant amount for air conditioner		I	I	I	I	I	I	12

NOTE:

1. Replace both the engine oil and oil filter, even when the maintenance reminder does not appear, after 12 months have passed, or when driven over 15000 km (9000 miles) since the last oil change.

This may cause the maintenance reminder appear even when driven less than 15000 km (9000 miles).

Replace both engine oil and oil filter every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months, in which the vehicle is mainly driven in dirt or dusty roads, when the maintenance reminder does not appear.

2. First replace at 160000 km (96000 miles), then replace at every 80000 km (48000 miles).

3. Including the filter in fuel tank.

4. Parking brake inspection is not necessary.

Additional maintenance schedule (for South Africa)

Refer to the following table for normal maintenance schedule items requiring more frequent service specific to the type of severe conditions. (For outline, see "Maintenance schedule requirements".)

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow	
Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
Inspection* of brake pipes and hoses	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
Inspection* of steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
Tightening of propeller shaft (AWD models)	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 3 months
Inspection* of drive shaft boots	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months
Inspection* of suspension ball joints and dust covers	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months

* : Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

A-2: Operating on dusty roads (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry)	
Inspection * or replacement of air cleaner filter	I: Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months R: Every 60000 km (36000 miles) or 48 months
Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
Tightening of propeller shaft (AWD models)	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 3 months
Replacement of air conditioner filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months

* : Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

A-3: Operating on road which has road salt applied	
Tightening of propeller shaft (AWD models)	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 3 months

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle (Example: Towing a trailer, using a car top carrier, etc.)	
Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
Tightening of propeller shaft (AWD models)	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 3 months
Inspection * or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months
Inspection * of front and rear suspension	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months

* : Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use	
Inspection * of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
Inspection * or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months

* : Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-4: Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours	
Inspection * or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months

* : Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

NOTE:

For seat mounting bolts, front and rear suspension member retaining bolts.

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Maintenance

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P.389)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Engine/inter-cooler coolant level (→P.387)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology • “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” is pre-mixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P.384)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)

Items	Parts and tools
Fuses (→P.408)	Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P.411)	–
Radiator and condenser (→P.388)	–
Tire inflation pressure (→P.402)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P.391)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc., right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel. Fuel fumes are flammable.

⚠ WARNING

● Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately. If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

■ **When working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille**

Be sure the engine switch is off. With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P.388)

■ **Safety glasses**

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc., from getting in your eyes.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **If you remove the air cleaner filter**

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

■ **If the fluid level is low or high**

It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high. If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

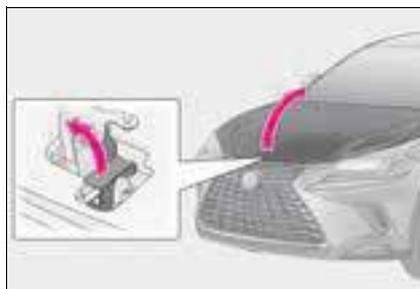
Hood**Opening the hood**

- 1 Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



- 2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.

**⚠ WARNING**

■ **Pre-driving check**

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked. If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

Positioning a floor jack

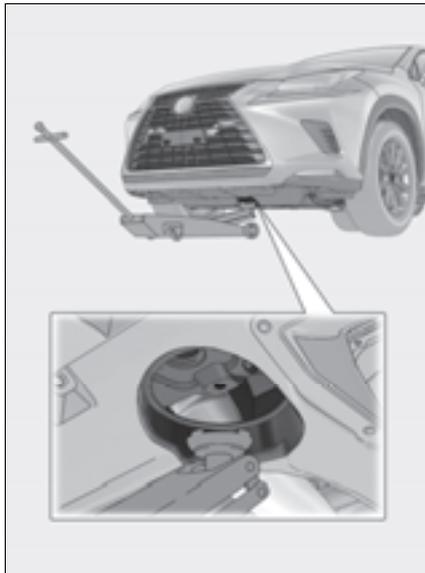
When using a floor jack, follow the instructions in the manual provided with the jack and perform the operation safely.

When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly.

Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

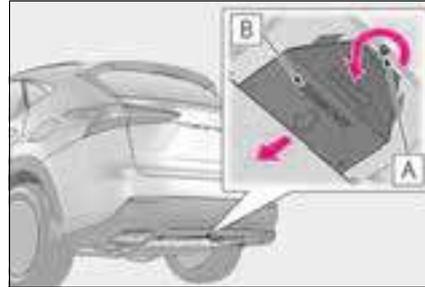
Location of the jack point

■ Front



■ Rear

- 1 Remove the bolt **A** and then remove the cover **B**.



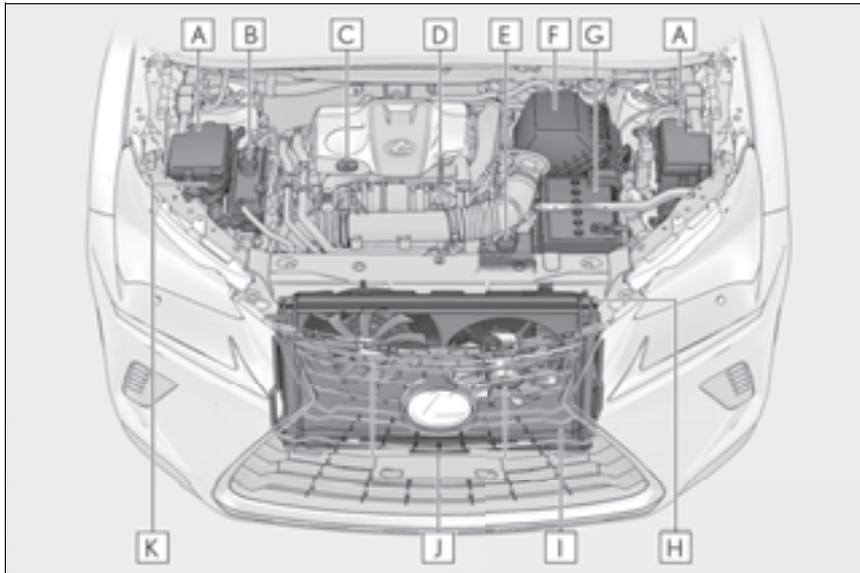
- 2 Rise your vehicle with a floor jack.



Engine compartment

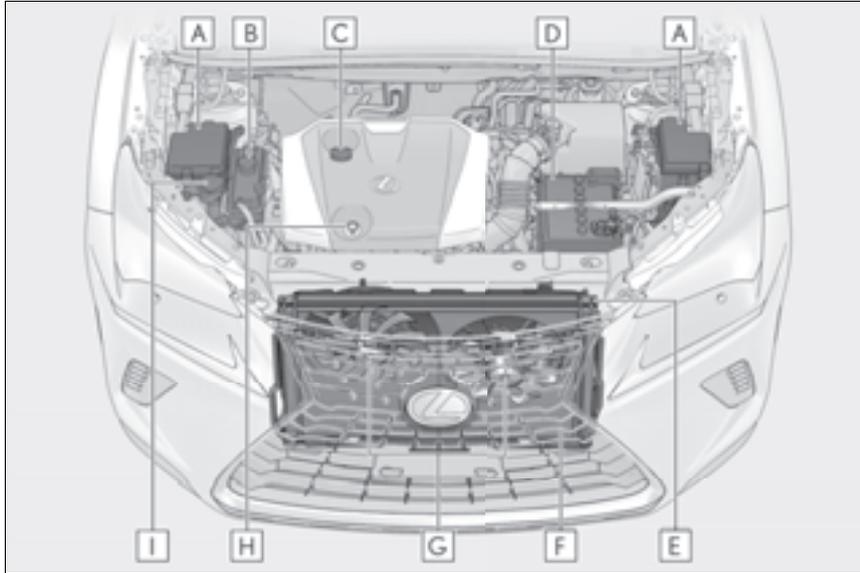
Components

► NX300



- A** Fuse boxes (→P.408)
- B** Engine coolant reservoir (→P.387)
- C** Engine oil filler cap (→P.384)
- D** Engine oil level dipstick (→P.384)
- E** Intercooler coolant reservoir (→P.387)
- F** Air cleaner (→P.388)
- G** Battery (→P.389)
- H** Radiator (→P.388)
- I** Condenser (→P.388)
- J** Electric cooling fans
- K** Washer fluid tank (→P.391)

► NX200



- A** Fuse boxes (→P.408)
- B** Engine coolant reservoir (→P.387)
- C** Engine oil filler cap (→P.384)
- D** Battery (→P.389)
- E** Radiator (→P.388)
- F** Condenser (→P.388)
- G** Electric cooling fans
- H** Engine oil level dipstick (→P.384)
- I** Washer fluid tank (→P.391)

Checking and adding the engine oil

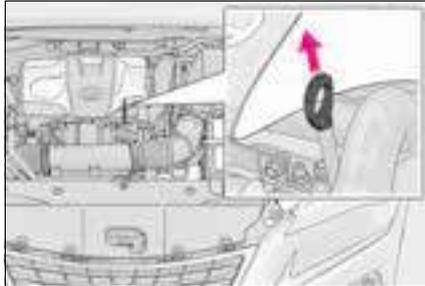
With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ **Checking the engine oil**

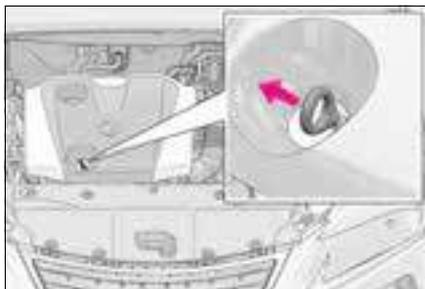
- 1** Park the vehicle on level ground. After warming up the engine and turning off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

▶ NX300



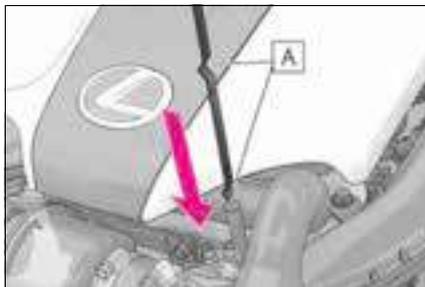
▶ NX200



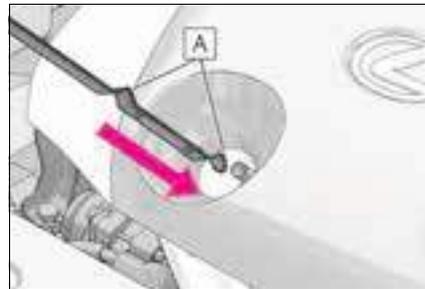
3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

4 Reinsert the dipstick fully with its protruding areas (A in the illustration) pointing towards engine.

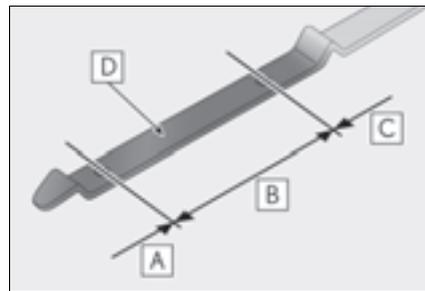
▶ NX300



▶ NX200



5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.



A Low

B Normal

C Excessive

D Measuring side

6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

■ **Checking the oil type and preparing the items needed**

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

- Engine oil selection

→P.473

- Oil quantity (Low → Full)

1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp.qt.)

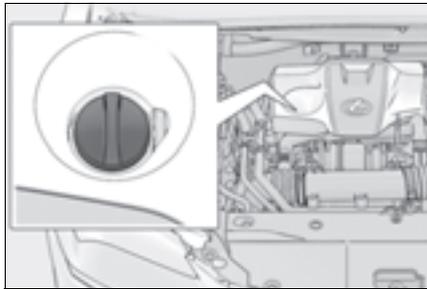
● Items

Clean funnel

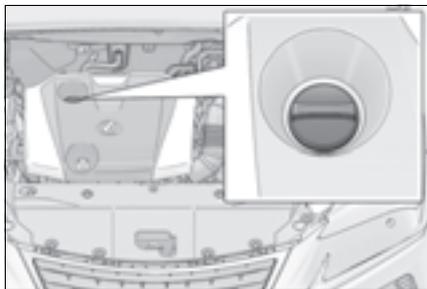
■ Adding engine oil

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

▶ NX300



▶ NX200



- 1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.
- 2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.
- 3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ Engine oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and

engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, when towing, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

■ After changing the engine oil (Except for Hong Kong and Macao)

The engine oil maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

- 1 Press < or > of the meter control switches and select



- 2 Press ^ or v of the meter control switches, select the "Vehicle Settings" and then press .
- 3 Press ^ or v of the meter control switches, select the "Oil Maintenance" and then press and hold the .
- 4 Select the "Yes" and push .
- 5 A message is displayed on the multi-information display. "The Data Has Been Reset" is displayed on the multi-information display.

⚠ WARNING**■ Used engine oil**

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground. Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE**■ To prevent serious engine damage**

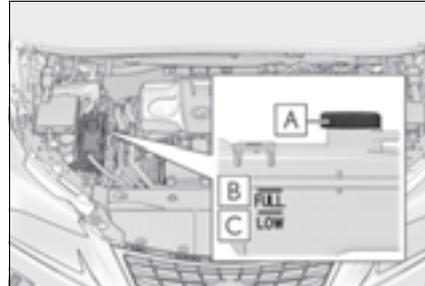
Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ When replacing the engine oil

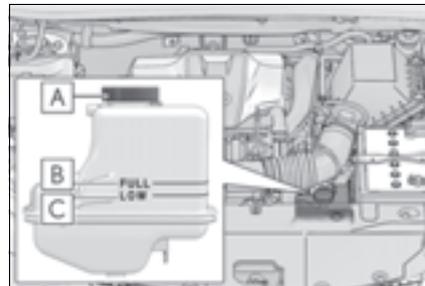
- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.
- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Checking the engine coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "FULL" and "LOW" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.

■ Engine coolant reservoir**A** Reservoir cap**B** "FULL" line**C** "LOW" line

If the level is on or below the "LOW" line, add coolant up to the "FULL" line. (→P.465)

■ Intercooler coolant reservoir (NX300 only)**A** Reservoir cap**B** "FULL" line**C** "LOW" line

If the level is on or below the "LOW" line, add coolant up to the "FULL" line. (→P.465)

■ Coolant selection

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite,

and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology. "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing**

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.

If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

⚠ WARNING

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir and the intercooler coolant reservoir cap. The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **When adding coolant**

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

■ **If you spill coolant**

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Checking the radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser, and clear away any foreign objects. If either of the above parts is extremely

dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ **When the engine is hot**

Do not touch the radiator or condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

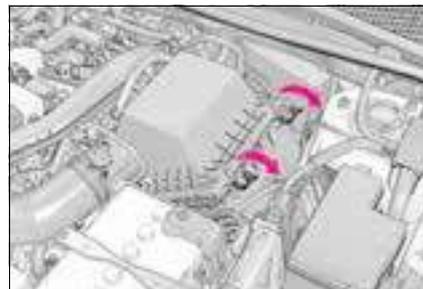
■ **When the electric cooling fans are operating**

Do not touch the engine compartment. With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fans may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. Be sure the engine switch is off when working near the electric cooling fans or radiator grille.

Checking the air cleaner filter (NX300 only)

Check the air cleaner filter as follows:

- 1 Release the clips.



- 2 Lift the cover and take out the air cleaner filter.

Inspect the outer surface of the filter, and replace the filter if it is extremely dirty. If the filter is only moderately dusty, use com-

pressed air to blow dust out of the filter.



- After checking, make sure the filter is set properly. Fully engage the claws and then secure the upper cover of the air cleaner case using the clips.



⚠ WARNING

■ **To prevent inhaling dust**
Wear a respirator when using compressed air to clean the air cleaner filter.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **To prevent damaging the engine**
Do not drive with the air cleaner filter removed. Doing so causes excessive engine wear.

Checking the battery

Check the battery as follows.

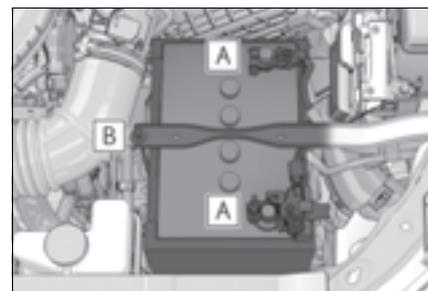
■ Caution symbols

The meanings of each caution symbol on the top of the battery are as follows:

	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks
	Shield eyes
	Keep away from children
	Battery acid
	Note operating instructions
	Explosive gas

■ Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.



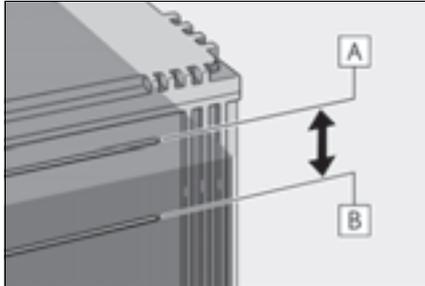
A Terminals

B Hold-down clamp

■ Checking battery fluid

Check that the level is between the "UPPER LEVEL" and "LOWER

LEVEL” lines.



A “UPPER LEVEL” line

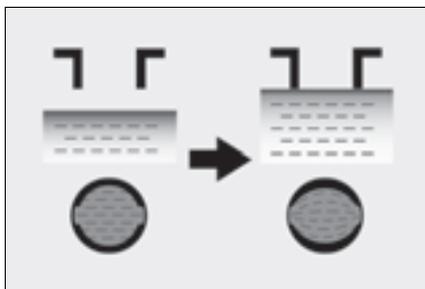
B “LOWER LEVEL” line

If the fluid level is at or below the “LOWER LEVEL” line, add distilled water.

■ **Adding distilled water**

- 1 Remove the vent plug.
- 2 Add distilled water.

If the “UPPER LEVEL” line cannot be seen, check the fluid level by looking directly at the cell.



- 3 Put the vent plug back on and close it securely.

■ **Before recharging**

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following precautions before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.

- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

■ **After recharging/reconnecting the battery**

- The engine may not start. Follow the procedure below to initialize the system.
 - 1 Shift the shift lever to P.
 - 2 Open and close any of the doors.
 - 3 Restart the engine.
- Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine with the engine switch in ACCESSORY mode. The engine may not start with the engine switch turned off. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.

- The engine switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is disconnected and reconnected, the vehicle will return the engine switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine switch before disconnecting the battery. Take extra care when connecting the battery if the engine switch mode prior to the battery being disconnected is unknown.

If the system will not start even after multiple attempts at all the methods above, contact your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Chemicals in the battery**

Batteries contain poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

■ Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

■ Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.
- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

■ When there is insufficient battery fluid

Do not use if there is insufficient fluid in the battery. There is a possible danger that the battery may explode.

⚠ NOTICE**■ When recharging the battery**

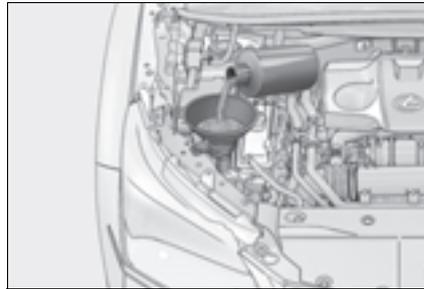
Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

■ When adding distilled water

Avoid overfilling. Water spilled during battery recharging may cause corrosion.

Checking and adding the washer fluid

If none of the washer does not work or the “Windshield Washer Fluid Low” appears on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.

**⚠ WARNING****■ When adding washer fluid**

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or operating as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine, etc.

 **NOTICE**

■ **Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid**
Do not use soapy water or engine anti-freeze instead of washer fluid. Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces, as well as damaging the pump leading to problems of the washer fluid not spraying.

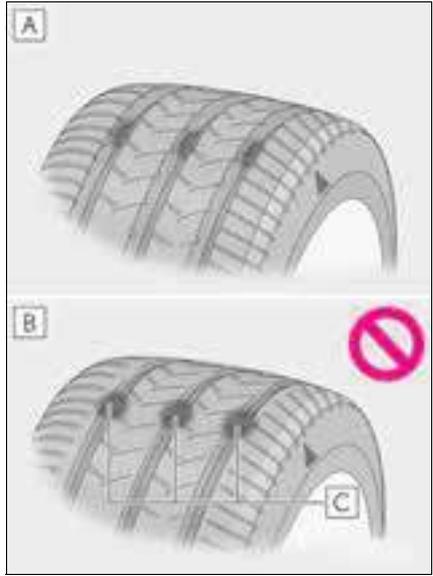
■ **Diluting washer fluid**
Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary. Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread. Check the spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.



- A** New tread
- B** Worn tread
- C** Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a "TWI" or  mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.

Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

■ When to replace your vehicle's tires

Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage.
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage.

If you are not sure, consult with your Lexus dealer.

■ Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

■ If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

WARNING

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents. Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drive train as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns. Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).

- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle. Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
- Do not tow if your vehicle has a compact spare tire installed.

NOTICE

■ Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.

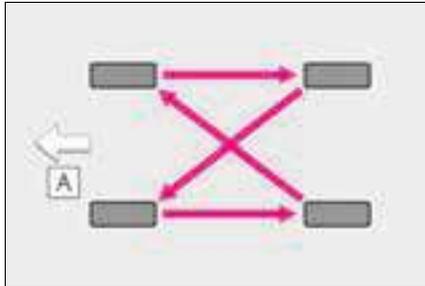
To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that you rotate your tires approximately at the following intervals:

2WD models: Every 10000 km (6000 miles)

AWD models: Every 5000 km (3000 miles)

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

(vehicle with the tire pressure warning system)



A Front

Tire pressure warning system (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

- If the tire pressure drops below a predetermined level, the driver is warned by a warning light. (→P.429)
- For vehicles with the tire inflation pressure display function, the tire pressure detected by the tire pressure warning system can be displayed on the multi-information display.



■ Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

■ Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly

- In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.
 - If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
 - A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
 - A tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
 - Tire chains, etc. are equipped.
 - An auxiliary-supported run-flat tire is equipped.
 - If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
 - If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
 - If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
 - If wheel without the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is used.
 - If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- Performance may be affected in the following situations.
 - Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
 - When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device
- When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.
- When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

■ Certification for tire pressure warning system

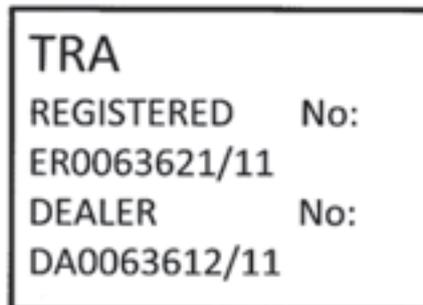
FCC ID: PAXPMVC010

NOTE

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC WARNING

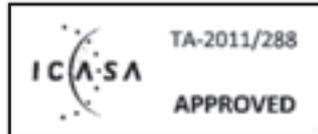
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.





Type approval No.: TRC/LPD/2010/44

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) Transmitter conforms to the requirement of ICASA.



經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

43514/SDPPI/2015
3505

Complies With
FDA Standards
DA121418

CNE COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES
H-17756



"Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário."



NR: 2018-09-I-000432

Name and Address of local dealer

Toyotoshi S.A.

Av. Mariscal López esq. Víctor Cáceres, San Lorenzo, Central,
Paraguay

[Para los vehículos que se venden en Paraguay]

Nombre del proveedor en Paraguay: Toyotoshi S.A.

Dirección: Av. Mariscal Lopez 2801/2899 Asuncion, Paraguay



WARNING

■ **Caution regarding interference with electronic device (vehicles with the tire inflation pressure display function)**

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should not come within 450 mm (17.7 in.) of the tire pressure warning system initiators. The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices.



- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves. Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed,

new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. Have tire pressure warning valve and transmitter ID codes registered by your Lexus dealer. (→P.402)

■ When replacing the tires and wheels

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 20 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.



NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps

- When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.
- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

■ To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. Make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when replacing the tire. (→P.394, 404)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

■ The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When adjusting the tire inflation pressure.
- When the tire pressure is changed for different driving conditions such as high speed driving, etc.
- When rotating the tires.
- When changing the tire.

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

■ How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

- 1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn the engine switch off.

Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

- 2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. (→P.479)

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the

specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

- 3 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 4 Press  or  of the meter control switches and select .



- 5 Press  or  of the meter control switches, select the "Vehicle Settings" and then press .
- 6 Press  or  of the meter control switches, select the "TPMS" and then press and hold the .

The "Tire Pressure Recalibrating. Please Wait Until Complete" will be displayed on the multi-information display and the tire pressure warning light will blink slowly 3 times.

When the message disappears, initialization is complete.

■ Initializing the tire pressure warning system

Initialize the system with the tire inflation pressure adjusted to the specified level.

■ The initialization operation

- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation

pressure adjustment.

- If you have accidentally turned the engine switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to restart the initialization again as initialization will restart automatically when the engine switch has been turned to IGNITION ON mode for the next time.
- If you accidentally restart the initialization when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.

■ Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system

The warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with the conditions under which it was initialized. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

■ When initialization of the tire pressure warning system has failed

Initialization can be completed in a few minutes. However, in the following cases, the settings have not been recorded and the system will not operate properly. If repeated attempts to record tire inflation pressure settings are unsuccessful, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- When initializing the tire pressure warning system, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
- After carrying out the initialization procedure, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute then stays on after driving for 20 minutes.

**WARNING****■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system**

Do not initialize tire inflation pressure without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

Registering ID codes

The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is equipped with a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code. Have the ID code registered by your Lexus dealer.

Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks. (→P.479)

■ Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drive train

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.
- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.
- Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

⚠ WARNING**■ Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance**

Keep your tires properly inflated. If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges in the road, etc.)

⚠ NOTICE**■ When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure**

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on. If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

* : Conventionally referred to as offset.

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

■ When replacing wheels (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P.394, 404)

**WARNING****■ When replacing wheels**

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

■ Use of defective wheels prohibited

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels. Doing so could cause the tire to leak air during driving, possibly causing an accident.

**NOTICE****■ Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

Aluminum wheel precautions

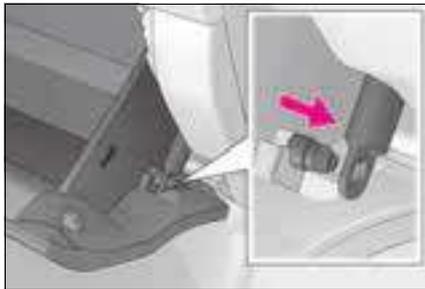
- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).
- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

Air conditioning filter

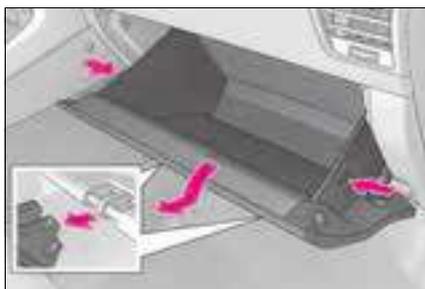
The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

Removal method

- 1 Turn the engine switch off.
- 2 Open the glove box. Slide off the damper.

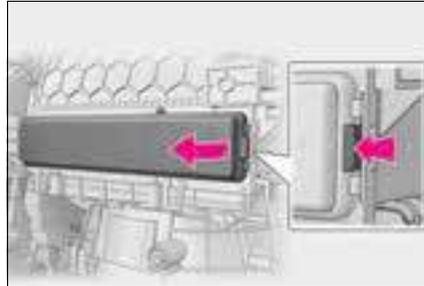


- 3 Push in the glove box on the vehicle's outer side to disconnect the claws. Then pull out the glove box and disconnect the lower claws.

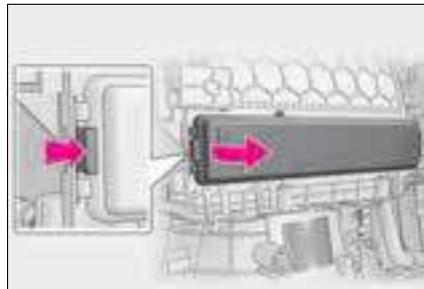


- 4 Remove the filter cover.

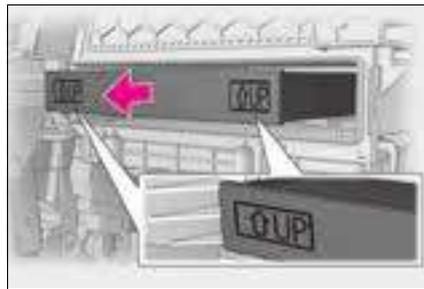
- ▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



- ▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



- 5 Remove the air conditioning filter and replace it with a new one. The "↑ UP" marks shown on the filter should be pointing up.



■ Checking interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required.

■ **If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically**

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.



NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the system**

When using the air conditioning system, make sure that a filter is always installed.

Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

■ **When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)**

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

■ **If the electronic key battery is depleted**

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

Items to prepare

Prepare the following before replacing the battery:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

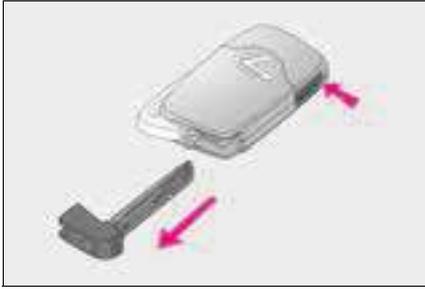
■ **Use a CR2032 lithium battery**

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

Replacing the battery

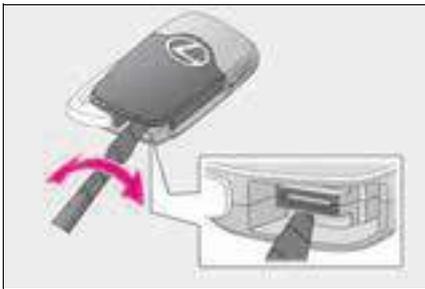
► Type A

- 1 Take out the mechanical key.



- 2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the flathead screwdriver with a tape.



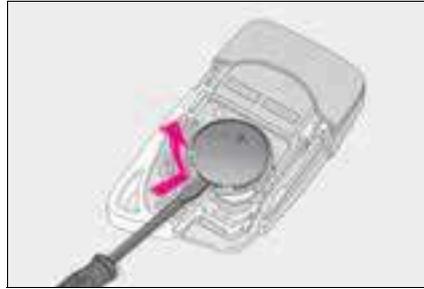
- 3 Remove the battery cover.



- 4 Remove the depleted battery.

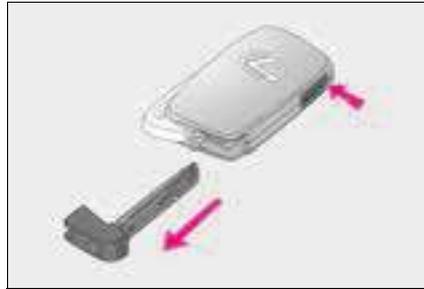
Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal

facing up.



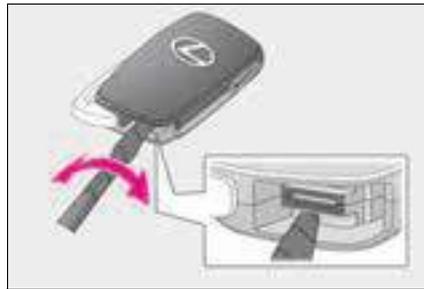
► Type B

- 1 Take out the mechanical key.



- 2 Remove the cover.

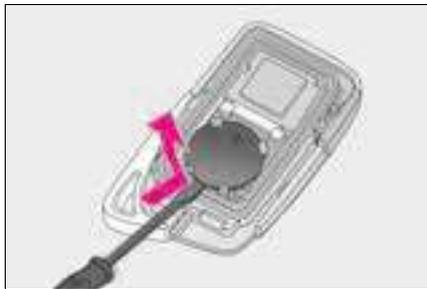
To prevent damage to the key, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a tape.



- 3 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal

facing up.



⚠ WARNING

■ **Removed battery and other parts**
 These parts are small and if swallowed by a child, they can cause choking. Keep away from children. Failure to do so could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ NOTICE

■ **For normal operation after replacing the battery**
 Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands. Moisture may cause the battery to rust.
- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

Checking and replacing fuses

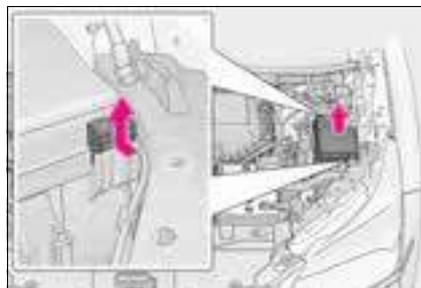
- 1 Turn the engine switch off.
 - 2 Open the fuse box cover.
- ▶ Engine compartment: type A fuse box

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



- ▶ Engine compartment: type B fuse box

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



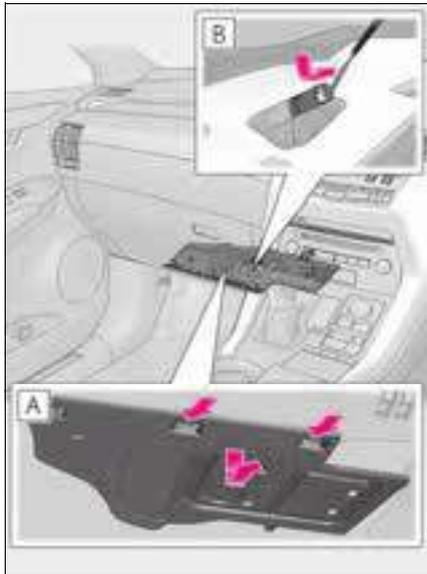
- ▶ Left side instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)

Remove the lid.

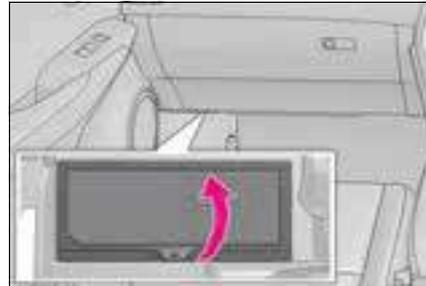


- ▶ Left side instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)

Remove the cover **A** and then remove the connector **B**.

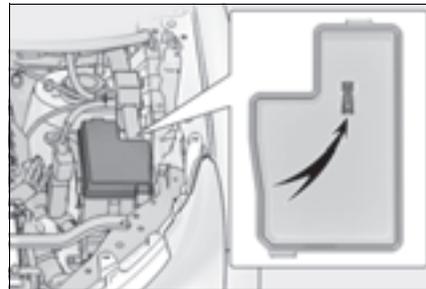


Remove the lid.



3 Remove the fuse.

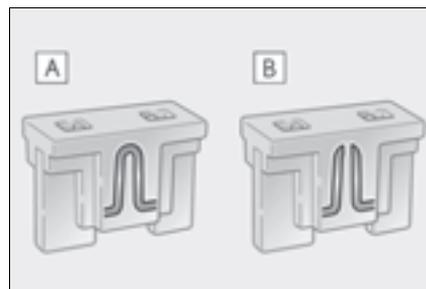
Only type A fuse can be removed using the pullout tool.



4 Check if the fuse is blown.

Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

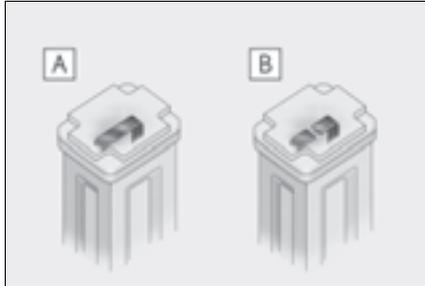
- ▶ Type A



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

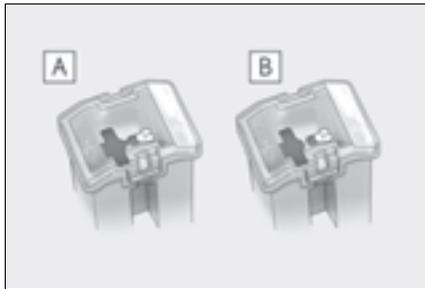
▶ Type B



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

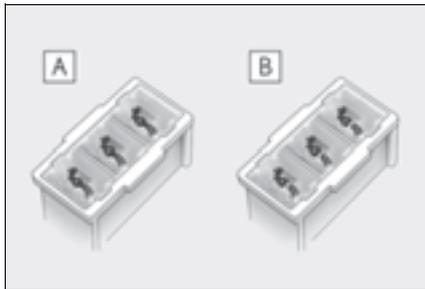
▶ Type C



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

▶ Type D



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

■ After a fuse is replaced

- When installing the lid, make sure that the tab is installed securely.
- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P.411)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ If there is an overload in a circuit

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

■ When replacing light bulbs

Lexus recommends that you use genuine Lexus products designed for this vehicle. Because certain bulbs are connected to circuits designed to prevent overload, non-genuine parts or parts not designed for this vehicle may be unusable.

⚠ WARNING

■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent. Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

⚠ NOTICE

■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Light bulbs

If any lights burn out, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ LED lights

The following lights consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

- Headlights
- Front turn signal lights
- Front position lights
- Daytime running lights
- Front fog lights
- Rear fog light (if equipped)
- Cornering lights (if equipped)
- Side turn signal lights
- Stop lights
- Tail lights
- High mounted stop light
- Rear turn signal lights
- Back up lights
- License plate lights
- Outer foot lights

■ Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact any Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations:

- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

When trouble arises

7

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 414

If your vehicle has to be stopped in
an emergency 414

If the vehicle is trapped in rising
water 415

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed
..... 417

If you think something is wrong
..... 421

Fuel pump shut off system 422

If a warning light turns on or a
warning buzzer sounds 423

If a warning message is displayed
..... 433

If you have a flat tire (vehicles
without spare tire) 436

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with
spare tire) 446

If the engine will not start 455

If you lose your keys 457

If the fuel filler door cannot be
opened 457

If the electronic key does not
operate properly 458

If the vehicle battery is discharged
..... 460

If your vehicle overheats 465

If the vehicle becomes stuck 467

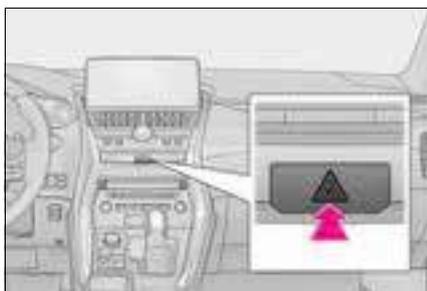
Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Operating instructions

Press the switch.

All the turn signal lights will flash. To turn them off, press the switch once again.



Emergency flashers

If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not operating, the battery may discharge.

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

Stopping the vehicle

- 1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

- 2 Shift the shift lever to N.
 - ▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N
- 3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.
- 4 Stop the engine.
 - ▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N
- 3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.
- 4 To stop the engine, press and hold the engine switch for 2 consecutive

seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



- 5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

⚠ WARNING

■ **If the engine has to be turned off while driving**

Power assist for the brakes and steering wheel will be lost, making the brake pedal harder to depress and the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

If the vehicle is trapped in rising water

In the event the vehicle is submerged in water, remain calm and perform the following.

- Remove the seat belt first.
- If the door can be opened, open the door and exit the vehicle.
- If the door can not be opened, open the window using the power window switch and exit the vehicle through the window.
- If the window can not be opened using the power window switch, remain calm, wait until the water level inside the vehicle rises to the point that the water pressure inside of the vehicle equals the water pressure outside of the vehicle, and then open the door and exit the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Using an emergency hammer* for emergency escape**

The front side windows and rear side windows, as well as the rear window can be shattered with an emergency hammer* used for emergency escape. However, an emergency hammer can not shatter the windshield as it is laminated glass.

*: Contact your Lexus dealer or after-market accessory manufacturer for further information about an emergency hammer.

 **WARNING**

■ **Escaping the vehicle from the window**

When using an emergency hammer, consider your seat location and the size of the window opening to ensure that the opening is accessible and large enough to escape.

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flat bed truck.

Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

2WD models: If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck from the front, the vehicle's rear wheels and axles must be in good conditions. (→P.417, 418)

If they are damaged, use a towing dolly or flatbed truck.

AWD models: If towing your vehicle with a wheel-lift type truck, use a towing dolly. (→P.417, 418)

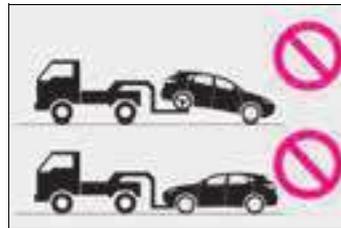
WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When towing the vehicle

▶ 2WD models

Be sure to transport the vehicle with the front wheels raised or with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the front wheels contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged.



▶ AWD models

Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the tires contacting the ground, the drivetrain or related parts may be damaged, the vehicle may fly off the truck.



■ While towing

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc., which place excessive stress on the towing eyelets, cables or chains. The towing eyelets, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not turn the engine switch off. There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.
- **Installing towing eyelet to the vehicle**
Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelet may come loose during towing.

⚠ NOTICE

- **To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck**
 - Do not tow the vehicle from the rear when the engine switch is off. The steering lock mechanism is not strong enough to hold the front wheels straight.
 - When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.
- **To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing with a sling-type truck**
Do not tow with a sling-type truck, either from the front or rear.
- **To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing**
Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.
- **Towing vehicles with Stop & Start system**
If it is necessary to tow the vehicle with all 4 tires in contact with the ground, temporarily turn the engine switch OFF before towing to protect the system. After towing, start the engine or turn the switch to IGNITION ON mode.

Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

- The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service before towing. (→P.417)
- The engine is running but the vehicle does not move.
 - The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

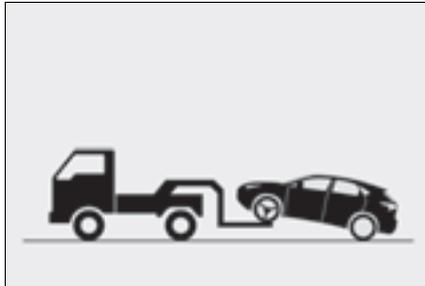
Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.

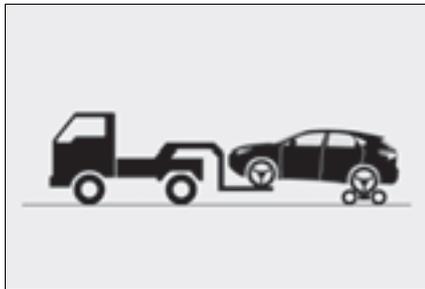


Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

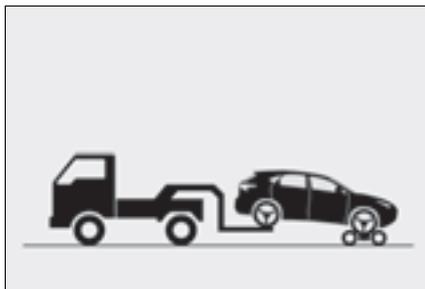
- ▶ From the front (2WD models)
Release the parking brake.



- ▶ From the front (AWD models)
Use a towing dolly under the rear wheels.

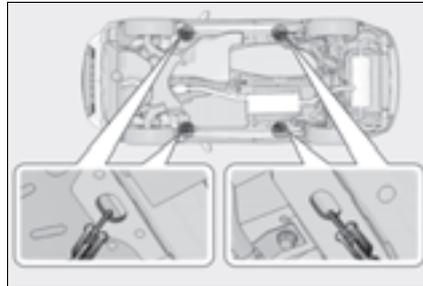


- ▶ From the rear
Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.



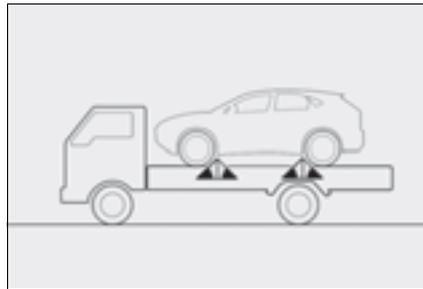
Using a flat bed truck

If your vehicle is transported by a flat-bed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.



Emergency towing procedure

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing eyelets. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for at most 80 km (50 miles) at under 30 km/h (18 mph).

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drivetrain, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

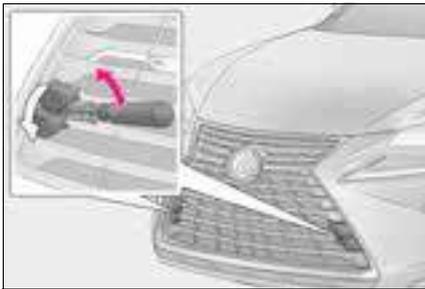
To have your vehicle towed

To have your vehicle towed by another vehicle, the towing eyelet must be installed to your vehicle. Install the towing eyelet by following the specified procedure.

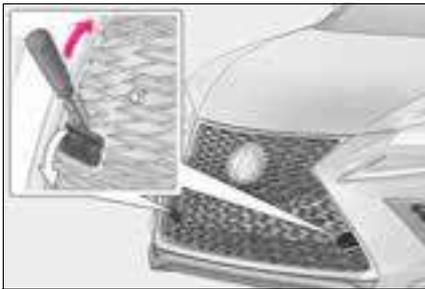
- 1 Take out the towing eyelet. (→P.437, 447)
- 2 Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle body as shown in the illustration.

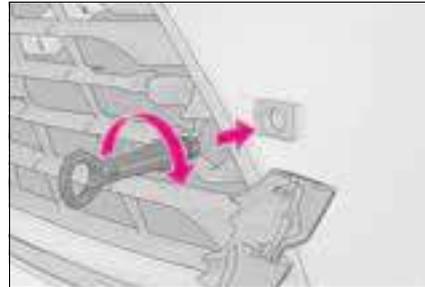
▶ Type A



▶ Type B

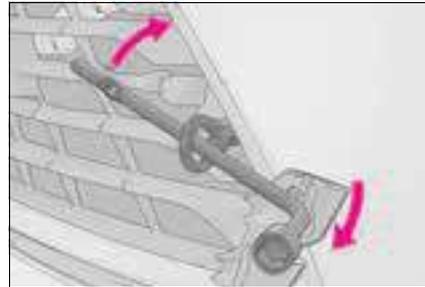


- 3 Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



- 4 Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench* or hard metal bar.

* If a wheel nut wrench is not equipped, a wheel nut wrench can be purchased at your Lexus dealer.



- 5 Securely attach cables or chains to the towing eyelet.

Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

- 6 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.

If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

- 7 Shift the shift lever to N and release the parking brake.
When the shift lever cannot be shifted: →P.178, 182

■ While towing

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ Wheel nut wrench

Vehicles with wheel nut wrench: Wheel nut wrench is installed in luggage compartment. (→P.437, 447)

Vehicles without wheel nut wrench: Wheel nut wrench can be purchased at your Lexus dealer.

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge needle continually points higher than normal

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine misfire or misses, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side

when braking

- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Restarting the engine

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

- 1 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or turn it off.
- 2 Restart the engine.



NOTICE

■ Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Actions to the warning lights or warning buzzers

■ Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Red)	Indicates that: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The brake fluid level is low; or • The brake system is malfunctioning → Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

■ Charging system warning light *

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system → Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Low engine oil pressure warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low → Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ High coolant temperature warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine is overheating → Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous. Handling method (→P.465)

* : This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Brake system warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Malfunction indicator lamp

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The electronic engine control system; • The electronic throttle control system; or • The electronic automatic transmission control system → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ SRS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The SRS airbag system; or • The seat belt pretensioner system → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ ABS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The ABS; or • The brake assist system → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
 (Red)	

■ PCS warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Flashes or illuminates) (If equipped)	When a buzzer sounds simultaneously: Indicates a malfunction has occurred in the PCS (Pre-Collision System). → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately. When a buzzer does not sound: The PCS (Pre-Collision System) has become temporarily unavailable, corrective action may be necessary. → Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.221, 433) If the PCS (Pre-Collision System) or VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system is disabled, the PCS warning light will illuminate. → P.423

■ LTA indicator* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 <p>(Orange) (If equipped)</p>	<p>Indicates a malfunction in the LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) → Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.240)</p>

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ LDA indicator* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 <p>(Orange) (If equipped)</p>	<p>Indicates a malfunction in the LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) → Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.248)</p>

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ PKSB OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 <p>(Flashes) (If equipped)</p>	<p>When a buzzer sounds: Indicates a malfunction in the PKSB (Parking Support Brake) system → Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.</p> <p>When a buzzer does not sound: Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable, possibly due to a sensor being dirty or covered with ice, etc. → Clear the dirt, etc.</p>

■ Slip indicator light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	<p>Indicates a malfunction in:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The VSC system; • The TRC system; or • The hill-start assist control system <p>The light will flash when the VSC or TRC system is operating.</p> <p>→ Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.</p>

■ Brake hold operated indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Flashes)	<p>Indicates a malfunction in the brake hold system</p> <p>→ Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.</p>

■ Parking brake indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (Flashes)	<p>It is possible that the parking brake is not fully engaged or released</p> <p>→ Operate the parking brake switch once again.</p> <p>This light comes on when the parking brake is not released. If the light turns off after the parking brake is fully released, the system is operating normally.</p>

■ Low fuel level warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	<p>Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 9.0 L (2.3 gal., 1.9 Imp.gal.) or less</p> <p>→ Refuel the vehicle.</p>

■ Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer ^{*1})

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts → Fasten the seat belt. If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.

^{*1}: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer:

▶ For AGZ10L-AWTLTV and AGZ15L-AWTLTV models ^{*2}

The driver's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver that his or her seat belt is not fastened. Once the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the buzzer sounds for 6 seconds. If the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph), the buzzer sounds once. If the seat belt is still unfastened after 24 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 6 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

The front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds once if the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). If the seat belt is still unfastened after 24 seconds, the buzzer will sound intermittently for 6 seconds. Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

▶ Except for AGZ10L-AWTLTV and AGZ15L-AWTLTV models ^{*2}

The seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

^{*2}: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.470)

■ Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light ^{*1} (warning buzzer ^{*2})

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (If equipped)	Warns the rear passengers to fasten their seat belts → Fasten the seat belt.

^{*1}: This light illuminates on the center panel.

*2: Seat belt warning buzzer:

The seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the rear passengers that his or her seat belt is not fastened. The buzzer sounds for 30 seconds after the vehicle reaches a speed of 20 km/h (12 mph). Then, if the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer will sound in a different tone for 90 more seconds.

■ Master warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction. → P.433

■ Tire pressure warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (If equipped)	When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Natural causes (→P.431) • Flat tire (→P.436, 446) → Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. The light will turn off after a few minutes. In case the light does not turn off even if the tire inflation pressure is adjusted, have the system checked by your Lexus dealer. When the light comes on after blinking for 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system (→P.431) → Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ Brake Override System/Drive-Start Control warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	<p>Brake Override System</p> <p>Indicates that the accelerator and brake pedals are being depressed simultaneously, and the Brake Override System is operating.</p> <p>→ Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.</p> <p>Indicates a malfunction in the Brake Override System (with warning buzzer)</p> <p>→ Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.</p> <p>Drive-Start Control</p> <p>Indicates that the shift position was changed and Drive-Start Control was operated while depressing the accelerator pedal. (with warning buzzer)</p> <p>→ Momentarily release the accelerator pedal.</p> <p>Indicates a malfunction in the Drive-Start Control system (with warning buzzer)</p> <p>→ Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.</p>

* : This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Front passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer

- If luggage is placed on the front passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving

First check the following:

- Is the fuel tank empty?
If it is, fill the fuel tank immediately.
- Is the fuel tank cap loose?

If it is, tighten it securely.

The light will go off after several driving trips.

If the light does not go off even after several trips, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)

When the battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

■ If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on while driving

The malfunction indicator lamp will come on if the fuel tank becomes completely

empty. If the fuel tank is empty, refuel the vehicle immediately. The malfunction indicator lamp will go off after several trips.

If the malfunction indicator lamp does not go off, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **When the tire pressure warning light comes on (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

Inspect the appearance of the tire to check that the tire is not punctured.

If the tire is punctured: →P.436, 446

If the tire is not punctured:

Carry out the following procedure after the tire temperature has lowered sufficiently.

- Check the tire inflation pressure and adjust to the appropriate level.
- If the warning light does not go out even after several minutes, check that the tire inflation pressure is at the specified level and carry out initialization. (→P.400)

The warning light may come on again if the above operations are conducted without first allowing the tire temperature to lower sufficiently.

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks or tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire**

The compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will go off after a few minutes.

■ **Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

→P.394

■ **If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

If the tire pressure warning light frequently comes on after blinking for 1 minute when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Warning buzzer**

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

■ **Speed warning buzzer (if equipped)**

The buzzer sounds when your vehicle speed reaches or exceeds 120 km/h (75 mph).

At this time, a warning message will appear on the multi-information display.

 **WARNING**

■ **If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on**

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact your Lexus dealer. The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **When the electric power steering system warning light comes on**

When the light comes on yellow, the assist to the power steering is restricted. When the light comes on red, the assist to the power steering is lost and handling operations of the steering wheel become extremely heavy. When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

⚠ WARNING

■ **If the tire pressure warning light comes on (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

Be sure to observe the following precautions. Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire or repair the flat tire by using the emergency tire puncture repair kit and then have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking. If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ **If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

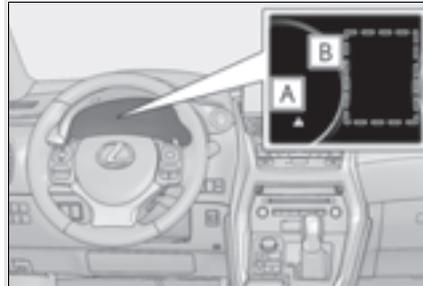
⚠ NOTICE

■ **To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.



A Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

B Multi-information display

Follow the instructions of the message on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning messages are shown again after the following actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Messages and warnings

The warning lights and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

	System warning light	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	–	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed
–	Comes on or flashes	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when the systems shown on the multi-information display may be malfunctioning
Flashes	–	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result
Comes on	–	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
Flashes	–	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

* : A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

■ System warning lights

The master warning light does not come on or flash in the following cases. Instead, a separate system warning light will come on along with a message shown on the multi-information display.

- Malfunction of the ABS
The ABS warning light comes on. (→P.425)
- Malfunction of the charging system
The charging system warning light comes on. (→P.423)

■ If “Shift to P Before Exiting Vehicle” is shown

Message is displayed when the driver’s

door is opened without turning the engine switch to OFF with the shift lever in any position other than P.

Shift the shift lever to P.

■ If “Front Camera Unavailable” or “Front Camera Unavailable See Owner’s Manual” is displayed

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (→P.221, 425)

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)

- Automatic High Beam
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range
- Dynamic radar cruise control

■ **If “Radar Cruise Control Unavailable See Owner’s Manual” is shown**

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range system is suspended temporarily or until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (causes and coping methods: →P.221)

■ **If “Radar Cruise Control Unavailable” is shown**

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range system cannot be used temporarily. Use the system when it becomes available again.

■ **If “Oil Maintenance Required Soon” is shown**

Indicates that the engine oil is scheduled to be changed. (The indicator will not work properly unless the oil maintenance data has been reset.)

Check the engine oil, and change if necessary. After changing the engine oil, the oil change system should be reset. (→P.386)

■ **If “Oil Maintenance Required” is shown**

Indicates that the engine oil should be changed. (After the engine oil is changed and the oil maintenance data has been reset.)

Check and change the engine oil, and oil filter by your Lexus dealer. After changing the engine oil, the oil change system should be reset. (→P.386)

■ **If “See Owner’s Manual” is shown**

- If the following messages are shown, following the instructions, accordingly.
 - “Engine Coolant Temp High” (→P.465)
 - “Exhaust Filter Full” (→P.306)
- If the following messages are shown, there may be a malfunction. Immediately have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
 - “Braking Power Low”
 - “Smart Entry & Start System Malfunc-

tion”

- If the following messages are shown, there may be a malfunction. Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.
 - “Oil Pressure Low”
 - “Charging System Malfunction”
 - “Transmission Fluid Temp High”

■ **Warning buzzer**

→P.431



NOTICE

■ **“High Power Consumption Partial Limit On AC/Heater Operation” is frequently shown**

There is a possible malfunction relating to the charging system or the battery may be deteriorating. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If you have a flat tire (vehicles without spare tire)

Your vehicle is not equipped with a spare tire, but instead is equipped with an emergency tire puncture repair kit.

A puncture caused by a nail or crew passing through the tire tread can be repaired temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit.

⚠ WARNING**■ If you have a flat tire**

Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before repairing the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P.414)
- Check the degree of the tire damage.

A tire should only be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit if the damage is caused by a nail or screw passing through the tire tread.

- Do not remove the nail or screw from the tire. Removing the object

may widen the opening and disenable emergency repair with the kit.

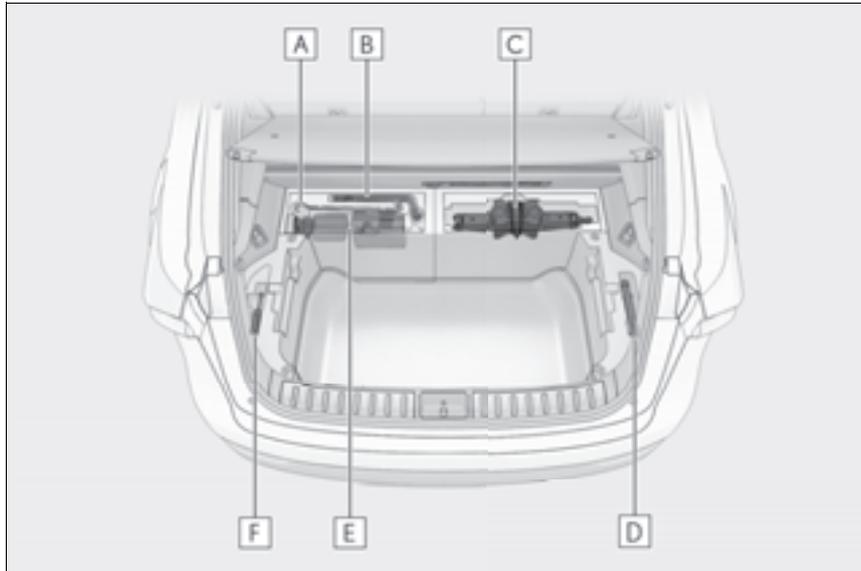
- To avoid sealant leakage, move the vehicle until the area of the puncture, if known, is positioned at the top of the tire.

**■ A flat tire that cannot be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit**

In the following cases, the tire cannot be repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. Contact your Lexus dealer.

- When the tire is damaged due to driving without sufficient air pressure
- When the tire lost air pressure due to a crack or damage in the tire sidewall
- When the tire is visibly separated from the wheel
- When the cut or damage to the tread is 4 mm (0.16 in.) long or more
- When the wheel is damaged
- When two or more tires have been punctured
- When there is more than one hole or cut in the damaged tire

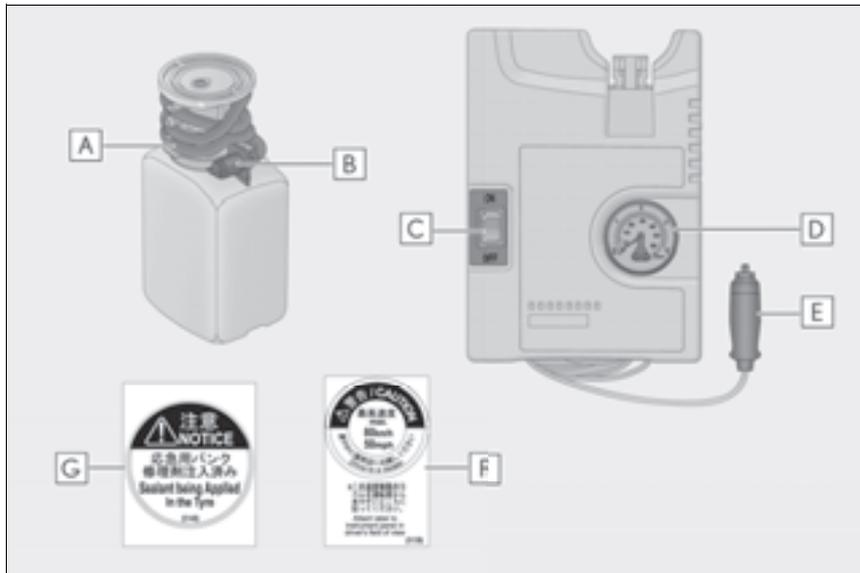
Location of the emergency tire puncture repair kit, jack and tools



- A** Jack handle (if equipped)
- B** Wheel nut wrench (if equipped)
- C** Jack* (if equipped)
- D** Towing eyelet
- E** Emergency tire puncture repair kit
- F** Screwdriver

*: Use of the jack (→P.449)

Emergency tire puncture repair kit components



- A** Hose
- B** Air release cap
- C** Compressor switch
- D** Air pressure gauge
- E** Power plug
- F** Speed limit stickers
- G** Sealant infected sticker

■ Emergency tire puncture repair kit

- The emergency tire puncture repair kit is for filling the car tire with air.
- The sealant has a limited life span. The expiry date is marked on the bottle. The sealant should be replaced before the expiry date. Contact your Lexus dealer for replacement.
- The sealant stored in the emergency tire puncture repair kit can be used only once to temporarily repair a single tire. If the sealant in the bottle and other parts of the kit have been used and need to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- The compressor can be used repeatedly.
- The sealant can be used when the outside temperature is from -40°C (-40°F) to 60°C (140°F).
- The kit is exclusively designed for size and type of tires originally installed on your vehicle. Do not use it for tires that a different size than the original ones, or for any other purposes.
- If the sealant gets on your clothes, it may

stain.

- If the sealant adheres to a wheel or the surface of the vehicle body, the stain may not be removable if it is not cleaned at once. Immediately wipe away the sealant with a wet cloth.
- During operation of the kit, a loud operation noise is produced. This does not indicate a malfunction.
- Do not use to check or to adjust the tire pressure.

■ **Note for checking the emergency tire puncture repair kit**

Check the sealant expiry date occasionally. The expiry date is shown on the bottle. Do not use sealant whose expiry date has already passed. Otherwise, repairs conducted using the emergency tire puncture repair kit may not be performed properly.

⚠ WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause an accident.

- The emergency tire puncture repair kit is made exclusively for your vehicle. Do not use it on other vehicles.
- Do not use the emergency tire puncture repair kit for tires that are a different size than the specified ones or for any other purpose. Doing so may cause the tires to not be repaired properly.

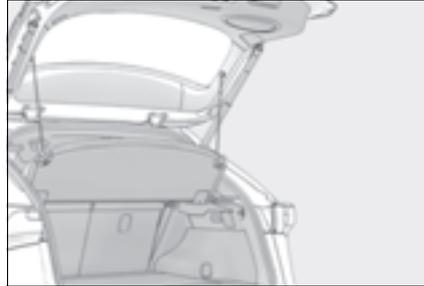
■ **Precautions for use of the sealant**

- Ingesting the sealant is hazardous to your health. If you ingest sealant, consume as much water as possible, then immediately consult a doctor.
- If sealant gets in eyes or adheres to skin, immediately wash it off with water. If discomfort persists, consult a doctor.

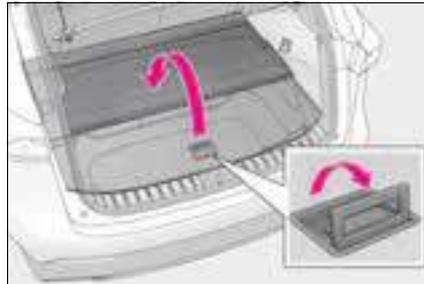
- 4 Use the hook to secure the deck board as shown in the illustration.

Taking out the emergency tire puncture repair kit

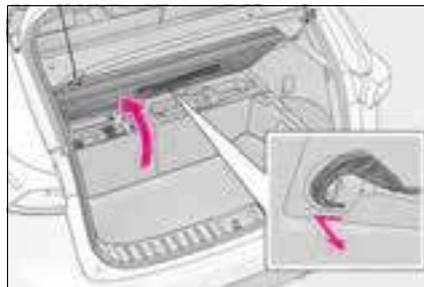
- 1 Open the back door.



- 2 Pull the lever upwards and open the deck board.

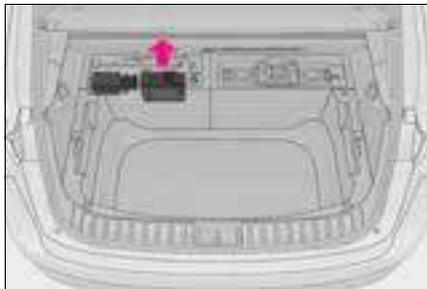


- 3 Lift the deck board and remove the hook on the backside of the deck board.

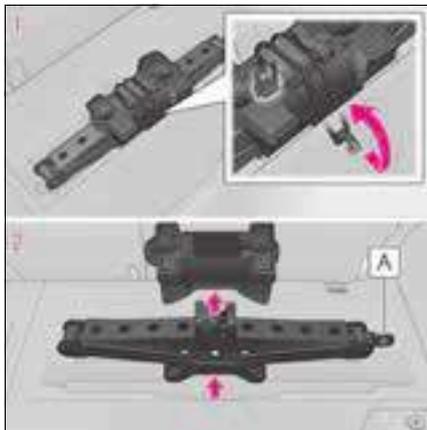




- 5 Take out the emergency tire puncture repair kit.



Taking out the jack



- 1 Remove the rubber band.
- 2 Remove the cover and the jack.

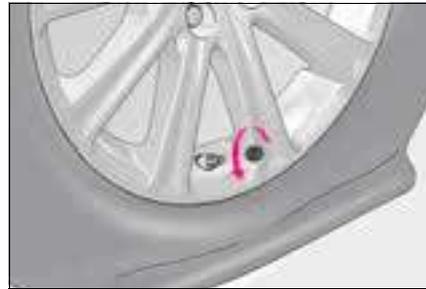
Use of the jack: →P.449

When stowing the jack, close it by turn-

ing the handle indicated by **A** until it does not move anymore, stow the jack and the cover, and press on the jack to fix with the rubber band.

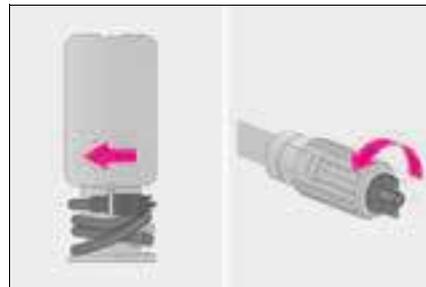
Emergency repair procedure

- 1 Remove the valve cap from the valve of the punctured tire.



- 2 Extend the hose. Remove the air release cap from the hose.

You will use the air release cap again. Therefore keep it in a safe place.

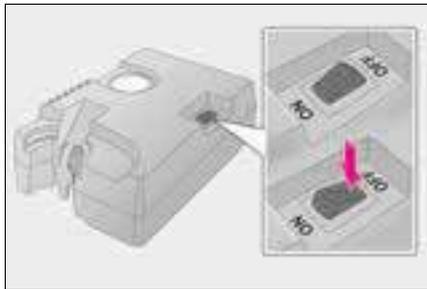


- 3 Connect the hose to the valve. Screw the end of hose clockwise as far as

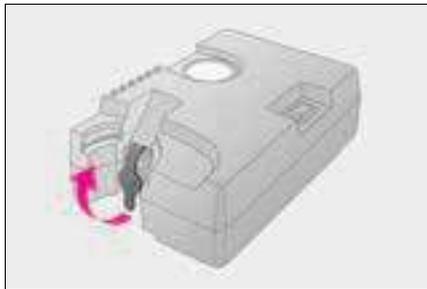
possible.



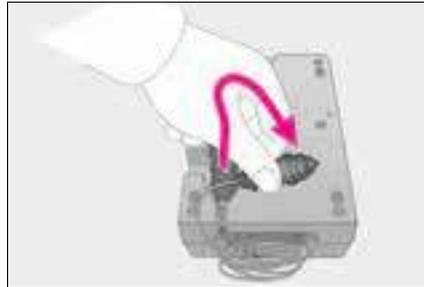
- 4** Make sure that the compressor switch is off.



- 5** Lift the rubber stopper on the compressor.



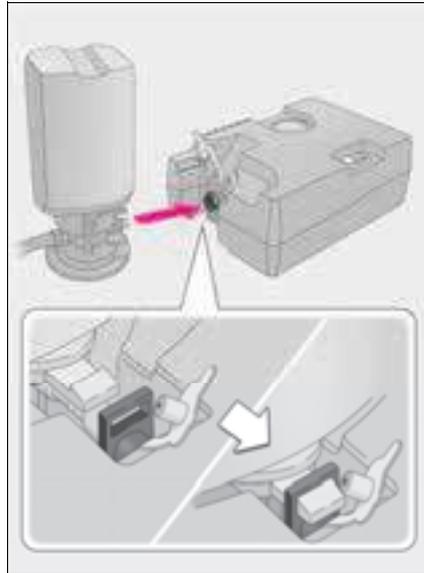
- 6** Remove the power plug from the compressor.



- 7** Connect the power plug to the power outlet socket. (→P.350)

- 8** Connect the bottle to the compressor.

Make sure that the bottle is securely connected.



- 9** Attach the 2 stickers as shown.

Remove any dirt and moisture from the wheel before attaching the label. If it is impossible to attach the label, make sure to tell your Lexus dealer when you have them repair and replace the tire that sealant is

injected.



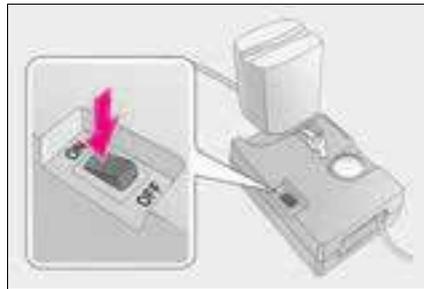
- 10** Check the specified tire inflation pressure.

Tire inflation pressure is specified on the label as shown. (→P.479)

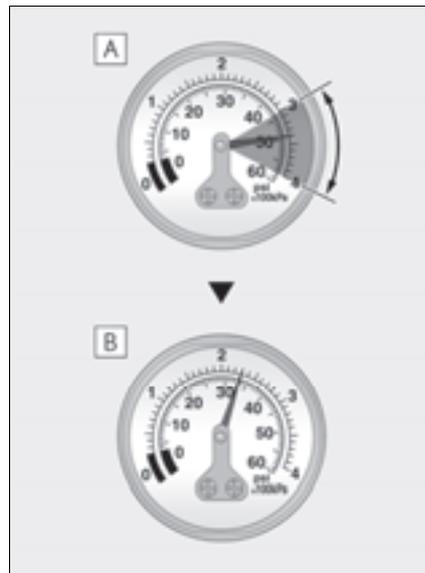


- 11** Start the engine. (→P.174)

- 12** To inject the sealant and inflate the tire, turn the compressor switch on.



- 13** Inflate the tire until the recommended pressure is reached.



- A** The sealant will be injected and the pressure will spike to 300 kPa (3.0 kgf/cm² or bar, 44 psi) or 400 kPa (4.0 kgf/cm² or bar, 58 psi), then gradually decrease.
- B** The air pressure gauge will display the actual tire inflation pressure about 1 minute (15 minutes at low

temperature) after the switch is turned on.

- Turn the compressor switch off and then check the tire inflation pressure. Being careful not to over inflate, check and repeat the inflation procedure until the recommended tire inflation pressure is reached.
- If the tire inflation pressure is still lower than the recommended level after inflation for 10 minutes (35 minutes at low temperature) with the switch on, the tire is too damaged to be repaired. Turn the compressor switch off and contact your Lexus dealer.
- If the tire inflation pressure exceeds the recommended level, let out some air to adjust the tire inflation pressure. (→P.444)

- 14** With the compressor switch off, disconnect the hose from the valve on the tire and then pull out the power plug from the power outlet socket.

Some sealant may leak when the hose is removed.

- 15** Install the valve cap onto the valve of the emergency repaired tire.

- 16** Attach the air release cap to the end of the hose.

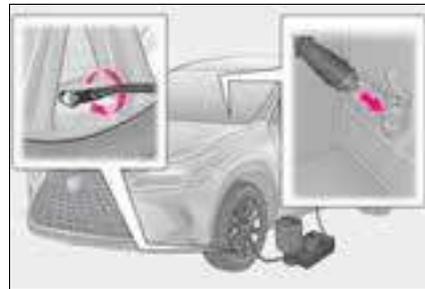
If the air release cap is not attached, the sealant may leak and the vehicle may get dirty.



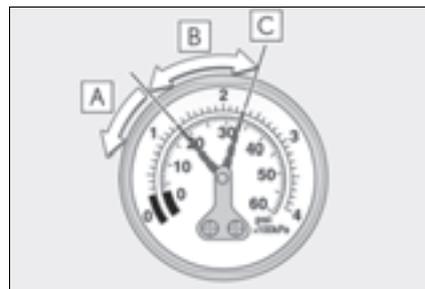
- 17** Temporarily store the bottle in the luggage compartment while it is connected to the compressor.

- 18** To spread the liquid sealant evenly within the tire, immediately drive safely for about 5 km (3 miles) below 80 km/h (50 mph).

- 19** After driving, stop your vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface and reconnect the compressor.



- 20** Turn the compressor switch on and wait for several seconds, then turn it off. Check the tire inflation pressure.



- A** If the tire inflation pressure is below 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm² or bar, 19 psi):
The puncture cannot be repaired.
Contact your Lexus dealer.

- B** If the tire inflation pressure is

between 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm² or bar, 19 psi) and a point below the recommended level: The tire can be repaired. Proceed to step 21.

C If the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level: Proceed to step 22.

21 Turn the compressor switch on to inflate the tire until the recommended tire inflation pressure is reached. Drive for about 5 km (3 miles) and then perform step 19.

22 Attach the air release cap to the end of the hose.

If the air release cap is not attached, the sealant may leak and the vehicle may get dirty.

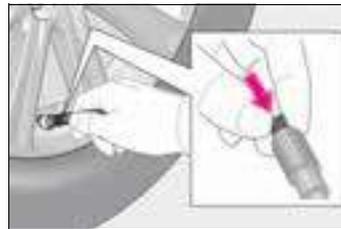


23 Store the bottle in the luggage compartment while it is connected to the compressor.

24 Taking precautions to avoid sudden braking, sudden acceleration and sharp turns, drive carefully at under 80 km/h (50 mph) to your Lexus dealer that is less than 100 km (62 miles) away for tire repair or replacement.

■ **Actions to take if the tire is inflated to more than the recommended level**

- 1** Disconnect the hose from the valve.
- 2** Install the air release cap to the end of the hose and push the protrusion on the air release cap into the valve to let some air out.



- 3** Disconnect the hose from the valve, remove the air release cap from the hose and then reconnect the hose.
- 4** Turn the compressor switch on and wait for several seconds, then turn it off. Check that the air pressure indicator shows the recommended level. (→P.479)

If the air pressure is lower than the recommended level, turn the compressor switch on again and repeat the inflation procedure until the recommended pressure is reached.

■ **After a tire is repaired with the emergency tire puncture repair kit**

- The tire pressure warning valve and transmitter should be replaced.
- Even if the tire inflation pressure is at the recommended level, the tire pressure warning light may come on/flash.

! WARNING

■ **When fixing the flat tire**

- Stop your vehicle in a safe and flat area.
- Connect the valve and hose securely with the tire installed on the vehicle.
- If the hose is not properly connected to the valve, air leakage may occur or sealant may be sprayed out.

⚠ WARNING

- If the hose comes off the valve while inflating the tire, there is a risk that the hose will move abruptly due to air pressure.
 - After inflation of the tire has completed, the sealant may splatter when the hose is disconnected or some air is let out of the tire.
 - Perform temporary repairs according to the work procedures. If the procedures are not followed accordingly, the tire sealant fluid may spurt out.
 - Be separated from the tire during repairs when operating the temporary repair kit, as there is the danger of rupturing. If crack or deformation occurs, turn the kit switch off and stop the repairs.
 - The kit may overheat if operated for a long period of time. Do not operate the compressor continuously for more than 35 minutes.
 - Parts of the repair kit will get hot during operation. Handle with care during and after operation. As the kit gets hot, especially the metallic portion of the bottle and the compressor connection, do not touch during use or immediately after use.
 - Do not attach the vehicle speed warning sticker to an area other than the one indicated. If the sticker is attached to an area where an SRS airbag is located, such as the pad of the steering wheel, it may prevent the SRS airbag from operating properly.
- **Driving to spread the liquid sealant evenly**
- Drive the vehicle carefully at a low speed. Be especially careful when turning and cornering.

- If the vehicle does not drive straight or you feel a pull through the steering wheel, stop the vehicle and check the following:
 - Tire condition. The tire may have separated from the wheel.
 - Tire inflation pressure. If tire inflation pressure is 130 kPa (1.3 kgf/cm² or bar, 19 psi) or below, this may indicate severe tire damage.

⚠ NOTICE■ **When performing an emergency repair**

- Perform the emergency repair without removing the nail or screw that has punctured the tread of the tire. If the object that has punctured the tire is removed, repair by the emergency tire puncture repair kit may not be possible.
- The kit is not waterproof. Make sure that the kit is not exposed to water, such as when it is being used in the rain.
- Do not put the kit directly onto dusty ground such as sand at the side of the road. If the kit vacuums up dust, etc., a malfunction may occur.
- Use the kit with the top facing upward. The kit cannot work properly if it is laid on its side.

■ **Handling the emergency tire puncture repair kit**

- The compressor power source should be 12 VDC suitable for vehicle use. Do not connect the compressor to any other source.
- If gasoline splatters on the kit, the kit may deteriorate. Take care not to allow gasoline to contact it.
- Store the kit in its assigned place out of reach of children.

 NOTICE

● Do not disassemble or modify the kit. Do not subject parts such as the air pressure indicator to impacts. This may cause a malfunction.

■ **To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. After use of liquid sealant, make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P.394)

If you have a flat tire (vehicles with spare tire)

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire. For details about tires: →P.392

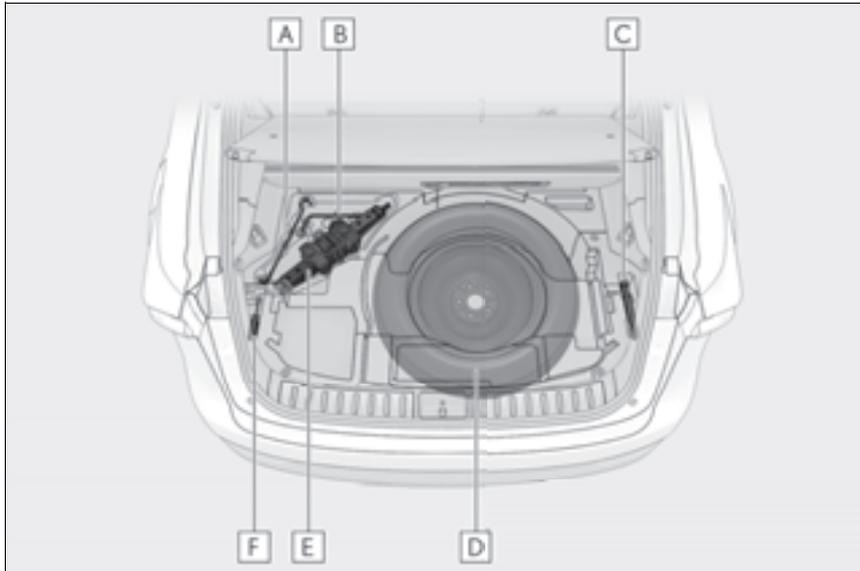
 WARNING**■ If you have a flat tire**

Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before jacking up the vehicle

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P.414)

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools



- A** Jack handle
- B** Wheel nut wrench
- C** Towing eyelet
- D** Spare tire
- E** Jack
- F** Screwdriver

⚠ WARNING

■ **Using the tire jack**

Observe the following precautions.

Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.

- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.

- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.

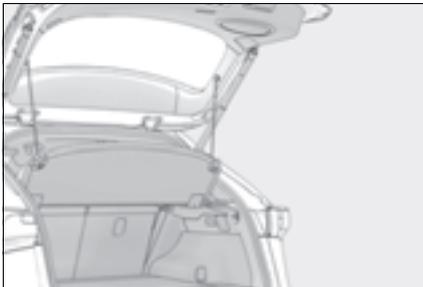
- Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

⚠ WARNING

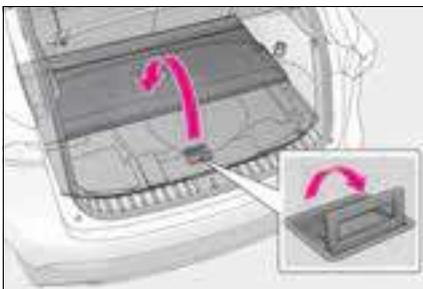
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.
- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.

Taking out the jack

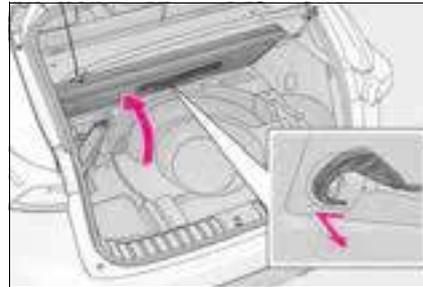
1 Open the back door.



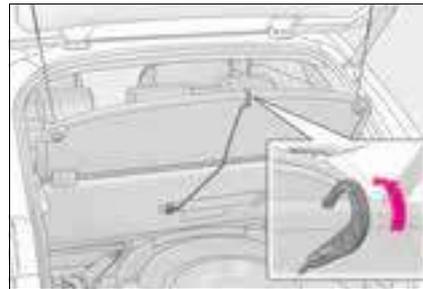
2 Pull the lever upwards and open the deck board.



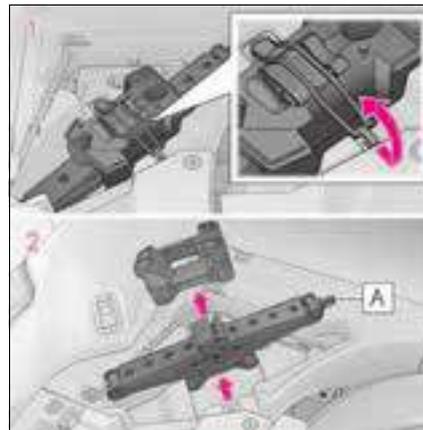
3 Lift the deck board and remove the hook on the backside of the deck board.



4 Use the hook to secure the deck board as shown in the illustration.



5 Removing the Jack.

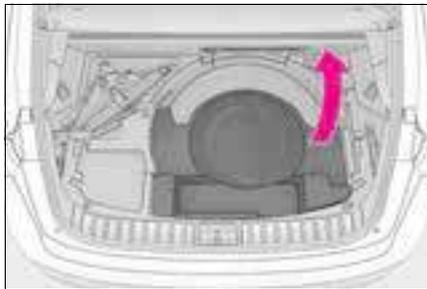


- 1** Remove the rubber band.
- 2** Remove the cover and the jack.

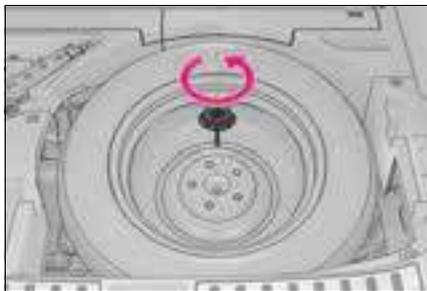
When stowing the jack, close it by turning the handle indicated by **A** until it does not move anymore, stow the jack and the cover, and press on the jack to fix with the rubber band.

Taking out the spare tire

- 1 Remove the deck under tray.



- 2 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.



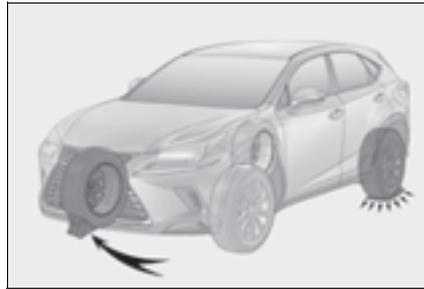
⚠ WARNING

■ When storing the spare tire

Be careful not get fingers or other body parts caught between the spare tire and the body of the vehicle.

Replacing a flat tire

- 1 Chock the tires.



Flat tire	Wheel chock positions
Front left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
Front right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
Rear right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

- 2 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).



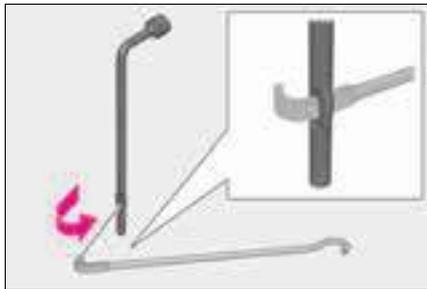
- 3 Turn the tire jack portion **A** by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack

point positions.



- 4** Install the wheel nut wrench in jack handle.



- 5** Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.



- 6** Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to

avoid scratching the wheel surface.



⚠ WARNING

■ Replacing a flat tire

- Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury:
 - Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
 - Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven. After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.

7

When trouble arises

⚠ WARNING

- Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts. Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
- If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel ornament while the vehicle is moving.

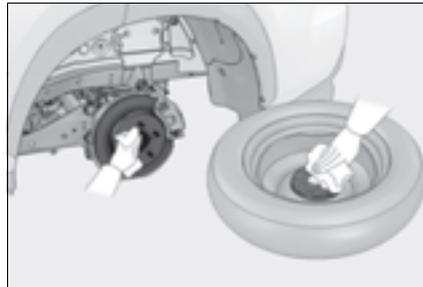
■ Replacing a flat tire for vehicles with power back door

In cases such as when replacing tires, make sure to turn off the power back door system (→P.125). Failure to do so may cause the back door to operate unintentionally if the power back door switch is accidentally touched, resulting in hands and fingers being caught and injured.

Installing the spare tire

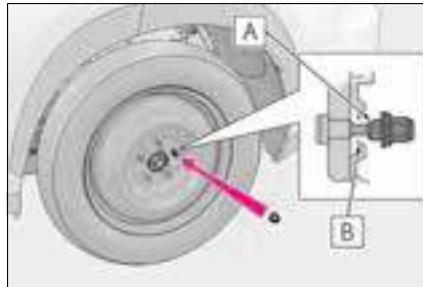
- 1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.
If foreign matter is on the wheel contact

surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to come off.

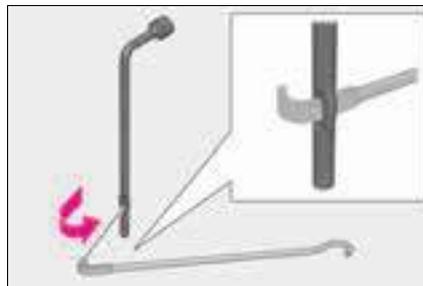


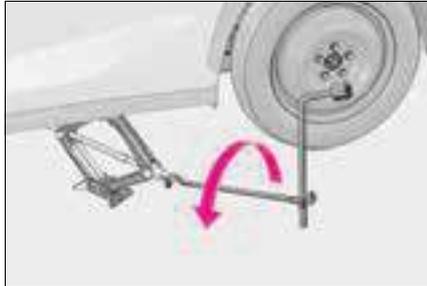
- 2 Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

Tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion **A** comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat **B**.

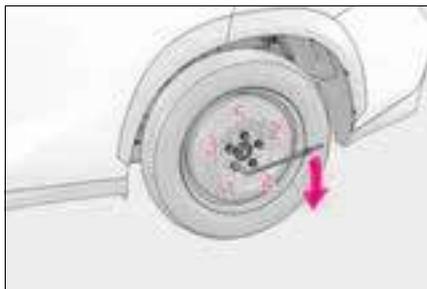


- 3 Install the wheel nut wrench in jack handle.



4 Lower the vehicle.**5** Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

**6** Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.**■ The compact spare tire**

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" on the tire sidewall.

Use the compact spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.

- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire. (→P.479)

■ After completing the tire change (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P.400)

■ When using the compact spare tire

As the compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be indicated by the tire pressure warning system. Also, if you replace the compact spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

■ When the compact spare tire is equipped

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires.

■ If you have a flat front tire on a road covered with snow or ice

Install the compact spare tire on one of the rear wheels of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the front tires:

- 1 Replace a rear tire with the compact spare tire.
- 2 Replace the flat front tire with the tire removed from the rear of the vehicle.
- 3 Fit tire chains to the front tires.

■ Certification for the jack

 TECHNICAL RECORD															
Flex-N-Gate Vehicle Brackets															
DECLARATION OF "CE" CONFORMANCE															
<p>EC Declaration of Conformity</p> <p>1. The undersigned, Mr. Tony Fabiano, representing the manufacturer, certifies that the machinery described below fulfills all the relevant provisions of:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">+ Directive 2006/42/EC, on Machinery</p>															
<p>2. Description of the machinery:</p> <table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 30%;">a) Part Name:</td> <td>Jack Sub-Assembly Paragraph</td> </tr> <tr> <td>b) Part Number:</td> <td>09111-09W-100 (2960) 091110001000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>c) Function:</td> <td>Lifting motor vehicle</td> </tr> <tr> <td>d) Vehicle Model:</td> <td>4200R</td> </tr> <tr> <td>e) Vehicle Type:</td> <td>Consumer SUV</td> </tr> <tr> <td>f) Serial Number:</td> <td>Not Applicable</td> </tr> <tr> <td>g) OEM:</td> <td>Toyota Motor Corporation</td> </tr> </table>		a) Part Name:	Jack Sub-Assembly Paragraph	b) Part Number:	09111-09W-100 (2960) 091110001000	c) Function:	Lifting motor vehicle	d) Vehicle Model:	4200R	e) Vehicle Type:	Consumer SUV	f) Serial Number:	Not Applicable	g) OEM:	Toyota Motor Corporation
a) Part Name:	Jack Sub-Assembly Paragraph														
b) Part Number:	09111-09W-100 (2960) 091110001000														
c) Function:	Lifting motor vehicle														
d) Vehicle Model:	4200R														
e) Vehicle Type:	Consumer SUV														
f) Serial Number:	Not Applicable														
g) OEM:	Toyota Motor Corporation														
<p>3. Manufacturer:</p> <p>Flex-N-Gate / Yonke, 71 Rogers Industrial Court, RR #1 Bradford, ON, Canada L4A 2J6</p>															
<p>4. Person authorized to complete the technical file:</p> <p>Saviori Dario Product Engineer FNG - BARCELONA Avda de la Riera, 7-9 Sant Joan Despuig, Barcelona Spain 08860</p>															
<p>5. Applicable Harmonizing Standards:</p> <p>None</p>															
<p>6. Other Standards or Specifications:</p> <p>Toyota Test Specifications: TSP-09010, Test Method for Car Jack Strength, Chassis, Rev. A, April 2008</p>															
7. Done at:	Bradford, Ontario														
8. Date:	June 25-07														
 Tony Fabiano Director of Engineering Flex-N-Gate/Yonke Bradford Product Development Center															
Document No. 09111-09W-100	Page 11														
<small>Confidential - Not for distribution outside of Flex-N-Gate without approval</small>															

⚠ WARNING**■ When using the compact spare tire**

- Remember that the compact spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire simultaneously.
- Replace the compact spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.

■ When the compact spare tire is attached

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS & Brake assist
- VSC
- TRC
- Cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control system with full-speed range (if equipped)
- PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)
- EPS
- AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension system) (if equipped)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped)
- LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) (if equipped)
- Panoramic view monitor (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist monitor (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (if equipped)
- Parking Support Brake function (for static objects) (if equipped)
- Navigation system (if equipped)
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (if equipped)
- Automatic High Beam (if equipped)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)

Also, not only can the following system not be utilized fully, but it may even negatively affect the drive-train components:

- AWD system (if equipped)

 **WARNING**

■ **Speed limit when using the compact spare tire**

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 80 km/h (50 mph) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

■ **After using the tools and jack**

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

 **NOTICE**

■ **Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle**

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.

■ **Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire**

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.

Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

■ **When replacing the tires (vehicles with the tire pressure warning system)**

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P.174), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even though the starter motor operates normally

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
Refuel the vehicle.
- The engine may be flooded.
Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P.174)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P.73)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P.460)

The starter motor does not turn over

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine. (→P.456)

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected.
- The battery may be discharged. (→P.460)
- There may be a malfunction in the steering lock system.

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Starting the engine in an emergency

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally.

Do not use this starting procedure except in cases of emergency.

- 1** Set the parking brake.

- 2** Shift the shift lever to P.
- 3** Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode.
- 4** Press and hold the engine switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If you lose your keys

New genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using another mechanical key and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

 NOTICE

■ **When an electronic key is lost**

If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Lexus dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key that were provided with your vehicle.

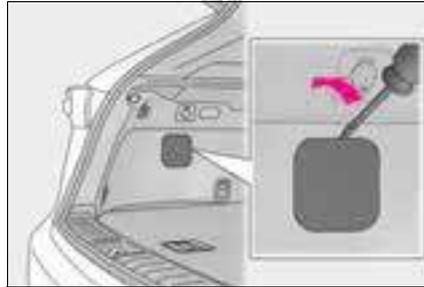
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened

If the fuel filler door opener switch cannot be operated, the following procedure can be used to open the fuel filler door.

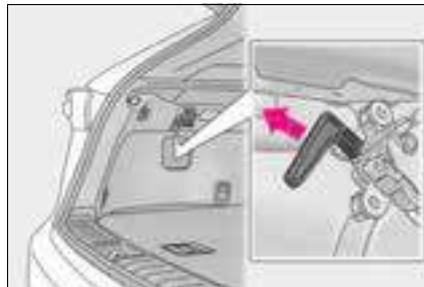
Opening the fuel filler door

- 1 Remove the cover inside the luggage compartment by inserting a screwdriver.

When removing the cover, to prevent damage, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.



- 2 After removing the cover, pull the lever to unlock the fuel filler door and it will be ready to open as usual.



If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P.129) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

■ Things to check before taking measures

- Make sure that the smart entry & start system has not been deactivated in the customization setting. If it is off, turn the function on.
(Customizable features: →P.482)
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P.128)

⚠ NOTICE

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key related problems

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle, including the card key, to your Lexus dealer.

Locking and unlocking the doors

Use the mechanical key (→P.108) to perform the following operations.

■ Unlocking the door

- 1 Insert the mechanical key while pulling on the driver's door handle.



- 2 Turn the key in order to perform the following operations.



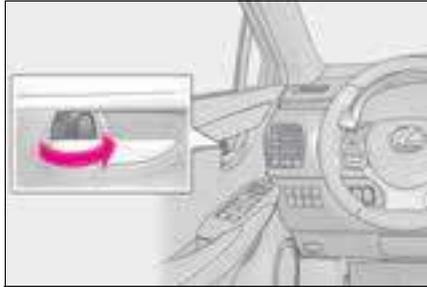
- A** Unlocking the door
- B** Opens the windows and moon roof* (turn and hold)
- C** Closes the windows and moon roof* (turn and hold)

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer

- 3 Remove the key, return the handle, and then pull the handle again.

■ Locking the door

- 1 Move the inside lock button to the lock position.



- 2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

⚠ WARNING

■ When using the mechanical key and operating the power windows or moon roof (if equipped)

Operate the power window or moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof.

Also, do not allow children to operate the mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window or moon roof.

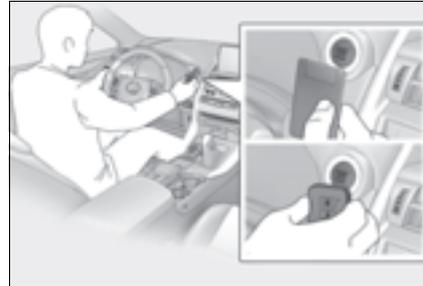
Starting the engine

- 1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.
- 2 Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the engine switch.

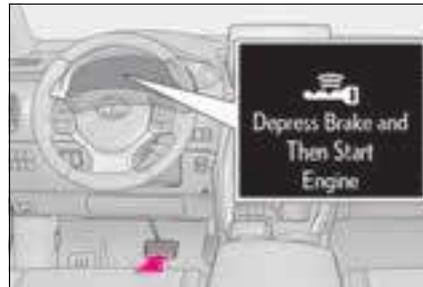
When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the engine switch will turn to IGNITION ON mode.

When the smart entry & start system is deactivated in customization setting, the engine switch will turn to ACCESSORY

mode.



- 3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that message is shown on the multi-information display.



- 4 Press the engine switch.

In the event that the engine still cannot be operated, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Stopping the engine

Shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake and press the engine switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ Electronic key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P.406)

■ Alarm (For Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt)

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.

If a door is unlocked using the mechanical

key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered. (→P.76)

■ Changing engine switch modes

Release the brake pedal and press the engine switch in step 3 above.

The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P.175)

If the vehicle battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the vehicle's battery is discharged. You can also call your Lexus dealer.

Restarting the engine

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a battery, you can jump start your vehicle by following the steps below.

▶ NX300

- 1 Confirm that the electronic key is being carried.

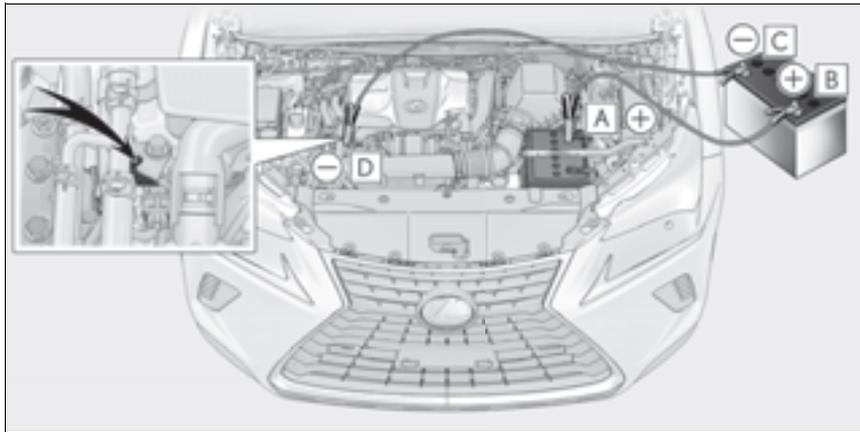
When connecting the jumper (or booster) cables, depending on the situation, the alarm may activate and the doors may lock. (→P.78)



- 2 Open the hood. (→P.381)

- 3 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to **A** on your vehicle and connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to **B** on the second vehicle. Then,

connect a negative cable clamp to **C** on the second vehicle and connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to **D**.



- A** Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)
- B** Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)
- C** Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)
- D** Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

- 4** Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.
- 5** Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the engine switch off.
- 6** Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 7** Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables

in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

► NX200

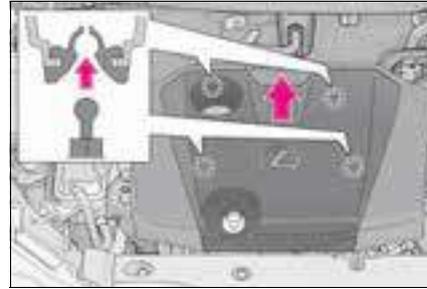
- 1** Confirm that the electronic key is being carried.

When connecting the jumper (or booster) cables, depending on the situation, the alarm may activate and the doors may lock.

(→P.78)

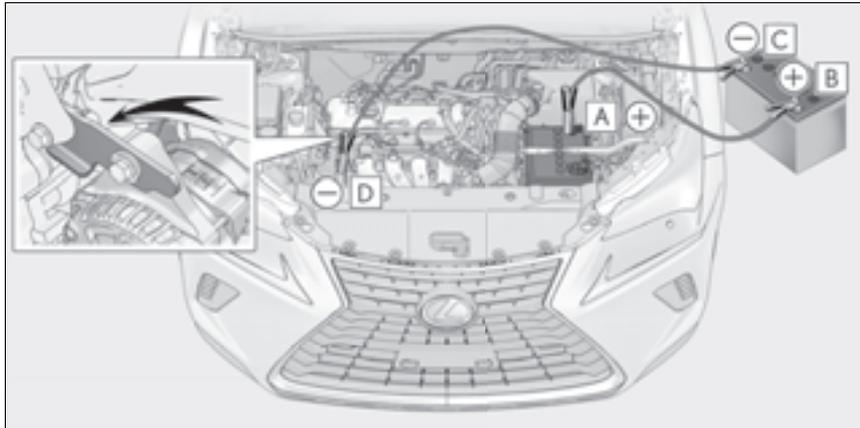


2 Open the hood (→P.381)



3 Remove the engine cover.

4 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to **A** on your vehicle and connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to **B** on the second vehicle. Then, connect a negative cable clamp to **C** on the second vehicle and connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to **D**.



- A** Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)
 - B** Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)
 - C** Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)
 - D** Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration
- 5** Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

- 6 Open and close any of the doors of your vehicle with the engine switch off.
- 7 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
- 8 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ **Starting the engine when the battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

- Turn off the headlights and the audio system while the engine is off.
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

■ **Charging the battery**

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ **When recharging or replacing the battery**

- In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart entry & start system when the battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control

or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.

- The engine may not start on the first attempt after the battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.
- The engine switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the battery, turn the engine switch off. If you are unsure what mode the engine switch was in before the battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the battery.
- Some systems may require initialization.
- Vehicle with Stop & Start system: After the battery terminals have been disconnected and reconnected or, the battery has been replaced, the Stop & Start system may not automatically stop the engine for approximately 5 to 60 minutes.

■ **Replacing the battery**

Vehicle with Stop & Start system: Use a genuine battery specifically designed for use with the Stop & Start system or a battery with equivalent specifications to a genuine battery.

If an unsupported battery is used, Stop & Start system functions may be restricted to protect the battery. Also, battery performance may decrease and the engine may not be able to restart. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.



WARNING

■ **Avoiding battery fires or explosions**

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.

**WARNING**

- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

**NOTICE****■ When handling jumper cables**

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fans or engine drive belt.

If your vehicle overheats

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

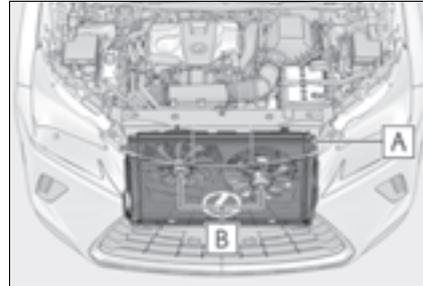
- The needle of the engine coolant temperature gauge (→P.87) enters the red zone, or a loss of engine power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- “Engine Coolant Temp High” is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

- 1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.
- 2 If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.
If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.
- 3 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immedi-

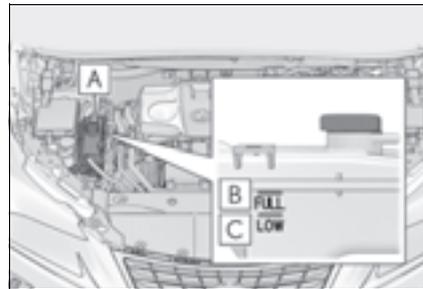
ately contact your Lexus dealer.



- A** Radiator
- B** Cooling fans

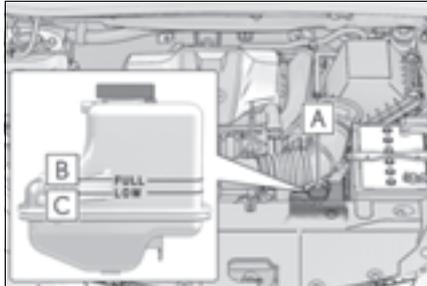
- 4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the “FULL” and “LOW” lines on the reservoir.

► Engine



- A** Reservoir
- B** “FULL” line
- C** “LOW” line

► Intercooler (NX300 only)



A Reservoir

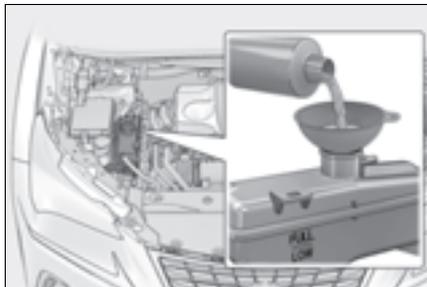
B "FULL" line

C "LOW" line

5 Add coolant if necessary.

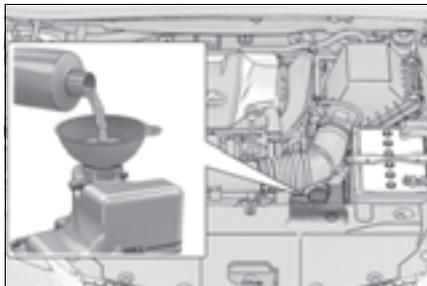
► Engine

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.



► Intercooler (NX300 only)

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.



6 Start the engine and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fan operates and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fan operates when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fan is operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly. (The fans may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

7 If the fans are not operating:
Stop the engine immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.
If the fan is operating:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest any your Lexus dealer.

8 Check if "Engine Coolant Temp High" is shown on the multi-information display.
If the message does not disappear:
Stop the engine and contact your Lexus dealer.
If the message is not displayed:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest any your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ **To prevent an accident or injury when inspecting under the hood of your vehicle**

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not touch within the engine compartment or get close when the cooling fan is operating. Body parts, clothes, etc., may get caught and lead to an accident, resulting in serious injury. The cooling fan operates automatically at times when the air conditioner is operating and times when the coolant temperatures are high. Also, it may operate for several minutes even after the engine switch is turned off.
- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fans and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- Do not loosen the coolant reservoir cap while the engine and radiator are hot. High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.

⚠ NOTICE

- **When adding engine coolant**
Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.
- **To prevent damage to the cooling system**
Observe the following precautions:
 - Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust, etc.).
 - Do not use any coolant additive.

If the vehicle becomes stuck

Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

Recovering procedure

- 1 Stop the engine. Shift the shift lever to P and set the parking brake.
- 2 Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the front wheels.
- 3 Place wood, stones or some other material under the front wheels to help provide traction.
- 4 Restart the engine.
- 5 Shift the shift lever to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■ **When it is difficult to free the vehicle**

Press  to turn off TRC. (→P.309)



**WARNING****■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle**

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.

This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

**NOTICE****■ To avoid damage to the transmission and other components**

- Avoid spinning the front wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

Vehicle specifications

8

469

8-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level,
etc.) 470

Fuel information 481

8-2. Customization

Customizable features 482

8-3. Initialization

Items to initialize 494

8

Vehicle specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)**Dimensions and weights**

Overall length		4640 mm (182.7 in.)
Overall width		1845 mm (72.6 in.)
Overall height ^{*1}		1645 mm (64.8 in.)
Wheelbase		2660 mm (104.7 in.)
Tread ^{*1}	Front	1580 mm (62.2 in.) ^{*2} 1570 mm (61.8 in.) ^{*3}
	Rear	1580 mm (62.2 in.) ^{*2} 1570 mm (61.8 in.) ^{*3}
Gross vehicle mass ^{*6}		2280 kg (5027 lb.) ^{*4} 2350 kg (5181 lb.) ^{*5}
Maximum permissible axle capacity ^{*6}	Front	1270 kg (2800 lb.)
	Rear	1270 kg (2800 lb.)
Drawbar load ^{*6}		60 kg (132 lb.)
Towing capacity ^{*6}	With brake	1500 kg (3307 lb.)
	Without brake	750 kg (1653 lb.)

^{*1}: Unladen vehicle

^{*2}: Vehicles with 225/65R17 tires or 225/60R18 tires

^{*3}: Vehicles with 235/55R18 tires

^{*4}: 2WD models

^{*5}: AWD models

^{*6}: For South Africa vehicles with towing package

Vehicle identification**■ Vehicle identification number**

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identifica-

tion number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

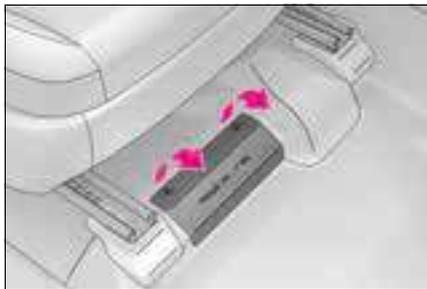
This number is stamped on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also on the manufacturer's label^{*1} or the Certification Regulation label^{*2}.



This number is also stamped under the right-hand front seat.



^{*1}: Except for GCC countries^{*3}, Jordan and Lebanon
^{*2}: For GCC countries^{*3}, Jordan and Lebanon
^{*3}: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

■ **Year of manufacture and country of origin (GCC countries^{*}, Jordan and Lebanon)**

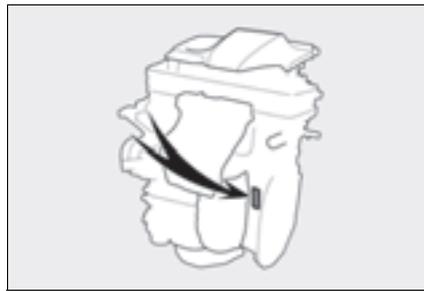
The year of the manufacture and country of origin are shown on the Certification Regulation label.

^{*}: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

■ **Engine number**

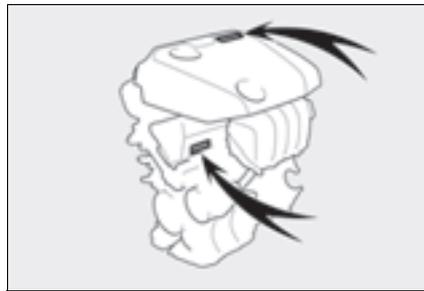
▶ **NX300**

The engine number is stamped on the engine block as shown.



▶ **NX200**

The engine number is stamped on the engine block and engine cover as shown.



Engine

▶ NX300

Model	8AR-FTS
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline (with turbocharger)
Bore and stroke	86.0 × 86.0 mm (3.39 × 3.39 in.)
Displacement	1998 cm ³ (121.9 cu.in.)
Valve clearance	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment
Maximum vehicle speed ^{*1}	200 km/h (124 mph)
Maximum torque ^{*1} (NET)	350 N•m @1650 – 4000 rpm
Maximum output ^{*1} (NET)	175 kW @4800 – 5600 rpm

*1: For vehicles with model code^{*2} that has “V” as the last letter

*2: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer’s label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.470)

▶ NX200

Model	3ZR-FAE
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	80.5 × 97.6 mm (3.17 × 3.84 in.)
Displacement	1987 cm ³ (121.2 cu.in.)
Valve clearance	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

When you find these types of fuel label at the gas station, use only the fuel with one of the following labels.



Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only	
Research octane number	NX300	95 (Octane rating 91) or higher
	NX200	91 (Octane rating 87) or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	60 L (15.9 gal., 13.2 Imp.gal.)	

Lubrication system

■ Oil capacity (Drain and refill [Reference *])

	NX300	NX200
With filter	4.9 L (5.2 qt., 4.3 Imp.qt.)	4.2 L (4.4 qt., 3.7 Imp.qt.)
Without filter	4.7 L (5.0 qt., 4.1 Imp.qt.)	3.9 L (4.1 qt., 3.4 Imp.qt.)

* : The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Engine oil selection

► NX300

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:

API grade SL “Energy-Conserving”, SM “Energy-Conserving”, SN “Resource-Conserving” or SN PLUS “Resource-Conserving”; or ILSAC

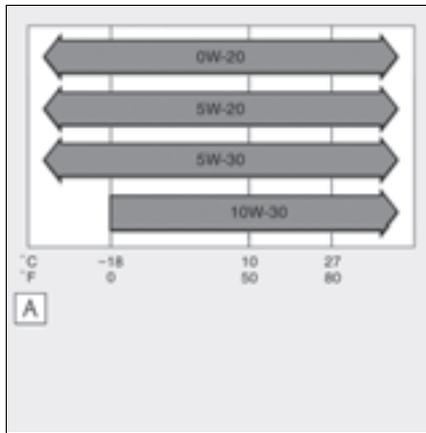
multigrade engine oil

Viscosity grade:

SAE 0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

If you use SAE 10W-30 engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20, 5W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



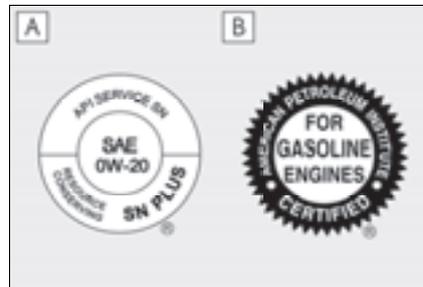
A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The OW in OW-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in OW-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



A API Service Symbol

Top portion: “API SERVICE SN” means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).

Center portion: “SAE OW-20” means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: “Resource-Conserving” means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

B ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

► NX200

“Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Motor Oil” or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:

0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:

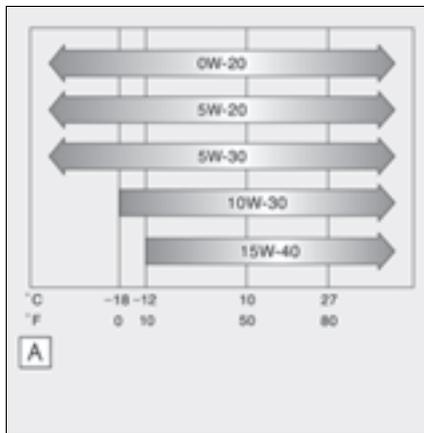
API grade SL “Energy-Conserving”, SM “Energy-Conserving”, SN “Resource-Conserving” or SN PLUS “Resource-Conserving”; or ILSAC multigrade engine oil

15W-40:

API grade SL, SM, SN or SN PLUS multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20, 5W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

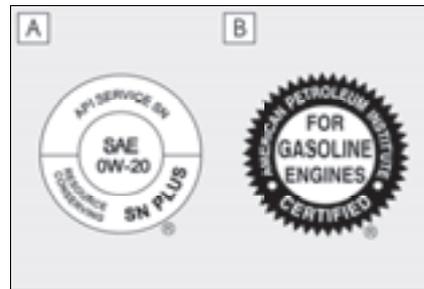
Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high

speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



A API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SN" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).

Center portion: "SAE 0W-20" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

B ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

Cooling system

Capacity*	NX300	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ Gasoline engine 7.9 L (8.3 qt., 7.0 Imp.qt.) ▶ Intercooler 2.9 L (3.1 qt., 2.6 Imp.qt.)
	NX200	6.0 L (6.3 qt., 5.3 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type	Use either of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “Toyota Super Long Life Coolant” • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.	

*: The coolant capacity is the quantity of reference.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

Ignition system

■ Spark plug

Make	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ NX300 NGK DILFR7K9G ▶ NX200 DENSO SC20HR11 or SC16HR11
Gap	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ NX300 0.9 mm (0.04 in.) ▶ NX200 1.1 mm (0.04 in.)



NOTICE

■ Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Electrical system**■ Battery**

Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):	1.25 or higher If the specific gravity is lower than the standard value, charge the battery.
--	---

■ Charging rates

Quick charge	15 A max.
Slow charge	5 A max.

Automatic transmission (NX300)

Fluid capacity ^{*1}	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ▶ For GCC countries ^{*2}, Jordan, Lebanon and Chile 7.2 L (7.6 qt., 6.3 Imp.qt.) ▶ Except for GCC countries ^{*2}, Jordan, Lebanon and Chile 6.8 L (7.2 qt., 6.0 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine ATF WS

^{*1}: The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

^{*2}: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

**NOTICE****■ Transmission fluid type**

Using transmission fluid other than "Toyota Genuine ATF WS" may ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle) (NX200)

Fluid capacity [*]	7.1L (7.5 qt., 6.2 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine CVT Fluid FE

^{*}: The fluid capacity is the quantity of reference.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.



NOTICE

■ **CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle) fluid type**

Using CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle) fluid other than “Toyota Genuine CVT Fluid FE” may cause deterioration in shift quality, locking up of your transmission accompanied by vibration, and ultimately damage the transmission of your vehicle.

Transfer (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.45 L (0.48 qt., 0.40 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” at the factory.

Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Rear differential (AWD models)

Oil capacity	0.5 L (0.5 qt., 0.4 Imp.qt.)
Oil type and viscosity	Toyota Genuine Differential gear oil LT 75W-85 GL-5 or equivalent

Your Lexus vehicle is filled with “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” at the factory.

Use Lexus approved “Toyota Genuine Differential Gear Oil” or an equivalent of matching quality to satisfy the above specification. Please contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

Brakes

Pedal clearance *	Left-hand drive vehicles	100 mm (3.94 in.) Min.
	Right-hand drive vehicles	90 mm (3.54 in.) Min.

Pedal free play	1.0 – 6.0 mm (0.04 – 0.24 in.)
Fluid type	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3 • SAE J1704 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 4

* : Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 490 N (50 kgf, 110 lbf) while the engine is running.

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)
-----------	---------------------------

Tires and wheels

► Type A

Tire size	225/65R17 102H
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	<p>► Front tire</p> <p>240 kPa (2.4 kgf/cm² or bar, 35 psi)</p> <p>► Rear tire</p> <p>240 kPa (2.4 kgf/cm² or bar, 35 psi)</p>
Wheel size	17 × 7 J
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

► Type B

Tire size	225/60R18 100H		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm ² or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm ² or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	270 (2.7, 39)	270 (2.7, 39)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	220 (2.2, 32)	220 (2.2, 32)
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2 J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

► Type C

Tire size	235/55R18 100V		
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front wheel kPa (kgf/cm ² or bar, psi)	Rear wheel kPa (kgf/cm ² or bar, psi)
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	270 (2.7, 39)	270 (2.7, 39)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	220 (2.2, 32)	220 (2.2, 32)
Wheel size	18 × 7 1/2 J		
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)		

► Compact spare tire (if equipped)

Tire size	T165/80D17 104M
Spare tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm ² or bar, 60 psi)
Wheel size	17 × 4 T
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

Light bulbs

	Light bulbs	W	Type
Interior	Vanity lights	8	A

A: Wedge base bulbs (clear)

Fuel information

When you find these types of fuel label at the gas station, use only the fuel with one of the following labels.



You must only use unleaded gasoline in your vehicle.

For optimum engine performance, select premium unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 95 (Octane rating 91) or higher.

If this premium type cannot be obtained, you may temporarily use unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number as low as 91 (Octane rating as low as 87).

■ Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has an Octane Number that follows the above.

■ If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.



NOTICE

■ Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use gasoline with metallic additives, for example manganese, iron or lead, otherwise it may cause damage on your engine or emission control system
- Do not add aftermarket fuel additives which contain metallic additives.
- Bioethanol fuel sold under names such as "E50" or "E85" and fuel containing a large amount of ethanol should not be used. Your vehicle can use gasoline mixed with 10% max ethanol. The use of fuel with more than 10% ethanol content (E10) will damage the vehicle's fuel system. You must ensure that refueling is carried out only from a source where fuel specification and quality can be guaranteed. In case of any doubt, ask your Lexus dealer.
- Do not use the methanol blended gasoline such as M15, M85, M100. The use of gasoline containing methanol may cause engine damage or failure.

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to suit your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed using the multi-information display, the Remote Touch, or at your Lexus dealer.

Customizing vehicle features

When customizing vehicle features, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a safe place with the shift lever in P and the parking brake set.

■ Changing using the Remote Touch

- 1 Press the "MENU" button on the Remote Touch.
- 2 Select  on the menu screen and select "Vehicle".
- 3 Select "Vehicle Customization" or "Drive mode customization".

Various setting can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

Customizable features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer.

A Settings that can be changed using the Remote Touch

■ Changing using the multi-information display

- 1 Press  or  of the meter control switches and select .
- 2 Press  or  of the meter control switches, select the item, and then press .
- 3 Press  or  of the meter control switches, select the desired setting, and then press .

To go back to the previous screen or exit the customize mode, press .

WARNING

■ Cautions during customization

As the engine needs to be operating during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ During customization

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

B Settings that can be changed using the multi-information display

C Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

D Settings that can be changed using the vehicle switch

Definition of symbols: ○ = Available, - = Not available

■ Door lock (→P.110, 458)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Unlocking using a mechanical key ^{*1}	All doors unlocked in first step	Driver's door unlocked in first step, all doors unlocked in second step	-	-	○	-
Unlocking using a mechanical key ^{*2}	Driver's door unlocked in first step, all doors unlocked in second step	All doors unlocked in first step	-	-	○	-
Speed linked door locking function	On	Off	○	-	○	-
Shift position linked door locking function	Off	On	○	-	○	-
Shift position linked door unlocking function	Off	On	○	-	○	-
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	On ^{*4}	Off ^{*4}	○	-	○	-
	Off ^{*5}	On ^{*5}				

^{*1}: Except for AGZ10L-AWTLTV and AGZ15L-AWTLTV models ^{*3}

^{*2}: For AGZ10L-AWTLTV and AGZ15L-AWTLTV models ^{*3}

^{*3}: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.470)

^{*4}: Except for Middle east

^{*5}: For Middle east

■ Smart entry & start system and wireless remote control (→P.110, 127)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Operation signal (emergency flashers)	On	Off	<input type="radio"/>	-	<input type="radio"/>	-
Operation buzzer volume *	5	Off	<input type="radio"/>	-	<input type="radio"/>	-
		1 to 7				
Time elapsed before the automatic door lock function is activated if a door is not opened after being unlocked	60 seconds	Off				
		30 seconds	-	-	<input type="radio"/>	-
		120 seconds				
Open door reminder buzzer (When locking the vehicle)	On	Off	-	-	<input type="radio"/>	-

*: If equipped

■ Smart entry & start system (→P.127)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Smart door unlocking* ¹	All the doors	Driver's door	<input type="radio"/>	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Smart door unlocking* ²	Driver's door	All the doors	<input type="radio"/>	-	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Smart entry & start system	On	Off	<input type="radio"/>	-	<input type="radio"/>	-
Number of consecutive door lock operations	2 times* ³	As many as desired* ³	-	-	<input type="radio"/>	-
	As many as desired* ⁴	2 times* ⁴	-	-	<input type="radio"/>	-

*¹: Except for AGZ10L-AWTLTV and AGZ15L-AWTLTV models*⁵

*²: For AGZ10L-AWTLTV and AGZ15L-AWTLTV models*⁵

*³: Except for vehicles with double locking system

*⁴: For vehicles with double locking system

*⁵: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.470)

■ Wireless remote control (→P.108)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	Customized setting			
			A	B	C	D
Wireless remote control	On	Off	-	-	○	-
Unlocking operation ^{*1}	All doors unlocked in first step	Driver's door unlocked in first step, all doors unlocked in second step	○	-	○	-
Unlocking operation ^{*2}	Driver's door unlocked in first step, all doors unlocked in second step	All doors unlocked in first step	○	-	○	-
Panic function ^{*3}	On	Off	-	-	○	-
The function that validates the  switch of the wireless remote control when locking the door (→P.117) ^{*3,4}	When unlocking the door	When locking the door	-	-	○	-

^{*1}: Except for AGZ10L-AWTLTV and AGZ15L-AWTLTV models^{*5}

^{*2}: For AGZ10L-AWTLTV and AGZ15L-AWTLTV models^{*5}

^{*3}: If equipped

^{*4}: Except for Malaysia

^{*5}: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.470)

■ Automatic light control system (→P.193)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	Customized setting			
			A	B	C	D
Light sensor sensitivity	Standard	-2 to 2	○	-	○	-
Time elapsed before the headlights turn off (follow me home) [*]	30 seconds	60 seconds	-	-	○	-
		90 seconds				
		120 seconds				

^{*}: If equipped

■ Lights (→P.193)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Daytime Running Lights ^{*1} (Daytime running lights can be disabled)	On	Off	○	-	○	-

^{*1}: For AGZ10L-AWTLTV and AGZ15L-AWTLTV models ^{*2}

^{*2}: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.470)

■ Illumination (→P.338)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	○	-	○	-
		7.5 seconds				
		30 seconds				
Time elapsed before the exterior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	○	-	○	-
		7.5 seconds				
		30 seconds				
Operation after the engine switch is turned off	On	Off	-	-	○	-
Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	-	-	○	-
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	-	-	○	-
Footwell lighting	On	Off	-	-	○	-
Fading out of the outer foot lights when they turn off	Long	Short	-	-	○	-

■ Multi-information display (→P.87, 90)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Eco Driving Indicator Light	On	Off	-	○	-	-
Language ^{*1}	English	French				
		Spanish				
		Chinese	○	○	-	-
		Taiwanese				
		Arabic				
Units	km (L/100km)	km (km/L)	○	○	-	-
 switch settings	Drive information 1	Desired status screen ^{*2}	-	○	-	-
Drive information 1	Current fuel consumption	*3				
	Average fuel consumption (after reset)		-	○	-	-
Drive information 2	Distance (range)	*3				
	Average speed (after reset)		-	○	-	-
Drive information 3	Average fuel consumption (after refuel)	*3				
	Elapsed time (after start)		-	○	-	-
Pop-up display ^{*4}	On	Off	-	○	-	-
Accent color	Color 1 	Color 2 	○	○	-	-
Clock	24-hour display	12-hour display	-	○	-	-

*1: The default setting varies according to countries.

*2: Some status screens cannot be registered (indicated on the multi-information display)

*3: 2 of the following items: current fuel consumption, average fuel economy (after reset),

average fuel economy (after refuel), average fuel economy (after start), average vehicle speed (after reset), average vehicle speed (after start), distance (driving range), distance (after start), elapsed time (after reset), elapsed time (after start), blank

*4: Intersection guidance, Incoming calls, Adjust brightness, Stop & Start system duration, Stop & Start system status

■ **Head-up display*** (→P.97)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Route guidance to destination	On	Off	-	-	-	○
Driving assist system information	On	Off	-	-	-	○
Audio system operation status	On	Off	-	-	-	○
Lane display	On	Off	-	-	-	○

*: If equipped

■ **Automatic air conditioning system** (→P.327)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation	On	Off	○	-	○	-
A/C Auto switch operation	On	Off	○	-	○	-

■ **Power windows** (→P.151)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Mechanical key linked operation	Off	On	-	-	○	-
Wireless remote control linked operation	Off	On	-	-	○	-

■ Moon roof^{*1}(→P.153)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Mechanical key linked operation ^{*2}	Off	On	-	-	○	-
Wireless remote control linked operation ^{*2}	Off	On	-	-	○	-

^{*1}: If equipped

^{*2}: This function cannot be customized unless power window operations, using the wireless remote control or mechanical key, is enabled.

■ Turn signal lever(→P.185)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
The number of times the turn signal lights flash automatically when the turn signal lever is moved to the first position during a lane change	3	4	-	-	○	-
		5				
		6				
		7				
		Off				

■ PKSA (Parking Support Alert)^{*}(→P.277)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Buzzer volume	2	1	-	○	○	-
		3				

^{*}: If equipped

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor^{*}(→P.278)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Display setting (When Lexus parking assist-sensor is operating)	On	Off	-	○	○	-

* : If equipped

■ Parking Support Brake function (for static objects)* (→P.283)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Parking Support Brake function (for static objects)	On	Off	-	○	-	-

* : If equipped

■ Driving position memory* (→P.141)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Driver's seat movement when exiting the vehicle	Standard	Off	○	-	○	-
		Partial				
Selection the door linking driving position memory with door unlock operation	Driver's door	All doors	-	-	○	-

* : If equipped

■ Outside rear view mirrors (→P.149)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Automatic folding and extending operation	Linked to locking/unlocking of the doors	Off	-	-	○	-
		Linked to engine switch operation				
Linked mirror function when reversing*	On	Off	-	-	○	-

* : If equipped

■ Stop & Start system* (→P.270)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Change the Stop & Start system duration when the A/C is on	Standard	Extended	-	○	-	-

*: If equipped

■ LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)* (→P.231)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Lane centering function	On	Off	–	○	–	–
Steering assist function	On	Off	–	○	–	–
Alert types	Steering wheel vibration	Buzzer	–	○	–	–
Alert sensitivity	High	Standard	–	○	–	–
Vehicle sway warning function	On	Off	–	○	–	–
Vehicle sway warning sensitivity	Standard	High	–	○	–	–
		Low				

*: If equipped

■ LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)* (→P.241)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Steering assist function	On	Off	–	○	–	–
Alert types	Steering wheel vibration	Buzzer	–	○	–	–
Alert sensitivity	High	Standard	–	○	–	–
Vehicle sway warning function	On	Off	–	○	–	–
Vehicle sway warning sensitivity	Standard	High	–	○	–	–
		Low				

*: If equipped

■ PCS (Pre-Collision System)* (→P.223)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
PCS (Pre-Collision System)	On	Off	-	○	-	-
Adjust alert timing	Middle	Early	-	○	-	-
		Late	-	○	-	-

*: If equipped

■ Alarm* (→P.76)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Deactivates the alarm when the doors are unlocked using the mechanical key	Off	On	-	-	○	-

*: For Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt

■ Power back door*¹ (→P.114)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Back door automatic open and stop position	5	Stop at the desired position (height)* ²	○	-	-	○
		1 to 5				
Back door opener switch operations	When the back door is locked* ³	When the back door is unlocked	-	-	○	-
Power back door operations	On	Off	-	○	-	-
Operation buzzer volume	3	1	-	○	-	○
		2	-	○	-	○
Kick Sensor* ^{1,4}	On	Off	-	○	-	-

*¹: If equipped

*²: Configured by operating the  switch of the lower back door. (→P.117)

*³: While carrying the electronic key on your person, press the back door opener switch.

*4: When the towing hitch is installed, the kick sensor does not work

■ Driving mode select switch (→P.304)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Powertrain control in custom mode	Normal	Power	○	-	-	-
		Eco				
Chassis control in custom mode	Normal	Sport	○	-	-	-
Air conditioning operation in custom mode	Normal	Eco	○	-	-	-

■ Eco mode (→P.304)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C	D
Heating/cooling operation minimized in Eco mode	On	Off	-	-	○	-

■ Vehicle customization

- When the speed linked door locking function and shift position linked door locking function are both on, the door lock operates as follows.
 - When shifting the shift lever to any position other than P, all the doors will be locked.
 - If the vehicle is started with all the doors locked, the speed linked door locking function would not operate.
 - If the vehicle is started with any door unlocked, the speed linked door locking function will operate.
 - When the smart entry & start system is off, smart door unlocking cannot be customized.
 - When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the automatic door lock function is activated, the signals will be generated in accordance with the Operation signal (buzzer) and the Operation signal (emergency flashers) settings.
- In the following situations, customize mode in which the settings can be changed through the multi-information display will automatically be turned off.
- A warning message appears after the customize mode screen is displayed.
 - The engine switch is turned off.
 - The vehicle begins to move while the customize mode screen is displayed.

Items to initialize

The following item must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

List of the items to initialize

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Parking Support Brake function (for static objects)*	After reconnecting or changing the battery	P.289
Tire pressure warning system *	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When adjusting the tire inflation pressure • When changing tire pressure (such as when changing traveling speed) • When rotating the tires • When changing the tire 	P.400
Oil maintenance *	After the maintenance is performed	P.386
Lexus parking assist monitor *	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • After reconnecting or changing the battery • After changing a fuse 	Refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".
Panoramic view monitor *		
Power back door *		
Power window	When functioning abnormally	P.151
Moon roof*		P.154

* : If equipped

Index

495

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

..... **496**

Alphabetical Index **499**

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting your Lexus dealer.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed



You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer. (→P.457)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately. (→P.457)



The electronic key does not operate properly

- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? (→P.406)



The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Vehicles with entry function
Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?
When locking the doors, turn the engine switch off. (→P.175)
- Vehicles with entry function
Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?

When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P.129)



The rear door cannot be opened

- Is the child-protector lock set?
The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set. Open the rear door from outside and then unlock the child-protector lock. (→P.113)

If you think something is wrong



The engine does not start

- Did you press the engine switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P.174)
- Is the shift lever in P? (→P.174)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P.127)
- Is the steering wheel unlocked? (→P.174)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?
In this case, the engine can be started in a temporary way.

(→P.459)

- Is the battery discharged?
(→P.460)



The shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal

- Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?
If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode (→P.178, 182)



The steering wheel cannot be turned after the engine is stopped

- It is locked automatically to prevent theft of the vehicle. (→P.174)



The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed?
The power window except for the one at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P.152)



The engine switch is turned off automatically (vehicles with smart entry & start system)

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for a period of time. (→P.176)



A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing
Are the driver and the passengers wearing the seat belts? (→P.428)
- The parking brake indicator is on
Is the parking brake released? (→P.187)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P.423, 433)



An alarm is activated and the horn sounds

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door during setting the alarm?
The sensor detects it and the alarm sounds. (→P.76)

To stop the alarm, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode or start the engine.



A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle

- Is the message displayed on the multi-information display?
Check the message on the multi-information display. (→P.433)



A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer

to P.423, 433.

When a problem has occurred



If you have a flat tire

- Vehicles without spare tire
Stop the vehicle in a safe place and repair the flat tire temporarily with the emergency tire puncture repair kit. (→P.436)
- Vehicles with spare tire
Stop the vehicle in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P.446)



The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P.467)

Alphabetical Index

A

A/C.....	327
Air conditioning filter.....	405
Automatic air conditioning system...	327
Pollen removal mode.....	333
S-FLOW mode.....	332
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	307
Function	307
Warning light.....	425
Active Sound Control (ASC).....	190
Adaptive High-beam System	198
Adaptive Variable Suspension (AVS).....	308
Air conditioning filter.....	405
Air conditioning system.....	327
Air conditioning filter.....	405
Automatic air conditioning system...	327
S-FLOW mode.....	332
Airbag manual on-off system.....	51
Airbags.....	42
Airbag manual on-off system	51
Airbag operating conditions.....	44
Airbag precautions for your child.....	46
Airbag warning light.....	424
Correct driving posture	35
Curtain shield airbag operating conditions.....	44
Curtain shield airbag precautions.....	46
General airbag precautions	46
Locations of airbags.....	42
Modification and disposal of airbags.....	48
Seat cushion airbag.....	42
Side airbag operating conditions	44
Side airbag precautions	46
Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions.....	44
Side and curtain shield airbags precautions.....	46
SRS airbags	42
SRS warning light.....	424

Alarm	76
Alarm.....	76
All-wheel drive lock mode.....	312
Antenna (Smart entry & start system)..	127
Anti-lock brake system (ABS).....	307
Function	307
Warning light	425
Approach warning	255, 264
Armrest.....	358
ASC (Active Sound Control).....	190
Assist grips.....	358
Automatic air conditioning system.....	327
Air conditioning filter.....	405
S-FLOW mode.....	332
Automatic headlight leveling system....	194
Automatic High Beam	201
Automatic light control system	194
Auxiliary box	343
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension).....	308

B

Back door.....	114
Wireless remote control	117
Back-up lights	
Replacing light bulbs.....	411
Battery	
If the battery is discharged	460
Preparing and checking before winter	314
Warning light	423
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM).....	292
Blind Spot Monitor function.....	299
Rear Cross Traffic Alert function.....	301
Bottle holders	343
Brake	
Brake Hold.....	189
Fluid.....	478
Parking brake.....	186
Warning light	424

Brake assist.....	307	Child safety.....	52
Brake Hold.....	189	Airbag precautions.....	46
Break-in tips.....	161	Back door precautions.....	114
Brightness control		Battery precautions.....	390, 464
Instrument panel light control.....	89	Child restraint system.....	53
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor).....	292	Electronic sunshade precautions.....	156
Blind Spot Monitor function.....	299	How your child should wear the seat belt	
Rear Cross Traffic Alert function.....	301	38
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) main switch		Installing child restraints.....	53
.....	293	Moon roof precautions.....	155
		Power window lock switch.....	152
		Power window precautions.....	152
		Rear door child-protectors.....	113
		Removed key battery precautions..	408
		Seat belt precautions.....	36
		Seat heater precautions.....	335
		Child-protectors.....	113
		Cleaning.....	360, 363
		Aluminum wheels.....	360
		Exterior.....	360
		Interior.....	363
		Seat belts.....	363
		Clock.....	349
		Condenser.....	388
		Console box.....	342
		Consumption screen.....	101
		Continuously variable transmission.....	181
		Coolant	
		Capacity.....	476
		Checking.....	387
		Preparing and checking before winter	
		314
		Warning light.....	424
		Cooling system.....	387
		Engine overheating.....	465
		Cornering lights.....	198
Card holders.....	344		
Card key.....	106		
Care			
Aluminum wheels.....	360		
Exterior.....	360		
Interior.....	363		
Seat belts.....	363		
Self-restoring coat.....	360		
Cargo hooks.....	345		
Cargo net hooks.....	345		
Chains.....	315		
Child restraint system.....	53		
Child seats definition.....	53		
Child seats installation.....	68, 70, 71		
Installing a CRS to the passenger seat			
.....	54		
Installing CRS with ISOFIX lower			
anchorages.....	70		
Installing CRS with seat belts.....	68		
Installing CRS with top strap.....	71		
Points to remember.....	53		
Riding with children.....	52		
Types of child restraint system installation			
method.....	67		
Using a top tether anchorage.....	71		

Cruise control
 Cruise control 267
 Dynamic radar cruise control 259
 Dynamic radar cruise control with full-
 speed range 248
 Cup holders 343
 Curtain shield airbags 42
 Customizable features 482

D

Daytime running light system 193
 Deck board 346
 Deck under tray 345
 Defogger
 Outside rear view mirrors 329
 Rear window 329
 Windshield 329
 Differential 478
 Dimension 470
 Display
 BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 292
 Drive information 91
 Dynamic radar cruise control 259
 Dynamic radar cruise control with full-
 speed range 248
 Fuel consumption information 101
 Head-up display 97
 LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering
 control) 241
 Lexus parking assist 278
 LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 237
 Multi-information display 90
 Warning messages 433
 Do-it-yourself maintenance 380

Door lock
 Back door 115
 Side doors 110
 Smart entry & start system 127
 Wireless remote control 108
 Doors
 Automatic door locking and unlocking
 system 113
 Back door 114
 Door glasses 151
 Door lock 110
 Outside rear view mirrors 149
 Rear door child-protectors 113
 Side doors 110
 Double locking system 75
 Drive information 91
 Drive-start control 161, 177
 Driver's seat belt reminder light 428
 Driver's seat position memory 141
 Driving
 Break-in tips 161
 Correct posture 35
 Driving mode select switch 304
 Eco-friendly driving tips 317
 Procedures 160
 Winter drive tips 314
 Driving position memory 141
 Memory recall function 142
 Dynamic radar cruise control
 Warning message 266, 433
 Dynamic radar cruise control with full-
 speed range
 Warning message 257, 433

E

Eco mode	304	Engine	
Eco-friendly driving tips	317	Accessory mode.....	175
EDR (Event data recorder).....	7	Compartment.....	383
Electric Power Steering (EPS)		Engine switch.....	174
Function	308	Hood.....	381
Warning light.....	425	How to start the engine	174
Electronic key		Identification number	471
Battery-saving function.....	128	If your vehicle has to be stopped in an	
If the electronic key does not operate		emergency.....	414
properly.....	458	Ignition switch (Engine switch)	174
Replacing the battery.....	406	Overheating.....	465
Electronic sunshade.....	156	Engine coolant	
Jam protection function.....	157	Capacity	476
Operation.....	157	Checking.....	387
Emergency brake signal	308	Preparing and checking before winter	
Emergency flashers.....	414	314
Emergency, in case of		Warning light	424
If a warning buzzer sounds	423	Engine coolant temperature gauge.....	87
If a warning light turns on.....	423	Engine immobilizer system.....	73
If a warning message is displayed....	433	Engine oil	
If the battery is discharged.....	460	Capacity	473
If the electronic key does not operate		Checking.....	384
properly.....	458	Preparing and checking before winter	
If the engine will not start	455	314
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened		Warning light	423
.....	457	Engine switch.....	174
If the vehicle is trapped in rising water		EPS (Electronic Power Steering)	
.....	415	Function	308
If you have a flat tire.....	436, 446	Warning light	425
If you lose your keys.....	457	Event data recorder (EDR).....	7
If you think something is wrong.....	421		
If your vehicle becomes stuck.....	467		
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an			
emergency.....	414		
If your vehicle needs to be towed.....	417		
If your vehicle overheats	465		

F

Flat tire..... 436, 446
 Tire pressure warning system.....394
 Floor mats.....34
 Fluid
 Automatic transmission..... 477
 Brake.....478
 Washer.....391
 Fog lights
 Replacing light bulbs..... 411
 Switch.....204
 Follow me home system..... 197
 Front fog lights
 Replacing light bulbs..... 411
 Switch.....204
 Front passenger's seat belt reminder light
 428
 Front position lights
 Light switch.....193
 Replacing light bulbs..... 411
 Front seat heaters 335
 Front seats
 Adjustment..... 135
 Cleaning.....363
 Correct driving posture 35
 Driving position memory 141
 Head restraints.....144
 Power easy access system 141
 Seat heaters335
 Seat position memory 141
 Front turn signal lights
 Replacing light bulbs..... 411
 Turn signal lever185

Fuel

Capacity.....472
 Fuel gauge.....87
 Gas station information 512
 Information.....481
 Refueling.....214
 Type.....472
 Warning light427
 Fuel consumption information..... 101
 Fuel filler door..... 214
 Refueling.....214
 When the fuel filler door cannot be
 opened.....457
 Fuses.....408

G

Gas station information..... 512
 Gauges.....87
 Glove box342
 Glove box light.....342
 GPF (Gasoline Particulate Filter) system
 306
 Grocery bag hooks..... 345

H

Head restraints..... 144
 Head-up display 97
 Headlight cleaner207
 Headlights..... 193
 Adaptive High-beam System..... 198
 Automatic headlight leveling 194
 Automatic High Beam system..... 201
 Follow me home system 197
 Light switch193
 Replacing light bulbs.....411

Heated steering wheel 335

Heaters

- Automatic air conditioning system... 327
- Heated steering wheel.....335
- Outside rear view mirrors.....329
- Seat heaters335

High mounted stop light

- Replacing light bulbs..... 411

Hill-start assist control.....308

Hood381

- Open..... 381
- Warning message..... 112, 433

Hooks

- Cargo hooks.....345
- Retaining hooks (floor mat)..... 34

Horn..... 147

I

Identification

- Engine.....471
- Vehicle.....470

If you lose your keys.....457

Ignition switch (Engine switch)..... 174

Illuminated entry system 338

Immobilizer system73

Indicators.....82, 83

Initialization

- Items to initialize494

Inside rear view mirror..... 147

Instrument panel light control..... 89

Intercooler coolant

- Capacity476
- Checking387

Interior lights 338

Intrusion sensor.....78

ISOFIX lower anchorages.....70

J

Jack

- Positioning a floor jack..... 382
- Vehicle-equipped jack.....437, 447

Jack handle.....437, 447

Jam protection function

- Electronic sunshade..... 157
- Moon roof.....154
- Power back door closer122
- Power windows.....151
- Rear seats.....140

K

Keyless entry

- Smart entry & start system127
- Wireless remote control108

Keys106

- Battery-saving function.....128
- Electronic key106
- Engine switch.....174

If the electronic key does not operate properly458

If you lose your keys457

Key number plate.....106

Keyless entry127

Mechanical key.....106

Replacing the battery.....406

Side doors110

Warning buzzer128

Wireless remote control key108

Knee airbags42

L

Lane Departure Alert with steering control (LDA)..... 241

Lane Tracing Assist (LTA)..... 231

Language (multi-information display)..... 487

LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)..... 241

Lever

 Auxiliary catch lever 381

 Hood lock release lever 381

 Shift lever..... 177, 181

 Turn signal lever 185

 Wiper lever 207, 212

Lexus parking assist-sensor

 Function 278

Lexus Safety System+

 AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)..... 198

 Automatic High Beam 201

 Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 248, 259

 LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)..... 241

 LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)..... 231

 PCS (Pre-Collision System)..... 223

License plate lights

 Light switch 193

 Replacing light bulbs..... 411

Light

 Adaptive High-beam System..... 198

 Automatic High Beam system..... 201

 Cornering lights 198

 Fog light switch 204

 Follow me home system 197

 Headlight switch..... 193

 Illuminated entry system..... 338

 Interior light list 338

 Interior lights..... 339

 Personal lights 339

 Replacing light bulbs..... 411

 Turn signal lever 185

 Vanity lights..... 349

 Wattage..... 480

 Welcome light illumination control..... 112

Light bulbs

 Replacing 411

 Wattage..... 480

LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)..... 231

Luggage cover 347

M

Maintenance

 Do-it-yourself maintenance..... 380

 Maintenance data 470

 Maintenance requirements..... 366

Malfunction indicator lamp 424

Meter

 Head-up display 97

 Indicators..... 82, 83

 Instrument panel light control..... 89

 Meters..... 87

 Multi-information display 90

 Warning lights 82

 Warning messages..... 433

Mirrors

 Inside rear view mirror 147

 Outside rear view mirror defoggers..... 329

 Outside rear view mirrors..... 149

 Vanity mirrors..... 349

Moon roof

 Jam protection function 154

 Operation 153

 Warning message..... 433

Multi-information display

Clock	87
Drive information	91
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range	248, 259
Language	487
LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control)	241
Lexus parking assist-sensor	278
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)	231
PCS (Pre-Collision System)	223
Warning messages	433

O

Odometer	87
Oil	
Engine oil	473
Rear differential oil	478
Transfer oil	478
Opener	
Back door	116, 117
Fuel filler door	214
Hood	381
Outside rear view mirrors	149
Adjusting and folding	149
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)	292
Linked mirror function when reversing	150
Mirror position memory	141
Outside rear view mirror defoggers	329
Outside temperature display	87
Overheating	465

P

Paddle shift switches	179, 180, 183
Panic mode	108
Parking assist sensors	278
Parking brake	
Operation	186
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer/message	187
Warning light	427
Parking Support Brake function (for static objects)	283
Indicator	83
Warning light	426
Warning messages	289
PCS (Pre-Collision System)	
Function	223
PCS switch	225
Warning light	425
Warning message	433
Personal lights	339
Switch	339
PKSA (Parking Support Alert)	277
Lexus parking assist-sensor	278
Pollen removal mode	333
Power back door opener and closer	116, 117, 120
Power easy access system	141
Power outlet	350
Power steering (Electric Power Steering system)	308
Warning light	425

Power windows
 Door lock linked window operation..152
 Jam protection function.....151
 Operation.....151
 Window lock switch.....152

Pre-Collision System (PCS)
 Function.....223
 PCS switch.....225
 Warning light.....425
 Warning message.....433

R

Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range) . 248, 259

Radiator.....388

Rear Cross Traffic Alert.....301

Rear fog light
 Replacing light bulbs.....411
 Switch.....204, 205

Rear passengers' seat belt reminder light.....428

Rear seat
 Folding down the rear seatbacks.....137
 Rear seat heaters.....336

Rear turn signal lights
 Replacing light bulbs.....411
 Turn signal lever.....185

Rear view mirror
 Inside rear view mirror.....147
 Outside rear view mirrors.....149

Rear window defogger.....329

Rear window wiper.....212

Refueling.....214
 Capacity.....472
 Fuel types.....472
 Opening the fuel tank cap.....214
 When the fuel filler door cannot be opened.....457

Remote Touch.....322

Replacing
 Electronic key battery.....406
 Fuses.....408
 Light bulbs.....411
 Tires.....446

S

S-FLOW mode.....332

Seat belts.....36
 Adjusting the seat belt.....40
 Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height.....40
 Child restraint system installation.....53
 Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt.....363
 Emergency Locking Retractor.....38
 How to wear your seat belt.....37
 How your child should wear the seat belt.....38
 Pregnant women, proper seat belt use.....37
 Reminder light and buzzer.....428
 Seat belt pretensioners.....40
 SRS warning light.....424

Seat heaters.....335

Seat position memory.....141

Seat ventilators.....336

Seats
 Adjustment.....135, 136
 Adjustment precautions.....135, 136
 Child seats/child restraint system installation.....53
 Cleaning.....363
 Driving position memory.....141
 Folding down the rear seatbacks.....137
 Front seat heaters.....335
 Head restraint.....144

- Power easy access system 141
- Properly sitting in the seat 35
- Rear seat heaters 335
- Seat ventilators 336
- Sensor**
 - Automatic High Beam system 203
 - BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 299
 - Inside rear view mirror 148
 - Intrusion sensor 78
 - Kick sensor 119
 - LDA (Lane Departure Alert with steering control) 217
 - Lexus parking assist-sensor 278
 - LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 217
 - Radar sensor 217
 - Rain-sensing windshield wipers 211
 - Tilt sensor 78
- Shift lever** 177, 181
 - If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P 178, 182
- Shift lock system** 178, 182
- Side airbags** 42
- Side doors** 110
- Side mirrors** 149
 - Adjusting and folding 149
 - BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 292
 - Heaters 329
- Side turn signal lights**
 - Replacing light bulbs 411
 - Turn signal lever 185
- Smart entry & start system** 127
 - Antenna location 127
 - Entry functions 110, 115, 127
 - Starting the engine 174
 - Warning message 433
- Snow tires** 314
- Spare tire**
 - Inflation pressure 479
 - Storage location 447
- Spark plug** 476
- Specifications** 470
- Speedometer** 87
- Sport mode** 304
- Steering wheel**
 - Adjustment 146
 - Heated steering wheel 335
 - Meter control switches 90
 - Power easy access system 141
- Stop & Start system**
 - Function 270
 - Idling stop time 274
 - Replacing battery 463
- Stop lights**
 - Emergency brake signal 308
 - Replacing light bulbs 411
- Storage feature** 341
- Storage precautions** 341
- Stuck**
 - If the vehicle becomes stuck 467
- Sun visors** 349
- Sunshade** 156
- Switch**
 - Adaptive High-beam System switch 199
 - All-wheel drive lock switch 312
 - ASC (Active Sound Control) 190
 - Automatic High Beam switch 201
 - Brake hold switch 189
 - BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) main switch 292, 293
 - Cruise control switch 248, 259, 267

Door lock switch..... 113
 Driving mode select switch.....304
 Driving position memory switches..... 141
 Electronic sunshade switch..... 153
 Emergency flashers switch..... 414
 Engine switch.....174
 Fog light switch..... 204, 205
 Headlight cleaner switch..... 207, 208
 Heated steering wheel.....335
 HUD (Head-up display) switches..... 97
 Ignition switch.....174
 Intrusion sensor cancel switch..... 78
 LDA switch.....245
 Lexus parking assist-sensor switch..278
 Light switches.....193
 LTA switch.....236
 Meter control switches.....90
 Moon roof switches.....153
 Outside rear view mirror switches....149
 Paddle shift switches.....179, 183
 Parking brake switch.....186
 PCS switch.....225
 Power back door opener switch..116, 117
 Power window switch.....151
 Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch.....329
 Rear window defogger.....329
 Rear window wiper and washer switch.....212
 Seat heater switches.....335
 Stop & Start cancel switch.....276
 Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch 249, 259
 VSC off switch.....308
 Window lock switch.....152
 Windshield wipers and washer switch.....207, 212

T

Tachometer87
Tail lights
 Light switch.....193
 Replacing light bulbs.....411
Theft deterrent system
 Alarm.....76
 Double locking system.....75
 Immobilizer system.....73
 Intrusion sensor.....78
 Tilt sensor.....78
Tilt sensor78
Tire inflation pressure
 Maintenance data.....479
 Warning light.....429
Tire pressure warning system
 Function.....394
 Initializing.....400
 Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.....399
 Registering ID codes.....402
 Warning light.....429
Tires392
 Chains.....315
 Checking.....392
 If you have a flat tire.....436, 446
 Inflation pressure.....402
 Replacing.....392
 Rotating tires.....393
 Size.....479
 Snow tires.....314
 Spare tire.....447, 479
 Tire pressure warning system.....394
 Warning light.....429

Tools437, 447
 Top strap 71
Towing
 Emergency towing.....417
 Towing eyelet420
 Trailer Sway Control.....307
 Trailer towing.....168
Traction control308
Trailer Sway Control307
Trailer towing.....168
Transmission
 Automatic transmission.....177
 Continuously variable transmission...181
 Selecting a driving mode.....304
TRC (Traction Control).....308
Trip meters.....87
Turn signal lights
 Replacing light bulbs.....411
 Turn signal lever185

V

Vanity lights
 Vanity lights349
 Wattage.....480
Vanity mirrors.....349
 Vanity lights349
Vehicle data recordings.....7
Vehicle identification number470
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC).....307
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control).....307

W

Warning buzzers
 Approach warning.....255, 264
 Downshifting180, 183
 Lexus parking assist-sensor282
 Light reminder194
 Open door112
 Seat belt reminder428
 Vehicle sway warning235, 244
Warning lights
 ABS.....425
 Brake hold operated indicator.....427
 Brake Override System430
 Brake system.....423
 Charging system.....423
 Drive-Start Control.....430
 Electric power steering.....425
 High coolant temperature.....424
 LDA indicator426
 Low engine oil pressure.....423
 Low fuel level427
 LTA indicator426
 Malfunction indicator lamp.....424
 Master warning light.....429
 Parking brake indicator427
 PCS warning light.....425
 PKSB OFF indicator426
 Seat belt reminder light.....428
 Slip indicator427
 SRS.....424
 Tire pressure429

Warning messages.....	433	· Lexus parking assist monitor
Washer		· Panoramic view monitor
Checking.....	391	
Low washer fluid warning message	391,	
433		
Preparing and checking before winter		
.....	314	
Switch.....	207, 212	
Washing and waxing.....	360	
Wheels.....	403	
Replacing wheels.....	403	
Size.....	479	
Window glasses		
Front side windows.....	361, 363	
Power windows.....	151	
Window lock switch.....	152	
Windows		
Power windows.....	151	
Rear window defogger.....	329	
Washer.....	207, 212	
Windshield wiper de-icer.....	329	
Windshield wipers		
Intermittent windshield wipers.....	207	
Rain-sensing windshield wipers.....	207	
Winter driving tips.....	314	
Wireless charger.....	351	
Wireless remote control key.....	108	
Battery-saving function.....	128	
Locking/Unlocking.....	108	
Panic mode.....	108	
Replacing the battery.....	406	

For information regarding the equipment listed below, refer to the "Navigation and Multimedia System Owner's Manual".

- Audio/visual system
- Navigation system

GAS STATION INFORMATION



- A** Auxiliary catch lever (→P.381)
- B** Back door opener switch* (→P.117)
- C** Fuel filler door (→P.214)
- D** Hood lock release lever (→P.381)
- E** Tire inflation pressure (→P.479)

*: Vehicles with power back door

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	60 L (15.9 gal., 13.2 Imp.gal.)	
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only	P.472
Cold tire inflation pressure		P.479
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill – reference)		P.473
Engine oil type		P.473

はX-8

Publication No. OM78540E
Part No. 01999-78540
Printed in Japan 01-1910-00 
NX 300 / NX 200 (一般E)